GERMAN COMPOSITION

BACON

25 lines of Joan of Arc.

#116

MONASTERY OF ST. ALPHONSUS
REDEMPTORISTINE NUNS
LIGUORI, MISSOURI

Charles J. Huber

Senior

C. H. S.

1925

The Imperial House of Parliament in Berlin.

GERMAN COMPOSITION

BY

PAUL VALENTINE BACON

Der Deutſche iſt gelehrt, wenn er ſein Deutſch verſteht.

—Goethe.

400.1
BA

ALLYN AND BACON

Boston New York Chicago

COPYRIGHT, 1913, BY
PAUL VALENTINE BACON.

DDO

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

To

THE AMERICAN TEACHER
OF GERMAN

Wer die deutsche Sprache versteht und studiert befindet sich auf dem Markte, wo alle Nationen ihre Waren anbieten, er spielt den Dolmetscher, indem er sich selbst bereichert.

— *Letter from Goethe to Carlyle, July 20th, 1827.*

PREFACE.

This book is the result of a conviction that in the study of German too little emphasis is laid on the meanings of words. When we use a wrong gender, case, or mood, Germans rarely misunderstand us, but when we use a wrong word, they often get no idea whatever. Emphasis, therefore, is here put on distinctions in the meanings of common words, though forms and syntax are not neglected.

Above all, the book aims to be practical. The ideal way to teach German composition is to use nothing but German in the classroom. But this presupposes pupils who are prepared to "think in German," and such students have already reached a state of proficiency far beyond the scope of this volume, which is intended as a practical step toward an ideal goal.

The treatment does not claim to be exhaustive. As in the case of my German Grammar, I have clung to the belief that a thorough discussion of important things furnishes a better foundation for future work than less intensive study spread over a wider field. Though not made for the purpose of forcing the "direct method" upon teachers, this Composition — like the German Grammar and "Im Vaterland" — readily lends itself to the use of German in the classroom.

A partial list of the books used in preparing the Composition will be found in the Teachers' Handbook, but in the treatment of many words and constructions, especially where no book sufficed, I have drawn not only on my own experience, but also on that of many German friends.

Thanks are due first to my former teachers, Fräulein Anna and Fräulein Minna Sannemann, of Hannover, who went over the manuscript with critical care. A like service was performed by Dr. Römer, of the Herderschule, Charlottenburg, Dr. Zingler, of the Werner Siemens Realgymnasium, Schöneberg-Berlin, and Dr. Schindler of the Annen Realgymnasium, Dresden. Valuable help on points of debated usage was received from Dr. Gropp, of the Siemens Realgymnasium, Charlottenburg. Besides these, I wish to thank Dr. Martin Hartmann, of Leipsic, for permission to use his name in connection with his letter-writing exchange; Professor Schrader, of the University of Breslau, for examining my drawing of the Indo-European languages; Professor Richard M. Meyer, of the University of Berlin, for suggestions in regard to Chapter IV, Part II; Professor Wilhelm Viëtor, of Marburg, for explaining his attitude on certain disputed points in phonetics; Professor Sievers, of Leipsic, for lending the weight of his authority to some statements which might otherwise seem presumptuous; and Dr. Max Walter, of Frankfort, for taking valuable time to explain and demonstrate the method he employs so successfully. To Fräulein Hedwig Klatt, of Berlin, I am doubly indebted, not only for valuable suggestions upon the entire book, but for generous permission to use the results of her remarkable researches in teaching pronunciation.

The anatomical drawings in Chapter III, Part II, are by Miss Blair, of the Harvard Medical School.

P. V. B.

April, 1913.

PLAN OF THE BOOK.

Part I, containing thirty-six chapters, is for *study*.

Each Chapter, except the Reviews, has four parts: (1) German Story, (2) Syntax, (3) Notes, (4) Exercises.

(1) The Story furnishes the foundation for conversation or "direct method" work, and illustrates the Syntax and Notes which follow. In connection with the Historical Notes the stories give a sketch of German history.

(2) The Syntax furnishes discussion and further illustration of the constructions treated in the chapter.

(3) The Notes offer a detailed and definite explanation of word difficulties.

(4) The Exercises (*a*) review the Syntax and Notes by questions, (*b*) furnish Colloquial Idioms for memorizing, and (*c*) give three sets of Idiomatic Exercises to be written in German, the last of the three being a connected story.

Every fourth chapter is devoted to Review, as are also the last four chapters, making twelve reviews in all. They contain Questions and Exercises, with a note on some idiomatic particle like doch or wohl.

Quotations from the Classics, some four hundred in number, acquaint the pupil with the leading names in German literature. These citations include those which one hears most frequently in the conversation of cultured Germans.

Pictures and *Historical Notes* serve two purposes. For those who wish to use them, they furnish excellent material for conversation and "direct method" work. For those who do not care to do this, they make good "breathing spaces" in the lesson.

Part II, containing five chapters, is for *reference.*

Chapter I gives forms and suggestions for letter writing. It should be consulted whenever the teacher wishes to vary the regular exercises by work on letters.

Chapter II furnishes illustrations and explanations of the more common ways in which German words are derived and combined. It may be used either for study or reference.

Chapter III gives some of the delicate distinctions between English and German pronunciation. It should be used discreetly, and only by those teachers who make a point of accurate work in speaking. Even by these, only one thing — Assimilation, the Glottal Catch, and so on — should be treated at a time.

Chapter IV contains an outline sketch of the history of the German language, including a very brief statement of Grimm's Law. It should be used only for reading and reference, not for study.

Chapter V includes (1) a few words spelled alike in both languages, not treated in Part I, (2) a list of abbreviations, familiarity with which will help a pupil in his German reading, and (3) about one hundred current idioms which can scarcely be called literary, but a knowledge of which will be of advantage to those who are planning to go to Germany.

Vocabularies and **Index** are especially complete. The former contain specific reference to the sections where the words are discussed, while the latter includes not only the syntactical, but the historical, artistic, and literary matter of the book.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PAGE

ILLUSTRATIONS xiii

DRAWINGS AND MAPS xv

GERMAN EQUIVALENTS FOR GRAMMATICAL TERMS . . . xvi

PART I.

CHAPTER

I. Word Order — Inverted. Die Hermannsſchlacht . . 1

II. Transposed Order. Simple Tenses. Deutſche Treue . 7

III. Transposed Order. Compound Tenses. Dietrich von Bern 15

IV. Review. Denn. 22

V. Word Order. Position of nicht. Karl der Große in der Schule 24

VI. Word Order. Position of Adverbs. Der Rolandsbogen 32

VII. Word Order. Position of Objects. Heinrich der Vogler 39

VIII. Review. Noch. 46

IX. The Modal Auxiliaries. Simple Tenses. Kaiſer Otto der Dritte in der Gruft Karls des Großen. . . . 48

X. The Modal Auxiliaries. Compound Tenses. Die Rolandſäulen 56

XI. Two Infinitives with Other Verbs than Modals. Friedrich Rotbart 64

XII. Review. Wohl. 72

XIII. Prepositions with the Dative. Die Weiber von Weinsberg 74

XIV. Prepositions with the Accusative. Der Sängerkrieg auf der Wartburg 84

XV. Prepositions with either Dative or Accusative. Nürnberg 92

XVI. Review. Schon. 102

XVII. Inseparable Verbs. Die Buchdruckerkunſt . . . 105

CHAPTER		PAGE
XVIII.	Separable Verbs. Albrecht Dürer	113
XIX.	Common Prefixes. Luther und der Teufel	121
XX.	Review. Überhaupt.	128
XXI.	Haben and ſein as Auxiliaries. Die Uhren Kaiſer Karls des Fünften	130
XXII.	English Verbals translated by German Infinitives. Der Dreißigjährige Krieg	139
XXIII.	English Infinitives and Verbals translated by German Clauses. Der Große Kurfürſt	148
XXIV.	Review. Ja.	156
XXV.	The Passive Voice. Friedrich der Große und die Windmühle	158
XXVI.	Adjectives. Friedrich der Große und Waſhington.	167
XXVII.	Use of Tenses. Goethe und Schiller	176
XXVIII.	Review. Doch.	185
XXIX.	The Subjunctive. Beethoven	188
XXX.	Subjunctive and Conditional. Königin Luiſe	196
XXXI.	Special Subjunctives. Das Frankfurter Parlament	205
XXXII.	Review. Zwar, Allerdings.	212
XXXIII.	Review of Chapters 1–8. Bismarck und das Deutſche Reich	214
XXXIV.	Review of Chapters 9–16. Kaiſer Wilhelm der Große	219
XXXV.	Review of Chapters 17–24. Deutſche Wiſſenſchaft	224
XXXVI.	Review of Chapters 25–32. Deutſcher Handel	228

PART II.

I.	Composition of Letters	235
II.	Composition of Words	242
III.	Composition of Sounds. Phonetics	255
IV.	Composition of the German Language	278
V.	Miscellaneous. 1. Identical Words. 2. Abbreviations. 3. Slang	289
	German-English Vocabulary and Word-Index	297
	English-German Vocabulary and Word-Index	330
	Special Index	355

ILLUSTRATIONS.

The Imperial House of Parliament . . . . *Frontispiece*

PAGE

1. Teutoburg Forest. The Hermann Monument . . . 2
2. Trier. The Palace of the Roman Emperors . . . 8
3. Trier. The Porta Nigra, or Black Gate 13
4. Ravenna. Tomb of Theodoric 15
5. Charlemagne, from a painting by Albrecht Dürer . . . 24
6. Aachen. The Cathedral 30
7. Rolandseck. The Arch of Roland 33
8. Quedlinburg. The Cathedral 39
9. Blankenburg. The Regenstein 44
10. Aachen. The Vault of the Cathedral and the Coronation Chair 49
11. Goslar. The Palace of the Emperors 53
12. Bremen. Roland 57
13. Halle. Roland 61
14. Kyffhäuser. The Monument to Emperor William I . . 65
15. Kyffhäuser. Barbarossa 67
16. Bad Reichenhall. Barbarossa 70
17. Weinsberg. Fortress Weibertreu, seen from the town . . 74
18. Weinsberg. Fortress Weibertreu, seen from a neighboring hill 79
19. Fortress Weibertreu. The Octagonal Tower . . . 82
20. Eisenach. The Singers' Hall at the Wartburg . . . 84
21. Eisenach. The Wartburg 87
22. Nuremberg. The Pegnitz and the Walls 92
23. Nuremberg. Statue of Hans Sachs 97
24. Nuremberg. The Women's Gate 100

PAGE

25. Mayence. Statue of Gutenberg and the Cathedral . . 105
26. Portrait of Albrecht Dürer, painted by himself . . . 114
27. Nuremberg. The House of Albrecht Dürer 117
28. The Wartburg. Luther's Room 121
29. The Wartburg. Inner Court 124
30. Martin Luther, painted by his friend, Lucas Kranach . . 127
31. Charles V, painted by Titian 131
32. Rothenburg 139
33. Coburg 143
34. Berlin. Statue of the Great Elector 149
35. Potsdam. The Mill at Sans Souci 159
36. Potsdam. Sans Souci, the Palace of Frederick the Great . 163
37. Berlin. Statue of Frederick the Great 169
38. Weimar. Statue of Goethe and Schiller 177
39. Weimar. Goethe's Garden House 181
40. Bust of Schiller, in the Library at Weimar 184
41. Portrait of Beethoven 188
42. Wagner 190
43. Bust of Goethe, in the Library at Weimar 195
44. Portrait of Queen Luise, in the Gallery at Cologne . . 197
45. Frankfort. Church of St. Paul, where the Parliament met . 205
46. Ernst Moritz Arndt, member of the Frankfort Parliament . 207
47. Ludwig Uhland, member of the Frankfort Parliament . . 211
48. Rudelsburg. Statue of Bismarck as a Student . . . 214
49. Bismarck, from a photograph 217
50. Coblentz. Monument to Emperor William I . . . 219
51. Moltke 222
52. Roentgen, discoverer of the X-ray 224
53. Mommsen, one of Germany's great historians . . . 226
54. Hamburg. The Harbor 228
55. Barmen-Elberfeld. The Hanging Railway 230
56. Kiel. The Canal, with the Battleship *Charles the Great* . 231

DRAWINGS AND MAPS.

PAGE

Facsimile of Intimate Letter 236

Facsimile of Friendly Letter 238

Facsimile of Formal Letter 241

Figure 1. Position of Tongue for letter i 258

Figure 2. Position of Tongue for letter a 258

Figure 3. Position of Tongue for letter u 259

Figure 4. Diagram of Tongue-positions for German vowels . 259

Figure 5. Position of Tongue for letter l 270

Figure 6. Position of Tongue for trilled r 271

Figure 7. Position of Tongue for uvula r 271

Figure 8. Diagram of Indo-European Languages . . . 279

Figure 9. Diagram of Grimm's Law 281

Map of German Dialects . . . . . *to follow* 282

GERMAN EQUIVALENTS FOR GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

The letter (of the alphabet), der Buch'ſtabe.
The vowel, der Vokal', *or* der Selbſt'laut.
The consonant, der Konſonant', *or* der Mit'laut.
The sentence, der Satz.
The subject, das Subjekt'; the predicate, das Prädikat'.
The main clause, der Haupt'ſatz.
The subordinate clause, der Ne'benſatz.
The parts of speech, die Re'deteile.
The article, der Arti'kel, *or* das Geſchlechts'wort.
Definite, beſtimmt'; indefinite, un'beſtimmt.
The noun, das Sub'ſtantiv, *or* das Haupt'wort.
First, second, third class, er'ſte, zwei'te, drit'te Klaſſe.
The pronoun, das Prono'men, *or* das Für'wort.
The adjective, das Ad'jektiv, *or* das Ei'genſchaftswort.
The numeral, das Numera'le, *or* das Zahl'wort.
The adverb, das Adverb', *or* das Um'ſtandswort.
The verb, das Ver'b(um), *or* das Zeit'wort.
Strong, ſtark; weak, ſchwach; separable, trenn'bar; inseparable, un'trennbar; transitive, tranſitiv'; intransitive, intranſitiv'.
The preposition, die Präpoſition', *or* das Verhält'niswort.
The conjunction, die Konjunktion', *or* das Bin'dewort.
The interjection, die Interjektion', *or* das Aus'rufungswort.
The gender, das Geſchlecht': masculine, männ'lich; feminine, weib'lich; neuter, ſäch'lich.
The number, die Zahl'form.
Singular, der Singular', *or* die Ein'zahl.
Plural, der Plu'ral, *or* die Mehr'zahl.

The case, der Fall (pl. die Fäl'le).

The nominative, der No'minativ; genitive, der Ge'nitiv; dative, der Da'tiv; accusative, der Ak'kuſativ.

The inflection, die Bie'gung; to decline, deklinie'ren.

The declension, die Deklination'; strong, ſtark; weak, ſchwach; mixed, gemiſcht.

To conjugate, konjugie'ren; conjugation, die Konjugation'.

The comparison, die Komparation', *or* die Stei'gerung; to compare, ſtei'gern; positive, der Po'ſitiv; comparative, der Kom'parativ; superlative, der Su'perlativ.

The tense, das Tem'pus, die Zeit'form; present, das Prä'ſens; past, das Im'perfekt; future, das Futur' (das er'ſte Futur'); perfect, das Perfekt'; past perfect, das Plus'quamperfekt; future perfect, das zwei'te Futur'; simple, compound, ein'fach, zuſam'mengeſetzt.

The mode, der Mo'dus; indicative, der In'dikativ; subjunctive, der Kon'junctiv; imperative, der Im'perativ; infinitive, der In'finitiv; participle, das Particip'.

The accent, der Ton; raising and lowering of the voice, die Hebung und Senkung der Stimme.

Position, order, die Stellung, die Ordnung.

Word order, die Wortfolge; inverted order, die Inverſion'.

Page, die Seite; line, die Zeile, die Reihe (row).

Note. — Properly the foreign terms should have the accent on the last syllable; but in the language of the schoolroom the accent has been shifted from the meaningless ending to the distinctive part of the word.

PART I.

CHAPTER I.

WORD ORDER—INVERTED.

Die Hermannsschlacht.

1. Vor vielen, vielen Jahren gab es in Deutschland noch keine Städte. Die alten Deutschen wohnten mitten in großen Wäldern. Unter ihnen lebte damals ein tapferer Held, Hermann, den die Römer Arminius nannten. Zu dieser Zeit herrschte in Rom Kaiser Augustus. Da er die Deutschen unterwerfen wollte, sandte er seinen Feldherrn Varus gegen sie.

Dieser suchte den Feind im Teutoburger Walde, aber Hermann wartete nicht auf ihn; er griff die Römer an und vernichtete beinahe das ganze römische Heer. Das war das erste Mal, daß die Römer in Deutschland geschlagen wurden. Als die Nachricht davon nach Rom gelangte, rief Kaiser Augustus aus: „Ach Varus, Varus, gib mir meine Legionen wieder!"

Syntax.

2. **Inverted Order.** — In the inverted order the verb or auxiliary comes before the subject. The rest of the sentence has the normal order. Inverted order is used not only, as in English, in interrogative and imperative sentences, but also in declarative sentences when introduced by some element other than the subject. English sometimes inverts a declarative sentence, as in, *Here comes the bride.* But English may also say, *Here*

1. The Hermann Monument in the Teutoburger Forest.

the bride comes, while German cannot follow this latter order, but must invert.

(1) German is very partial to the inverted order. Often where an English declarative sentence begins with

the subject, German starts with some other element. Where we say, *I saw the emperor in Potsdam yesterday*, a German would probably use one of the following sentences, according to what he wanted to emphasize: Geſtern habe ich in Potsdam den Kaiſer geſehen, or, Den Kaiſer habe ich geſtern in Potsdam geſehen, or, In Potsdam habe ich geſtern den Kaiſer geſehen.

(2) Special care should be taken to invert the main subject and verb when the sentence begins with a subordinate clause.

If I haven't a knife, I can't carve:
Wenn ich kein Meſſer habe, kann ich nicht ſchneiden. — Hillern.
When I was still a boy, I thought of nothing but stories of magic and wonders.
Als ich noch ein Knabe war, dachte ich an nichts als an Zauber- und Wundergeſchichten. — Heine.

Notes.

3. *Historical Note.* — Hermann the Liberator was a German prince who had served as a youth in the Roman army. He tried to unite the German tribes so as to drive the Romans out of Germany, and after the victory in the Teutoberg Forest (9 A.D.), the Romans did remain for a time west of the Rhine. But the German chiefs were jealous of each other and of Hermann. They betrayed his wife Thusnelda to the Romans to be led in chains through the streets of Rome in the "triumph" of the Roman general Germanicus. And finally they murdered Hermann (21 A.D.) when he was in his thirty-seventh year. In the story in § 1, the Germans, die Germanen, are referred to as „die Deutſchen," though this term is of later origin (about 800 A.D.).

4. English *ago* is usually **vor** with the dative case.

A week ago I bought this book.
Vor einer Woche habe ich dies Buch gekauft.
Long years ago there lived a man in the East.
Vor grauen Jahren lebt' ein Mann im Oſten. — Leſſing.

Note. — When *ago* is used with a form of the verb *to be*, German generally uses her following an adverb or the accusative.

It's a long time ago. Es iſt lange her.
That is fifty years ago.
Das ſind nun fünfzig Jahre her. — Wildenbruch.

5. When denoting extent of time, English *for* is rendered in German by the accusative of time. This is often followed by the adverb lang.

For three hours, for a whole month.
Drei Stunden (lang), einen ganzen Monat (lang).
And so he sat for many days, sat for many years.
Und ſo ſaß er viele Tage, ſaß viel' Jahre lang. — Schiller.

Note. — Unmodified words expressing time are united with lang and written as adverbs (not with a capital): *for hours*, *for days*, *for weeks*, *for months*, *for years*, ſtundenlang, tagelang, wochenlang, monatelang, jahrelang.

6. English *to live* has two German equivalents: **wohnen** and **leben.**

(1) Wohnen (reg., aux. haben) is used in the sense of *to dwell, to reside.*

I live on Charles Street. **Ich wohne in der Karlſtraße.**
She lived a long time here in Sorrento.
Sie hat lange hier in Sorrento gewohnt. — Heyſe.

(2) Leben (reg., aux. haben) is used in the sense of *to be alive, to exist.*

Man lives not by bread alone.
Der Menſch lebet nicht vom Brot allein. — Bibel, Matt. 4, 4.
He didn't live like others. **Er lebte nicht wie andere.** — Keller.

7. English *to look for, to hunt for*, is **ſuchen** (reg., aux. haben) with the accusative. Think of the English word *seek*, and do not use für.

What are you looking for? **Was ſuchen Sie?**
And I had no idea of looking for anything.
Und nichts zu ſuchen, das war mein Sinn. — Goethe.

8. English *to wait for* is warten **auf** (reg., aux. haben) with the accusative. Never say warten für.

We waited for you for half an hour.
Wir haben eine halbe Stunde auf dich (or **Sie**) **gewartet.**
But now I won't wait any longer for him!
Aber jetzt wart' ich doch nicht länger auf ihn! — Gerstäcker.

9. English *no, not a, not any,* is **kein.** Nicht ein means *not one* and is used only in emphatic cases; even then kein einzig, *not a single,* is preferable.

Haven't you a pencil? **Haben Sie keinen Bleistift?**
He hasn't made a single mistake.
Er hat keinen einzigen Fehler gemacht.
Who doesn't find any, doesn't need to furnish any.
Wer keine findet, braucht auch keine abzuliefern. — Storm.
He did not speak a single word. — **Er sprach kein einziges Wort.**
— Hebbel.

Exercises.

10. (*a*) 1. *Decline:* der große Wald, ein tapferer Held, keine Stadt, das erste Mal. 2. *Give the principal parts of:* geben, leben, nennen, senden, schlagen, rufen.

(*b*) 1. Which sentences in § 1 illustrate the inverted order? 2. When must German invert a declarative sentence which does not need to be inverted in English? 3. Find examples of the inverted order among the quotations in §§ 4, 5, and 8. Find in § 4 an illustration of § 6, 2.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Was suchst du? 2. Vor zwei Jahren habe ich in der Karlstraße gewohnt. 3. Warten Sie doch nicht länger auf mich! 4. Ich hatte keine Zeit. 5. Das war aber lange her. 6. Ich habe eine ganze Stunde gearbeitet.

11. (*a*) 1. A year ago we lived on (in der) Hermann Street. 2. For two hours he looked for his friend. 3. We

have waited for you for hours. 4. Augustus lived many years ago. 5. For a whole week we didn't have a lesson (Stunde). 6. But that was long ago.

(*b*) 1. For a whole year they lived on Winter Street. 2. Augustus lived in Rome, but that was many years ago. 3. For days I looked for an interesting book, but I didn't find one. 4. Will you wait a moment for me? 5. Many years ago Germany did not have a single large city. 6. What are you waiting for (worauf)? Are you looking for something?

(*c*) *Hermann the Liberator.* — 1. Many centuries ago (there) lived in Germany a brave hero, Hermann. 2. At that time (§ 1, line 4) the Germans did not have cities; they lived in huts in the forest. 3. When the Emperor Augustus wanted to subjugate the Germans, he sent his general Varus against them. 4. Hermann was at that time twenty-five years old, but he was already the German leader. 5. For days Varus looked for him, but Hermann did not wait for him; he attacked Varus and almost annihilated his army. 6. That was nineteen centuries ago, but the Germans will never forget Hermann the Liberator.

CHAPTER II.

WORD ORDER — TRANSPOSED. SIMPLE TENSES.

Deutſche Treue.

12. Der römiſche Hiſtoriker, Tacitus, erzählt, daß im erſten Jahrhundert nach Chriſtus einige Geſandte des Deutſchen Volkes nach Rom gingen. Dort bat man ſie, mit ins Koloſſeum zu gehen, um ſich die Kampfſpiele anzuſehen. Da ſie unter den römiſchen Senatoren einige Männer ſahen, die nicht Römer waren, fragten ſie ihre Freunde, wer dieſe Leute da ſeien.

Man ſagte ihnen, es wären Fremde, die ſich durch ihre Treue gegen Rom ausgezeichnet hätten. Da gingen die Deutſchen an den Ort, wo dieſe Männer ſaßen, und ſetzten ſich zu ihnen. „Wenn es Waffen zu führen oder Treue zu halten gilt," ſagten ſie den Römern, „ſo übertrifft kein Menſch die Deutſchen."

Syntax.

13. Transposed Order. — Simple Tenses. — With simple tenses in the transposed or dependent order, the verb is put at the end of the clause. This order is followed in all dependent clauses, that is, in those introduced by a relative or by a subordinating conjunction (als, da, daß, weil, wenn, wo, etc.). Whenever one of these introductory words occurs, drop all thought of the verb till every other word in the clause is translated, because, except for the verb, the order is normal.

I found them when I put the empty baskets back in the boat.
Ich fand ſie, als ich die leeren Körbe wieder in die Barke ſetzte.
— Heyſe.

I am thankful for the severest criticism, if it is only to the point.
Ich bin dankbar für die ſchärfſte Kritik, wenn ſie nur ſachlich bleibt.
— Bismarck.

Notes.

14. *Historical Note.* — In the two centuries after the „Hermannsſchlacht" the Romans extended their power beyond the Rhine and organized the province *Germania*. Thus relations between Romans

2. Ruins of the Palace of the Roman Emperors at Trier.

and Germans became more intimate; Germans often went to Rome, and Romans built theatres and palaces in Germany. Of these buildings the best remains are at Trier, the residence of several Roman Emperors. But the Germans never adopted Roman civilization. Tacitus in his "Germania" gives us a vivid picture of German life and customs, the simplicity of which he contrasts most favorably with the luxury of the effeminate Romans.

15. The English verb *to ask* is usually **bitten** or **fragen.**

(1) Bitten (bat, gebeten, aux. haben) means *to beg, to ask for.*

(*a*) *To ask for* something is translated by bitten **um.** Both verb and preposition take the accusative.

May I ask you for another glass of water?
Darf ich Sie um noch ein Glas Waſſer bitten?
I do not ask for my life.
Ich bitte nicht um mein Leben. — Schiller.

(*b*) To translate the English phrase, *to ask some one to do something*, use bitten with a phrase, not a clause.

She asked him to wait for her. **Sie bat ihn, auf ſie zu warten.**
I ask you not to drag it (the communication) out too long.
Ich bitte Sie, dieſelbe (die Mitteilung) nicht zu lange auszudehnen.
— Freytag.

Note. — Bitte (for ich bitte) is used for English *if you please*, and also for *you are welcome* in answer to *thank you* (danke).

(2) Fragen (reg., aux. haben) means *to inquire, to ask* (*a question*). It takes the accusative or two accusatives.

(*a*) *To ask if* or *ask whether* is fragen ob, followed by a clause, not a phrase.

Did you ask me something? **Haben Sie mich etwas gefragt?**
He asked her if she could go along.
Er fragte ſie, ob ſie mitgehen könnte.
I also will ask you one thing.
Ich will euch auch ein Wort fragen. — Bibel, Matt. 21, 24.

(*b*) To translate *to ask about* or *ask after* something, use fragen **nach** with the dative.

They asked after his health. **Sie fragten nach ſeiner Geſundheit.**
Then I asked about my indebtedness.
Da fragt' ich nach der Schuldigkeit. — Uhland.

Note. — (*a*) Remember that fragen always takes the accusative of the person to whom the question is put, while ſagen, *to say to, to tell,*

always has the dative of the person to whom the statement is made. Compare fragten ſie ihre Freunde (§ 12, l. 6) and ſagten ſie den Römern (§ 12, l. 12).

(*b*) *To ask* (*put*) *questions* is Fragen ſtellen with the dative.

Now I will ask you a question or two.
Jetzt ſtell' ich Ihnen ein paar Fragen.
A fool asks more questions than a hundred wise men can answer.
Ein Narr ſtellt mehr Fragen, als hundert Weiſe beantworten können.
—Sprichwort.

16. The English adverb *there* is usually **dort** or **da.** These adverbs, da and dort, should never be used for the factitive *there* in expressions like *there are, there was,* and so on.

(1) Dort is used for more distant places than da, or when the speaker wishes to be more definite. English *over there* is always dort.

I don't see anything over there. **Dort ſeh' ich nichts.**
The fairest maiden is sitting so wondrous up there.
Die ſchönſte Jungfrau ſitzet dort oben wunderbar.—Heine.

(2) Da is generally used in cases where no particular place is specified.

There they were without [*an*] *umbrella.*
Da waren ſie ohne Regenſchirm.
There stood poor Hans thunderstruck.
Da ſtand der arme Hans wie vom Donner gerührt.—Hillern.

17. The German **da** has several other common uses.

(1) Da, (*and*) *then,* is used at the beginning of a sentence to keep a narrative lively.

And then it broke out afresh. **Da ging es wieder los.**
And then Mariette went out and wept bitterly.
Da ging Mariette hinaus und weinte bitterlich.—Zſchokke.

(2) Da, *here,* is less definite than hier. It refers especially to one's being *at home,* or *back, having arrived.*

Is Miss Fisher here, please? **Bitte, iſt Fräulein Fiſcher da?**
I'm glad you're here again.
Es freut mich, daß Sie wieder da ſind.
Here I am again. **Da bin ich wieder.** — Hebbel.

(3) Da, *as*, is a conjunction and is followed by the dependent order. It is used when *as* gives a reason.

As it is late, we must go.
Da es ſchon ſpät iſt, müſſen wir fort.
As he wasn't here by eleven o'clock, he won't come.
Da er bis elf Uhr nicht da war, bleibt er aus. — Gerſtäcker.

18. English *to sit* (*down*) has two translations in German: **ſitzen** and **ſich ſetzen.**

(1) Sitzen (ſaß, geſeſſen, aux. haben) means *to sit, to be in a sitting posture.* The *place where* is indicated by a preposition with the dative.

Where did you sit? **Wo haben Sie geſeſſen?**
I was sitting on a mountain. **Ich ſaß auf einem Berge.** — Grün.

(2) Sich ſetzen (reg., aux. haben) means *to sit down, to put oneself into a sitting posture.* The *place where* (*whither*) is indicated by a preposition with the accusative. The idea of *motion towards* something is often strengthened by the particle **hin.**

Where shall I sit?
Wo ſoll ich mich hinſetzen? or, **Wohin ſoll ich mich ſetzen?**
Here he sat down in the armchair by the window.
Hier ſetzte er ſich in den Lehnſtuhl ans Fenſter. — Storm.

19. English *man* is usually rendered by **der Menſch** or **der Mann.** Never use man (§ 57).

(1) Der Menſch (des Menſchen) is used in the general sense of *person, human being* (Latin *homo*).

Man proposes, God disposes.
Der Menſch denkt, Gott lenkt. — Sprichwort.

Man errs as long as he strives.
Es irrt der Menſch, ſolang' er ſtrebt. — Goethe.

(2) Der Mann (die Männer) is used for *man* as distinguished from woman (Latin *vir*). It is also the common word for *husband*, der Gatte and der Gemahl being more formal.

He was a real man. **Er war ein echter Mann.**
You German men, say no, you German women, join in!
Ihr deutſchen Männer, rufet nein, ihr deutſchen Frauen, ſtimmet ein! — Dahn.
The husband, the protection and refuge of the wife; the wife, the ornament of the husband. **Der Mann des Weibes Schutz und Hort, das Weib des Mannes Zier.** — Freiligrath.

Exercises.

20. (*a*) 1. *Decline:* ein römiſcher Senator, die deutſche Waffe, einige Leute, das erſte Jahrhundert. 2. *Give the principal parts of:* gehen, ſehen, ſein, haben, ſitzen, ſetzen, bitten.

(*b*) 1. Which sentences in § 12 illustrate the transposed order? 2. What is the part of a transposed sentence that makes most trouble? 3. Find illustrations of the transposed order in §§ 17 and 19. 4. Point out in § 12 three different uses of da. 5. Find an example of § 17, 1 in § 15, 2; of § 19, 1 in § 6, 2; of § 19, 2 in § 4. 6. Find in § 17 one sentence illustrating both § 17, 2 and § 17, 3.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Darf ich um Ihr Buch bitten? 2. Was haben Sie mich gefragt? 3. Ich ſage Ihnen, es iſt nicht da. 4. Wer will noch Fragen ſtellen? 5. Bitte, ſetzen Sie ſich dort hinten! 6. Jetzt bin ich wieder da!

21. (*a*) 1. He asked if Miss Fisher were here. 2. I asked the man to sit down. 3. As he wasn't sitting at

his own seat, the teacher asked him to sit down over there (§ 18, 2). 4. And then we asked the man a couple more questions. 5. As she asked so courteously for the book, we told her (§ 15, 2, Note *a*) that she could have it. 6. Did you ask after her health?

(*b*) 1. For hours the man sat there in (an) the same seat. 2. If you are looking for his house, why don't you ask some

3. THE PORTA NIGRA, OR BLACK GATE, AT TRIER. — The most imposing Roman ruin in Germany.

one the number? 3. The teacher asked so many questions, that the pupil asked him to stop. 4. As you are here again, I will ask you to sit down over there. 5. He asked me what I wanted, and I asked him for his knife. 6. No man can answer all the questions [which] a child asks.

(*c*) *The Germans in Rome.* — 1. Many years ago the Romans asked some Germans to see the combats in the Coloseum. 2. There the Germans saw some men, who were sitting among the Roman senators, but who were not Romans. 3. When the Germans asked their friends who these men were, they were told (ſagte man ihnen) that these people were strangers. 4. They had distinguished themselves by their fidelity to the Romans. 5. Then the Germans went over there and sat down by (zu) the strangers. 6. They said that no man excelled the Germans.

CHAPTER III.

WORD ORDER — TRANSPOSED. COMPOUND TENSES.

Dietrich von Bern.

22. Alte deutsche Sagen erzählen, daß Dietrich von Bern alle anderen Könige besiegt habe. Noch andere Sagen erzählen von Siegfried, der den Drachen erschlug. Da beide

4. The Tomb of Theodoric at Ravenna. — The most important Gothic monument in existence. The roof is hewn from a single huge rock and weighs nearly a million pounds.

Helden bisher in jedem Kampfe gesiegt hatten, fürchtete sich der eine nicht vor dem anderen.

Die schöne Kriemhilde, die Braut Siegfrieds, sagte ihrem

Verlobten, daß er mit Dietrich kämpfen solle. Siegfried war unverwundbar, weil er sich im Drachenblut gebadet hatte, aber Dietrich schlug ihn so heftig, daß er ohnmächtig zu Kriemhildens Füßen niedersank und nun also der Besiegte war. Dietrich schenkte ihm das Leben und kehrte wieder unbesiegt in seine Heimat zurück.

Syntax.

23. Transposed Order — Compound Tenses. — With compound tenses in the dependent order, the auxiliary is put at the end of the clause, whether it is an auxiliary of tense (haben, sein, werden) or of mode (dürfen, können, and so on). The infinitive or participle comes just before the auxiliary.

(1) As the auxiliary is the element that tells mode, tense, voice, person, and number and so gives definiteness to the sentence, it is appropriate that it should occupy a more emphatic place — the end position — than infinitive or participle. Thus German clauses are always periodic. (German generally uses the past tense in narrative, but in § 22 the perfect is used, the better to illustrate compound tenses.)

He said that he would come. **Er sagte, daß er kommen würde.**

What is once printed belongs to the whole world for all time.
Was einmal gedruckt ist, gehört der ganzen Welt auf ewige Zeiten.
— Lessing.

It was a branch that he had fastened to a dead tree.
Es war ein Ast, den er an einen dürren Baum gebunden hatte.
— Grimm.

Notes.

24. *Historical Note.* — Theodoric the Great was ruler of the East Goths, a German tribe living on the Danube. He led his people across the Alps to settle in Italy, and in 490 A.D. won a

great battle at Verona (Bern) which left Northern Italy in his hands. He established his capital at Ravenna and was recognized as the greatest of the German chieftains. After his death (526) the Gothic power fell away before the Lombards, who were in turn to give way to the more powerful Franks, by whom the first German Empire was to be founded. But Theodoric of Verona, Dietrich von Bern, has always been a central figure in German legend.

25. English *to be afraid of* is **ſich fürchten** (reg., aux. **haben**) **vor** with the dative.

He was afraid of the dog. **Er fürchtete ſich vor dem Hunde.**
I am afraid of no one but you.
Ich fürchte mich nicht, vor keinem, als nur vor dir. — Heyſe.

26. English *so* has two common German renderings: **ſo** and **alſo.**

(1) As an adverb of manner or degree in the sense of *thus, so* is German **ſo.** **So** is also used to translate the first *as* in comparisons, like *as good as*, **ſo gut (wie)**, *as far as*, **ſo weit (wie).**

I meant it so. **So habe ich's gemeint.**
The concealer is as bad as the stealer.
Der Hehler iſt ſo ſchlimm wie der Stehler. — Sprichwort.
But everything that drove me to it was oh! so good, so dear.
Doch alles was mich dazu trieb, Gott! war ſo gut, ach! war ſo lieb.
— Goethe.

(2) In the sense of *then* (*therefore*), *so* is usually German **alſo**, which never means English *also.*

So you will come at ten. **Sie kommen alſo um zehn.**
So we can be as dilatory as we wish.
Wir können alſo ſo weitläufig ſein, wie wir wollen. — Schiller.

Note. — For *that's so, just so, that's true, that's right*, German uses the adverb **eben.**

27. English *to conquer* is **ſiegen** or **beſiegen.** Both are weak verbs and take **haben** as auxiliary, but ſiegen is intransitive. So when *conquer* is transitive, beſiegen must be used. Beſiegen never means *besiege* (belagern).

The Germans conquered (won). **Die Deutſchen ſiegten.**
The Germans conquered the Romans.
Die Deutſchen beſiegten die Römer.
You must conquer or fall; conquered by one is conquered by all.
Du mußt ſiegen oder fallen; beſiegt von einem iſt beſiegt von allen.
—Schiller.

28. English *to tell* has two common translations in German: **erzählen** and **ſagen.**

(1) Erzählen (reg., aux. haben) means *to relate,* and is used chiefly of telling stories or relating events.

You told us an interesting story.
Sie haben uns eine intereſſante Geſchichte erzählt.
I'll tell you a funny tale.
Ich will euch erzählen ein Märchen gar ſchnurrig.—Bürger.

(2) Sagen (reg., aux. haben) is used in less formal cases for to *tell somebody* (dat.) *something* (acc.) or *to tell somebody* (dat.) *to do* something (clause).

What shall I tell him? **Was ſoll ich ihm ſagen?**
Please tell him to come here.
Bitte ſagen Sie ihm, daß er hierher kommen ſoll.
You didn't tell her of my visit?
Du haſt ihr nicht von meinem Beſuch geſagt?—Storm.

29. English *the one(s)* has three common renderings in German.

(1) As a demonstrative, especially before the relative (der or welcher), *the one* is usually translated by the demonstrative der, die, das. The relative cannot be omitted in German.

Is John the one you mean? **Iſt Johann der, den Sie meinen?**
I am the one who built it. **Ich bin der, der es baute.**
—Hauptmann.

Woe to the one who (tells) lies. **Weh' dem, der lügt.**
—Grillparzer.

Note.—In more formal style derjenige (diejenige, dasjenige, *gen.* desjenigen, etc.) may be used for *the one* (*who*) instead of der. It is rare in conversation.

(2) For *one, the one* in contrast with one or more *others* (andere) German uses **der eine.**

One translated well, the other didn't.
Der eine hat gut überſetzt, der andere nicht.
The one was a head taller than the other.
Der eine war einen Kopf größer als der andere.—Wildenbruch.

(3) For *one* following an English adjective, as *the new one,* German uses simply the inflected adjective following the definite article. It must have the gender of the noun to which it refers.

That isn't my hat; mine is the little one.
Das iſt mein Hut nicht; der kleine gehört mir.
I had a comrade; you'll not find a better one.
Ich hatt' einen Kameraden, einen beſſern findſt du nit (nicht).
—Uhland.

30. English *other* is usually **ander** or **noch ein.**

(1) Ander (=er, =e, =es) means *other* when used in the sense of *different.*

Bring me another cup; this is cracked.
Bringen Sie mir eine andere Taſſe; dieſe hat einen Sprung.
He can go some other time.
Er kann ein andres Mal (or **ein andermal**) **gehen.**
What you don't want done to you, don't do another.
Was du nicht willſt, daß man dir tu', das füg' auch keinem andern zu. [The "golden rule" in German]—Sprichwort.
I cannot do otherwise. **Ich kann nicht anders.**—Luther.

Note. — English *else* is usually ander in positive statements, ſonſt in questions.

To-morrow he will begin something else.
Morgen fängt er etwas anderes an. — Thoma.
What else, by the Styx? There is nothing else!
Was ſonſt, beim Styx? Nichts anders gibt's. — Kleiſt.

(2) Noch ein means *other* in the sense of *one more* of the same kind. Noch should always be used in asking for *more* of anything.

Bring me another cup of coffee; it tastes fine.
Bringen Sie mir noch eine Taſſe Kaffee; er ſchmeckt vortrefflich (compare § 30, 1, first example).
He can go once more (*one more time*).
Er kann noch einmal gehen (compare § 30, 1, second example).
Another bite, and it's done.
Noch einen Biß, ſo iſt's geſchehen. — Goethe.

Exercises.

31. (*a*) 1. *Decline:* jeder Kampf, die alte deutſche Sage, das Drachenblut. 2. *Give the principal parts of:* erſchlagen, niederſinken, ſchenken, zurückkehren.

(*b*) 1. Which sentences in § 22 illustrate the transposed order for compound tenses? 2. When does an English verb come at the end of a subordinate clause? 3. Find illustrations of the transposed order in § 30. 4. Find an example of § 30, 1 in § 29, 2. 5. Find in § 26 one example which illustrates both § 26, 1 and § 26, 2. 6. Memorize the last examples in § 29, 1 and § 30, 1.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Alſo fürchte dich nicht! 2. Komm doch ſo ſchnell wie möglich! 3. Ich hab' es ihm ſchon geſagt. 4. Der eine weiß es, der andere nicht. 5. Geben Sie mir, bitte, noch einen Bogen Papier. 6. Ich habe zwei Hüte; der alte iſt grau, der neue ſchwarz.

32. (*a*) 1. I'm not afraid of any man (§§ 9 and 19, 1). 2. A saga tells that Siegfried had usually won, but Dietrich conquered him. 3. I told him that I had been looking for something else. 4. The Germans were not so much afraid of the Romans after Hermann had conquered them. 5. She told me that she would bring another book. 6. The one told the other that he did not mean it so.

(*b*) 1. Did you tell him to (daß er . . . ſollte) bring another cup of tea? 2. This is my old hat, but I have another one. 3. The teacher told us that this exercise would not be so hard as the other one. 4. If it is, he will give us another easier one. 5. Perhaps he will tell us a story, how Dietrich conquered Siegfried. 6. The one was not so much afraid as the other.

(*c*) *Siegfried and Dietrich.* — 1. An old saga tells us that Siegfried had always conquered when he fought. 2. So Kriemhilde told him to conquer Dietrich. 3. The one was not afraid of the other. 4. But Dietrich struck Siegfried so hard that he sank down unconscious. 5. These two heroes are the ones of whom we have heard so often. 6. Siegfried is the younger one, Dietrich the older one.

CHAPTER IV.

REVIEW.

Denn.

33. The Germans use the particle **denn** in almost every spoken question. It is not translated in English. When it would otherwise come at the end of a sentence, it is often followed by eigentlich, *really.*

What's that? **Was iſt denn das?**
Where are you going? **Wohin gehen Sie denn eigentlich?**
Really? How so? How so?
Wahrlich? Wie ſo denn? Wie denn ſo?—Leſſing.
Why does he have to go to Capri?
Warum muß er denn nach Capri?—Heyſe.

Exercises.

34. (*a*) 1. Explain in detail the inverted and transposed orders. 2. Illustrate each with sentences of your own making and also with quotations from the authors cited in the text.

(*b*) 1. Make a list of the different classes of nouns that have already appeared in the German stories. 2. Make a list of the classes of strong or irregular verbs that have already been used in the German stories.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Was iſt denn das? 2. Wer iſt denn fertig? 3. Wo wohnen Sie denn eigentlich? 4. Wer hat denn noch eine Frage zu ſtellen? 5. Bitte, wollen Sie uns die Geſchichte erzählen? 6. Was ſuchen Sie denn, ein andres Buch?

35. (*a*) 1. If she asks for another sheet of paper, why don't you give it to her? 2. I haven't the book of which (wovon) you told us. 3. Where is the one I asked for (worum)? 4. He was so afraid, that the other man conquered him. 5. So I told them that they shouldn't ask any more (§§ 9 and 30, 2) questions. 6. For a whole hour we waited for the man, while (während) he was looking for his money.

(*b*) 1. It was many weeks ago that you told us the story of Hermann. 2. As long as (ſolange) my father lived, we lived on (in der) Charles Street. 3. As the boy told the teacher he was sick, the teacher did not ask him any questions. 4. A week ago, as the boy didn't have any money, he asked his father for a quarter (eine Mark). 5. Please sit over there where I can see you better. 6. So he told her that he did not want to ask any questions.

(*c*) 1. I told him that one or the other must conquer. 2. Please give me another pen; haven't you a good one? 3. This isn't the one I asked for; this is an old one. 4. In another saga they (man) tell how Dietrich had conquered Siegfried. 5. He was afraid of the teacher who asked him such hard questions, so he sat very quiet in his seat. 6. No man can ask so many questions as a child.

CHAPTER V.

WORD ORDER. POSITION OF Nicht.

Karl der Große in der Schule.

36. Karl der Große beherrschte beinahe die ganze Christenheit, aber er konnte kaum lesen und schreiben. Als er älter wurde, wünschte er das nachzuholen, was er in seiner Jugend nicht gelernt hatte. Aber seiner schweren Hand wollte es nicht gelingen, die feinen Buchstaben zu machen. Als er an seine Jugend dachte, in der er das Reiten und Fechten so leicht gelernt hatte, mußte er seufzen.

5. CHARLEMAGNE. — From a painting by Albrecht Dürer in the Germanic Museum at Nuremberg.

„Was kann ich dafür," sagte er, „daß meine Hand nicht an die leichte Feder, sondern an das schwere Schwert gewöhnt ist! Aber was wird man von einem Kaiser denken, der seinen Namen nicht schreiben kann?" Doch brauchte Kaiser Karl seinen Namen nicht mit der Feder zu schreiben,

denn er hat ihn mit seinen Taten in das Buch der Zeiten geschrieben.

Syntax.

37. Position of nicht. — When nicht modifies the whole clause, it comes at or near the end. In *main clauses* with *simple tenses* it comes at the end (*e*), except that a separable prefix follows it (*a*). In main clauses with *compound tenses* it comes just before the participle or infinitive (*b*). In *subordinate clauses* it comes just before the verb, whether simple or compound (*c*); with *infinitive phrases*, just before zu (*d*).

(*a*) *I won't admit that.* **Das gebe ich nicht zu.**
(*b*) *I haven't seen him the last few days.*
Ich habe ihn in diesen letzten Tagen nicht gesehen.
(*c*) *He looked as if he hadn't understood.*
Er sah aus, als ob er nicht verstanden hätte.
(*d*) *They don't wish to go.* **Sie wünschen nicht zu gehen.**
(*e*) *He couldn't see the wood for the trees.*
Er sah den Wald vor lauter Bäumen nicht. — Sprichwort.

Note. — The above rule, and in fact most rules for German order, are special cases of the general principle that *in the predicate of a German sentence the more important parts come last.* Of course, there are exceptions, but it is interesting to apply this rule to the many apparent peculiarities of German order. The negative is naturally, with the exception of the verb, the most important element in the predicate; hence its position.

(1) When nicht does not modify the whole clause, it stands just before the particular word or phrase it negatives.

You gave it to me, not to him. **Sie haben es mir, nicht ihm gegeben.**
Who himself is not farther than you, can't bring you any farther.
Wer selbst nicht weiter ist als du, der kann dich auch nicht weiter bringen. — Rückert.

Notes.

38. *Historical Note.* — After the death of Theodoric (526) the power of the Goths declined, and later another German tribe, the Franks, gained the supremacy. Of the Franks the greatest was Charles the Great or *Charlemagne*, as he is also called (768–814). (In this book the dates of rulers are usually those of their reigns.) He occupies as important a place in German history as Dietrich von Bern does in German myths. The last great figure in a long line of powerful Frankish kings, he extended the Frankish kingdom to include France, Germany, and part of Italy, and on Christmas Day, 800, the Pope at Rome crowned him *Emperor of the Germans*, the so-called Revival of the Roman Empire in the West. But this glory was of short duration. In 843, only twenty-nine years after his death, his realm fell to pieces, never again to be united in its entirety.

39. English *to help* has two common German renderings.

(1) *To help* in the sense of *to assist* is helfen (half, geholfen, aux. haben), followed by the dative.

Will you please help me? **Bitte, wollen Sie mir helfen?**
I can't help you, child. **Ich kann dir nicht helfen, Kind.** — Heyse.

(2) The English idiom *help it* is rendered by dafür. For the negative either nicht or nichts may be used.

I couldn't help it. **Ich konnte nicht dafür.**
He can't help it. **Der kann nichts dafür.** — Wildenbruch.

Note. — When the English idiom *help* is followed by a verbal in *-ing* (*he can't help crying*), German usually says simply *to have to*, müssen.

I couldn't help believing it. Ich mußte es glauben.

40. English *to want* (*to*), *to wish* (*to*), has two German equivalents: **wollen** and **wünschen.**

(1) Wollen (reg., aux. haben, pres., ich will, du willst) means *will, intend to*, or *want to*. It is less definitely a wish than wünschen and is followed by the infinitive without zu.

He wanted to go home. **Er wollte nach Hauſe gehen.**
Won't you take off your wraps? **Wollen Sie nicht ablegen?**
I will not — will not hear.
Ich will nicht — will nicht hören. — Hauptmann.

(2) Wünſchen is used for the definite expression of a wish for something. It denotes an immediate desire, and is rather rare in conversation. For purposes of variety it may replace wollen, but it is really more formal, *to desire*, while wollen is more *to want*.

What do you wish? **Was wünſchen Sie?**
I wish for a ball for my birthday!
Zum Geburtstag wünſche ich mir einen Ball.
It is easy to wish for too much.
Man wünſchet leicht zum Überfluß. — Uhland.

41. English *to think of* is **denken** (dachte, gedacht, aux. haben) with **an** or **von**.

(1) Denken an (with the accusative) means *to think of* in the sense of *to consider, to remember*.

I didn't think of that. **Daran habe ich nicht gedacht.**
The gallant man thinks last of himself.
Der brave Mann denkt an ſich ſelbſt zuletzt. — Schiller.

Note. — For *I shouldn't think of* (*such a thing*), German says: Es fällt mir (gar) nicht ein, *It doesn't occur to me.*

What are you thinking of? Was fällt dir ein? — Goethe.

(2) Denken von (with the dative) means *to think of* only in the sense of *to have an opinion of*

What do you think of him? **Was denken Sie von ihm?**
That's what she thinks of me! **So denkt ſie von mir!** — Freytag.

42. In English *to get* is used in countless ways. Its three chief German equivalents are **bekommen, holen,** and **werden**.

(1) Bekommen (bekam, bekommen, aux. haben) means *to get* in the sense of *to receive, to secure.* It never means *to become* (werden).

What did you get for Christmas?
Was haſt du zu Weihnachten bekommen?
He won't get anything from us old people, either.
Von uns Alten bekommt er auch nichts. — Storm.

(2) Holen (reg., aux. haben) means *to get* in the sense of *to go and get, to fetch.*

You must get some more paper. **Sie müſſen noch Papier holen.**
We'll go into the forest and get wood.
Wir wollen in den Wald gehen und Holz holen. — Grimm.

(3) Werden (wurde, geworden, aux. ſein) means *to get* only in the sense of *to become.*

It's getting terribly hot here. **Hier wird es furchtbar heiß.**
It is getting stiller in the streets.
Stiller wird es auf den Straßen. — Körner.

43. The English conjunction *but* has two German equivalents.

(1) Aber is generally used for *but*, in the sense of *however.*

He was poor, but proud. **Er war arm, aber ſtolz.**
They were not tired, but we asked them to be seated.
Sie waren nicht müde, aber wir baten ſie, ſich zu ſetzen.
For many are called, but few are chosen.
Denn viele ſind berufen, aber wenige ſind auserwählet.
— Bibel, Matt. 20, 16.

Note. — In the second example above, though a negative precedes *but*, no contrast or alternative is indicated. Aber may follow the subject or even the verb and object.

The adverb *but* is nur; *nothing but* is nichts als.

But I won't do it. Ich aber tue es nicht, or, Ich tue es aber nicht.

We live but once [*in the world*].
Man lebt nur einmal in der Welt. — Sprichwort.
One is desperately little when one is nothing but honest.
Man ist verzweifelt wenig, wenn man nichts als ehrlich ist. — Lessing.

(2) **Sondern**, in the sense of *but instead, but rather*, is used only to indicate an alternative after a negative.

He was not poor, but rich.
Er war nicht arm, sondern reich.
But she didn't go past, but stopped.
Aber sie ging nicht vorbei, sondern blieb stehen. — Zschokke.

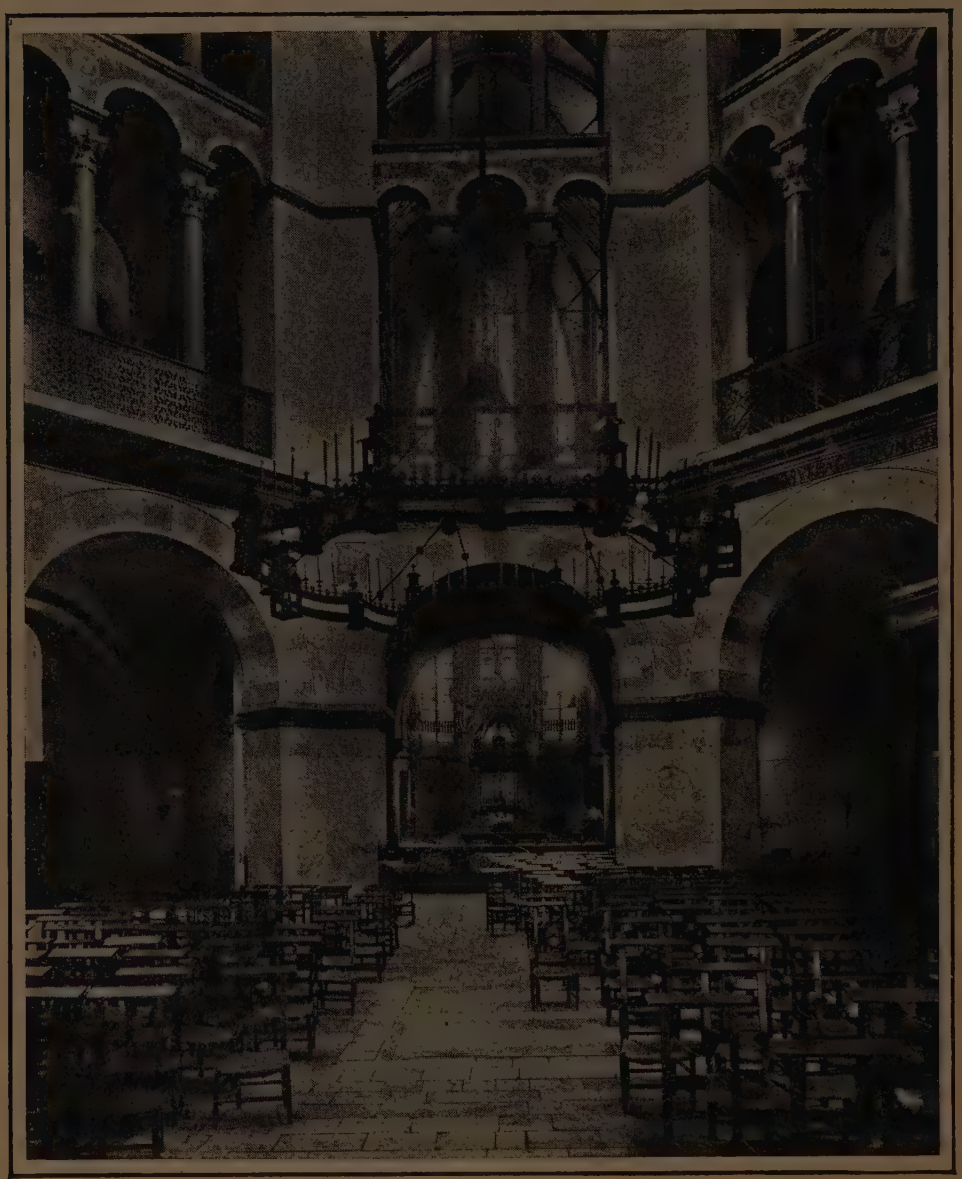
Exercises.

44. (*a*) 1. *Decline:* Karl der Große, (Karls des Großen), die leichte Feder, das schwere Schwert. 2. *Give the principal parts of:* lesen, denken, schreiben, nachholen, brauchen.

(*b*) 1. Which sentences in § 36 illustrate the position of nicht? 2. Give the general principle for order in the predicate of a German sentence. 3. Does the general principle apply to transposed order? To inverted order? 4. Learn the last example before the Note in § 37, in § 41, 1, and in § 43, 1, and the last example in § 43, 1, Note.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Ich kann nicht dafür! 2. Wo wollen Sie denn hin? 3. Er hat aber nicht daran gedacht. 4. Was fällt dir denn ein? 5. Hole nicht das rote Buch, sondern das braune. 6. Bitte, mein Herr, was wünschen Sie?

45. (*a*) 1. As he would not get his books, the teacher did not help him. 2. She got quite red, but she could not help it. 3. I was not thinking of the long saga, but of a shorter one. 4. What were you thinking of, when you helped that pupil? 5. I didn't help him, but his little brother. 6. If she didn't want to help him, I couldn't help it.



6. The Cathedral at Aachen. — The Carolingian part of the church, under which Charlemagne was buried.

(*b*) 1. What do you think of this hat? Isn't it what you wished? 2. I can't help it if you did not get a good one. 3. She didn't want that little hat, but a big black one. 4. I did not think of that, but of something else. 5. What did you get for your (zum) birthday? 6. It's getting very warm here, but I cannot help it.

(*c*) *Charlemagne.* — 1. When Charles the Great became Emperor, he wanted to learn to write. 2. His friends helped him and got a pen and paper, but his hand wasn't used to the pen, but to the sword. 3. He wished that he had thought of it oftener, when he was young. 4. "I can't help it," he said, and he got quite angry. 5. "What will they (man) think of me?" he asked. 6. But Charles the Great did not write his name upon paper, but in history.

CHAPTER VI.

WORD ORDER. POSITION OF ADVERBS.

Der Rolandsbogen.

46. Karl der Große hatte einen Neffen, der Roland hieß, und der gern an allen Feldzügen teilnahm. Roland, der noch nicht verheiratet war, wollte nach seiner Rückkehr von einem Feldzug nach Spanien die schöne Hildegund heiraten. Es verging längere Zeit, viele Male kamen Boten vom Kriegsschauplatze, aber kein einziges Mal hörte man etwas von ihm. Ja, eine Zeitlang hielt man ihn sogar für tot, denn man hatte ihn überall vergebens gesucht. Seine treue Braut jedoch wartete lange auf ihn; endlich ging sie traurig in ein Kloster.

Roland kehrte aber schließlich doch zurück und hat dann überall verzweifelt seine Braut gesucht. Als er hörte, daß sie Nonne geworden sei, baute er ein Schloß, von wo aus er auf ihr Kloster hinabschauen konnte. Von diesem Schloß steht jetzt nur noch ein einziger Bogen. Den nennt man den Rolandsbogen.

Syntax.

47. Position of Adverbs. — A single adverb has the same position in the sentence as nicht. When *two* or *more adverbs* occur together, they follow the order (1) time, (2) place, (3) manner. (Think of the number of letters in those three words: 4, 5, and 6.) Adverbial phrases also follow this same order. This is

7. ROLAND'S ARCH ON THE RHINE. — Some of the famous Seven Mountains are seen in the distance.

only another phase of the general principle for order in the predicate, § 37, Note.

We looked for the book to-day eagerly everywhere.
Wir haben das Buch heute überall eifrig geſucht.

He hasn't been there for so long.
Er iſt ſo lange nicht dort geweſen. — Freytag.
One often hears in the distant wood a muffled ringing from above.
Man höret oft im fernen Wald, von obenher ein dumpfes Läuten.
— Uhland.

(1) When an adverb modifies an adjective or another adverb, it stands immediately before the word it qualifies.

It is most probable. **Es iſt höchſt wahrſcheinlich.**
I'm much better now. **Jetzt geht es mir viel beſſer.**
The mills of God grind slowly, but they grind exceeding small.
Gottes Mühlen mahlen langſam, mahlen aber trefflich klein.
— Logau.

Notes.

48. *Historical Note.* — In the battle of *Tours* (732) the Franks, commanded by the grandfather of Charlemagne, drove the Mohammedans (Moors) from Southern France back into Spain and thus saved Europe to Christianity. But the Moors remained in Spain until the year America was discovered (1492). All through the Middle Ages, until the time of the Crusades to the Holy Land (1095), pious knights used to go to Spain to fight the Moors. Of these knights the most famous is *Roland*, about whom an interesting group of legends has grown up similar to those of Dietrich von Bern and Siegfried. Some of these tell how Roland was killed at Roncesvalles in the Pyrenees on his return from one of these campaigns. Still others tell the story as it is given here.

49. English *to be called, to be named,* is rendered in German by **nennen** and **heißen.**

(1) Nennen (nannte, genannt, aux. haben) is used both actively and passively for *to call,* while heißen has usually only a passive meaning.

Elsewhere they call him a hero.
Anderswo nennt man ihn einen Helden. — Sudermann.
I must call this madness.
Dies muß ich Wahnſinn nennen. — Hauptmann.

(2) Heißen (hieß, geheißen, aux. haben) is used chiefly for *my name is, your name is,* and so on.

What's your name, please? **Bitte, wie heißen Sie?**
His name was Charles. **Er hieß Karl.**
Were I cautious, my name would not be Tell.
Wär' ich besonnen, hieß' ich nicht der Tell. — Schiller.

Note. — In the classroom *to be* (*translated*) is regularly rendered by heißen.

What is that in German? Wie heißt das auf deutsch?
What is the whole passage? Wie heißt die ganze Stelle? — Lessing.

50. The English word *time* has several German translations.

(1) Die Zeit is used in the general sense of *duration of time.*

The times are hard. **Die Zeiten sind schwer.**
I have no time to be tired. **Ich habe keine Zeit, müde zu sein.**
— Kaiser Wilhelm I.

(2) Eine Zeitlang, used only in the accusative case, is the regular equivalent of English *for a time.* Compare § 5.

For a time I lived in Hermann Street.
Eine Zeitlang habe ich in der Hermannstraße gewohnt.
For a time he walked up and down in his room.
Er ging eine Zeitlang in seinem Zimmer auf und nieder. — Storm.

Note. — Do not confuse this with *a long time,* which German renders simply by the adverb **lange.**

I looked for it a long time. Ich habe es lange gesucht.
Dürer's answer was a long time coming.
Dürers Antwort blieb lange aus. — Hillern.

(3) Das Mal (die Male) is used to denote a *particular time.*

I'll be glad to go some other time.
Ein anderes Mal (also written **ein andermal**) **gehe ich gern.**
She was wrong both times. **Sie hat sich beide Male geirrt.**
Because he had given in the first time he had to also for the second time. **Weil er das erste Mal nachgegeben hatte, so mußte er es auch zum zweiten Mal.** — Grimm.

Note. — *Sometimes* is always **zuweilen**. *Once*, *twice*, *three times*, and so on are **einmal, zweimal, dreimal,** and so forth. *How many times* is **wie oft.**

Sometimes I eat four times a day. Zuweilen eſſe ich viermal täglich.
How many times have you been in Germany?
Wie oft waren Sie ſchon in Deutſchland?
Once doesn't count. Einmal iſt keinmal. — Sprichwort.

(4) *What time is it?* is Wieviel Uhr iſt es? or Wie ſpät iſt es? *O'clock* is also translated by Uhr. As in the case of English *o'clock*, Uhr is omitted when it is not exactly the even hour.

What time is it? It is ten o'clock.
Wieviel Uhr iſt es? or, **Wie ſpät iſt es? Es iſt zehn Uhr.**
(At) what time must we be there?
Um wieviel Uhr müſſen wir ſchon da ſein?
It was five o'clock in the afternoon.
Es war fünf Uhr nachmittags. — Liliencron.

Note. — In telling the quarter and half hours, German reckons toward the coming hour. Thus *quarter past twelve* becomes **ein Viertel eins**; *half past twelve*, **halb eins.** In *quarter to one*, German counts the hour three quarters gone, and says **drei Viertel eins.** Minutes are expressed as in English, **vor** or **nach** the hours.

(5) *To have a good time* is ſich (gut) amüſieren. Never say eine gute Zeit haben.

Did you have a good time? **Haſt du dich gut amüſiert?**
Yes, I had a splendid time. **Ja, ich habe mich prachtvoll amüſiert.**
He's having as good a time as a pug dog in a table drawer (that is, *he is bored to death*).
Er amüſiert ſich wie der Mops im Tiſchkaſten. — Sprichwort.

51. English *to marry* is translated in German by **verheiraten** and **heiraten.**

(1) Verheiraten (reg. insep., aux. haben) is the commoner. It means *to give in marriage* (*to*, mit). The adjective *mar-*

ried is always verheiratet, never geheiratet. *To get married* (*to*) is the reflexive ſich verheiraten (mit).

You are engaged; when do you get married?
Verlobt ſind Sie ſchon; wann werden Sie ſich verheiraten?
She married her daughter to a count.
Sie hat ihre Tochter mit einem Grafen verheiratet.
He was never married. **Er war nie verheiratet.** — Heyſe.

(2) Heiraten (reg., aux. haben) is used actively of both man and woman.

He (she) married her (him). **Er (ſie) hat ſie (ihn) geheiratet.**
Julia, the daughter, married a land-owner.
Julerl (dialect), **die Tochter, hat einen Gutsbeſitzer geheiratet.**
—Roſegger.

Exercises.

52. (*a*) 1. *Decline:* ein Neffe, ſeine treue Braut, kein einziges Mal, dieſes Schloß. 2. *Give the principal parts of:* verheiraten, halten, kommen, ſtehen, hinabſehen.

(*b*) 1. Which sentences in § 46 illustrate the position or order of adverbs? 2. What is the simplest way to remember the order of adverbs? 3. In what way is this rule a phase of the general principle, § 37, Note? 4. Find an example of the order of adverbs or adverbial phrases in § 50, 2.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Wie heißt das auf deutſch, auf engliſch? 2. Sie ſagen, Sie hätten keine Zeit? 3. Iſt Ihr Freund verheiratet? 4. Wieviel Uhr iſt es? Drei Viertel zehn. 5. Wir haben uns prachtvoll amüſiert. 6. Dies iſt das letzte Mal, daß ich's Ihnen ſage.

53. (*a*) 1. What was her name before he married her? 2. Her name was Margaret, but after she was married, her

husband called her Gretchen. 3. We looked for the glove for a long time over there. 4. He asked you politely twice, what time it is. 5. At quarter to nine we are sometimes here at school. 6. The last time I went to the theatre I had a fine time.

(*b*) 1. This is the last time that I shall ask you what that is in German. 2. What do they call a woman who has married once, but is no longer (mehr) married? 3. It is now nearly ten o'clock, and you tell me that you hadn't any time! 4. Did you have a good time when you lived for a time in Charles Street? 5. The first time that we lived there, we wanted to stay there a long time. 6. I looked for a friend eagerly for a long time, but did not find a single person (§ 19, 1) whom I knew.

(*c*) *The Knight Roland.* — 1. The nephew of Charlemagne, named Roland, wanted to marry a beautiful girl called Hildegund. 2. The last time that he took part in a campaign, she waited for a time for him. 3. They told her he was dead, but she thought so much of him that she never thought of marrying another. 4. As she got no news of him for months, she finally went sadly into a convent. 5. For a long time no man knew that Roland lived. 6. When he finally returned, no one could help it, that Hildegund had not waited for him.

CHAPTER VII.

WORD ORDER. POSITION OF OBJECTS.

Heinrich der Vogler.

54. Als König Konrad starb, kannten die deutschen Fürsten nur einen Mann, Heinrich von Sachsen, der stark genug war,

8. The Castle Church at Quedlinburg. — The tomb of Henry the Fowler is beneath the grating in the foreground.

sich auf dem Throne zu behaupten. So beschloßen sie, diesem Herzog die Krone anzubieten. Heinrich befand sich damals auf dem Vogelfang, und er wußte noch nichts von seiner Wahl.

Als ſich ihm die Überbringer der Botſchaft näherten, ſcheuchten ſie die Vögel weg. Da rief Heinrich: „Was wollen die Ritter denn? Die Herren verderben mir den ganzen Vogelfang.“ Aber als man ihm ſagte, daß er zum König erwählt wäre, rief er aus: „Du gabſt mir einen guten Fang, Herr Gott, wie dir's gefällt.“ Seitdem nennt man ihn „Heinrich den Vogler.“

Syntax.

55. Order of Objects. — The order of objects in German is like the English order. A single object follows immediately after the verb. Of a direct and indirect object, the indirect (dative) usually precedes when both are nouns, and follows when both are pronouns. When one object is a pronoun and the other a noun, the pronoun precedes.

I gave the boy my book. **Ich habe dem Knaben mein Buch gegeben.**
He gave it to his sister. **Er hat es ſeiner Schweſter gegeben.**
She gave it back to me. **Sie hat es mir zurückgegeben.**
He told me so to-day, himself.
Er ſelbſt hat es mir heute geſagt. — Freytag.

Note. — In the sentence, *I gave my brother the book*, if you want to emphasize *to whom* you gave the book, you say: Ich habe das Buch meinem Bruder gegeben. But if you want to emphasize *what* you gave your brother, you say: Ich habe meinem Bruder das Buch gegeben. Compare this with the general principle, § 37, Note.

Notes.

56. *Historical Note.* — In less than a hundred years after the death of Charles the Great, his empire had not only separated into the two great divisions later to be known as France and Germany, but even the title of Emperor, borne for a time by the kings of Germany, had fallen into disuse (899). However, the idea of the Empire had not died out, and it was revived later by the

Saxon kings of Germany. The first of this family, *Henry the Fowler* (919–936), extended the eastern boundaries of Germany, built strongholds on the frontier, and beat back the Hungarians. This work of extension and defence was carried on by his son *Otto I* (936–973). In the battle of the *Lechfeld* (955) Otto defeated the Hungarians so decisively that they never again invaded Christendom, but instead accepted Christianity and later became a part of the Empire. Having now united the different parts of Germany, Otto felt powerful enough to lead an army into Italy and to restore the Empire under the name of "The Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation" (962).

57. The German **man** must not be confused with der Mann (§ 19, 2). Man is used to translate the impersonal use of *they, we, one, you*, in expressions like *they say, one often hears*, and so on. It begins with a small letter and is always singular. It has for the possessive, ſein, for the dative, einem, and for the accusative, einen.

They say the man cannot live.
Man ſagt, der Mann könne nicht leben.
How do you get to the station?
Wie kommt man nach dem Bahnhof?
They sat down at the table, Elizabeth at Reinhardt's side.
Man ſetzte ſich an den Tiſch, Eliſabeth an Reinhardts Seite.
—Storm.

58. English *to know* has three German translations: **wiſſen, kennen,** and **können.**

(1) Wiſſen (wußte, gewußt, ich weiß, aux. haben) means *to have knowledge of.* It has to do with acts of the mind. The forms of the present, du weißt, etc., must not be confused with forms of weißen, *to whiten*, and weiſen, *to direct.*

He didn't know that. **Das wußte er nicht.**
I do not know what it means.
Ich weiß nicht, was ſoll es bedeuten.—Heine.

(2) Kennen (kannte, gekannt, aux. haben) means *to be acquainted with.* It usually has to do with what the eye can see.

Don't you know him? **Kennen Sie ihn denn nicht?**
He does not know you; but I do.
Er kennt dich nicht, ich aber kenne dich.—Schiller.

(3) Können (konnte, gekonnt, ich kann, aux. haben), aside from its regular use as an auxiliary, *to be able, can,* is also used as a transitive verb meaning *to know how to do, to be master of.* It applies to what one has learned to do, and is used in this sense chiefly of languages.

I don't know (can't speak) English. **Ich kann kein Englisch.**
He knows German. **Der kann Deutsch.**—Hebbel.

Note.—(*a*) Good illustrations of the difference between wissen and können are shown in the following sentences:

Wissen ist gut, doch können ist besser.—Geibel.
Das Publikum (*public*), das ist ein Mann,
Der alles weiß und gar nichts kann.—L. Robert.

(*b*) One of the best illustrations of the difference between kennen and können is the following sentence referring to the paintings in the Sistine Chapel at Rome:

The chapel I know right well, I know the paintings almost by heart.
Die Kapelle kenne ich recht gut, ich kann die Gemälde fast auswendig.
—Goethe.

(*c*) The following sentence illustrates the difference between kennen and wissen:

Give me your names, I want to know you, I want to know what you were. Nennt euch mir, ich will euch kennen, ich will wissen, was ihr war't.—Grillparzer.

59. English *then* has three common German renderings: **dann, damals, da.** Never translate *then* by denn (§ 33).

(1) Dann always looks to future time with reference to what has just been said. It is almost like *next.*

Where shall we go then? **Wo wollen wir dann hin?**
And then — my father — what did he do then?
Und dann — mein Vater — was, was tat er dann? — Sudermann.

(2) Damals always refers to a point in the past. It should be used where *at that time* can be substituted for *then* in the English sentence.

Then the Germans were still heathen.
Die Deutschen waren damals noch Heiden.
You were still a child then.
Du warst noch ein Kind damals. — Heyse.

(3) Da has the meaning *then* chiefly in a narrative, where it adds life and is usually translated *and then*. See § 17, 1.

Exercises.

60. (*a*) 1. *Decline:* der deutsche Fürst, man, ein Mann, die Botschaft, der Vogel. 2. *Give the principal parts of:* kennen, verderben, anbieten, erwählen, wissen.

(*b*) 1. Which sentences in § 54 illustrate the order of objects? 2. Does the order of objects in German differ from the English order? 3. Apply the general principle, § 37, Note, to each illustration of the order of objects in §§ 54 and 55. 4. Find in § 43, 1, Note, three illustrations of § 57. 5. What is the difference between Dann haben wir uns gut amüsiert and Damals haben wir uns gut amüsiert?

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Können Sie gut Deutsch? 2. Das weiß ich nicht. 3. Damals kannte ich ihn noch nicht. 4. Man weiß nicht immer, was man weiß. 5. Dann wird man es besser lesen können. 6. Wissen Sie, ob sie ihn kennt?

61. (*a*) 1. Sometimes one doesn't know what to give children for (zu) Christmas. 2. The children sat down on a bench, and the man told them a long story. 3. Three

years ago he lived for a time in Brown Street, but I did not know him then. 4. I know a man who knows German and French. 5. He asked for my German grammar and I gave it to him. 6. But he gave it back to me because he knows German so well.

(*b*) 1. He couldn't help it that he didn't know any (§ 9) German then. 2. Another time I'll work harder (fleißiger) and then I'll know it better. 3. We have a

9. The Regenstein near Blankenburg. — A picturesque ruin of one of the many castles built by Henry the Fowler.

good time in [the] school, when we know the questions the teacher asks. 4. He knew her, but she didn't know it then. 5. After some (einiger) time he asked her to marry him and then they got married. 6. They say they got many presents and lived for a time in a beautiful house.

(*c*) *Henry the Fowler.* — 1. They say Konrad knew that Henry was then the strongest prince in Germany. 2. So he asked the other German princes to choose Henry [zum] king. 3. When they gave him the crown, he was not yet called emperor, but only king. 4. But he thought of the Empire, when he gave the kingdom to his son. 5. We know his son, who was named Otto, as the man who after some time restored the Empire. 6. That was nearly a thousand years ago, but they still call him "Otto the Great."

CHAPTER VIII.

REVIEW.

Noch.

62. The particle **noch** is used in German, aside from its regular meaning of *still, more, yet,* whenever the *idea* of *yet* or *more* enters a sentence. It occurs mostly in negative sentences and is not usually translated in English.

Who else? **Wer ſonſt noch?**
He has never been in Germany. **Er war noch nie in Deutſchland.**
But he didn't begin at once. **Er fing aber noch nicht gleich an.**
—Wildenbruch.

Exercises.

63. (*a*) 1. Explain in detail the position of **nicht**; of a single adverb. 2. When two or more adverbs occur, in what order do they come? 3. Do these rules for position seem to conform to the general principle (§ 37, Note)? Explain how. 4. Does the rule for objects seem to conform to the general principle (§ 37, Note)? 5. Explain how in each of the different combinations of noun and pronoun objects. 6. What is the difference between **Ich erzählte meinem Bruder die Geſchichte** and **Ich erzählte die Geſchichte meinem Bruder?**

(*b*) 1. Make a tabulated list of the classes of nouns that have occurred thus far in the stories, and add the new ones in their proper class as you go on through the book. 2. Do the same for the classes of strong or irregular verbs.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Ich bin noch nicht fertig. 2. Damals hatte er noch nie daran gedacht. 3. Wir haben noch keine Tinte bekommen. 4. Das ist noch lange (*by a good deal*) nicht richtig. 5. Wollen Sie uns noch einmal sagen, wie das auf deutsch heißt? 6. Wer sonst noch will noch Fragen stellen?

64. (*a*) 1. Who else knows what this is in German? 2. We had never had such a good time as then. 3. She doesn't know what the teacher will ask her. 4. I couldn't help it that he wouldn't help me. 5. They say that a German general named Moltke knew seven languages. 6. I get envious when I think of it.

(*b*) 1. I fear you have but a short time to get the other books. 2. She did not know him then, but after some time they got married. 3. Then her husband wanted to live over there, but he didn't tell her, so she didn't know it. 4. Can you (§ 57) get paper and pens here, or must you look for them down town (in der Stadt)? 5. I don't know, but I will ask if they are here; then you won't have to (müssen) wait so long for them. 6. We couldn't help (§ 39, 2, Note) thinking of you, when we were having such a good (so gut) time.

(*c*) 1. I know but little German; will you please help me? 2. I shouldn't think (§ 41, 1, Note) of asking the same question twice. 3. She didn't want to get a pencil, but a pen. 4. In Germany they know how to have a good time. 5. She did not know any foreign languages. 6. Before he knew her well he called her Miss Smith for a time; then she told him her name was Margaret.

CHAPTER IX.

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES. SIMPLE TENSES.

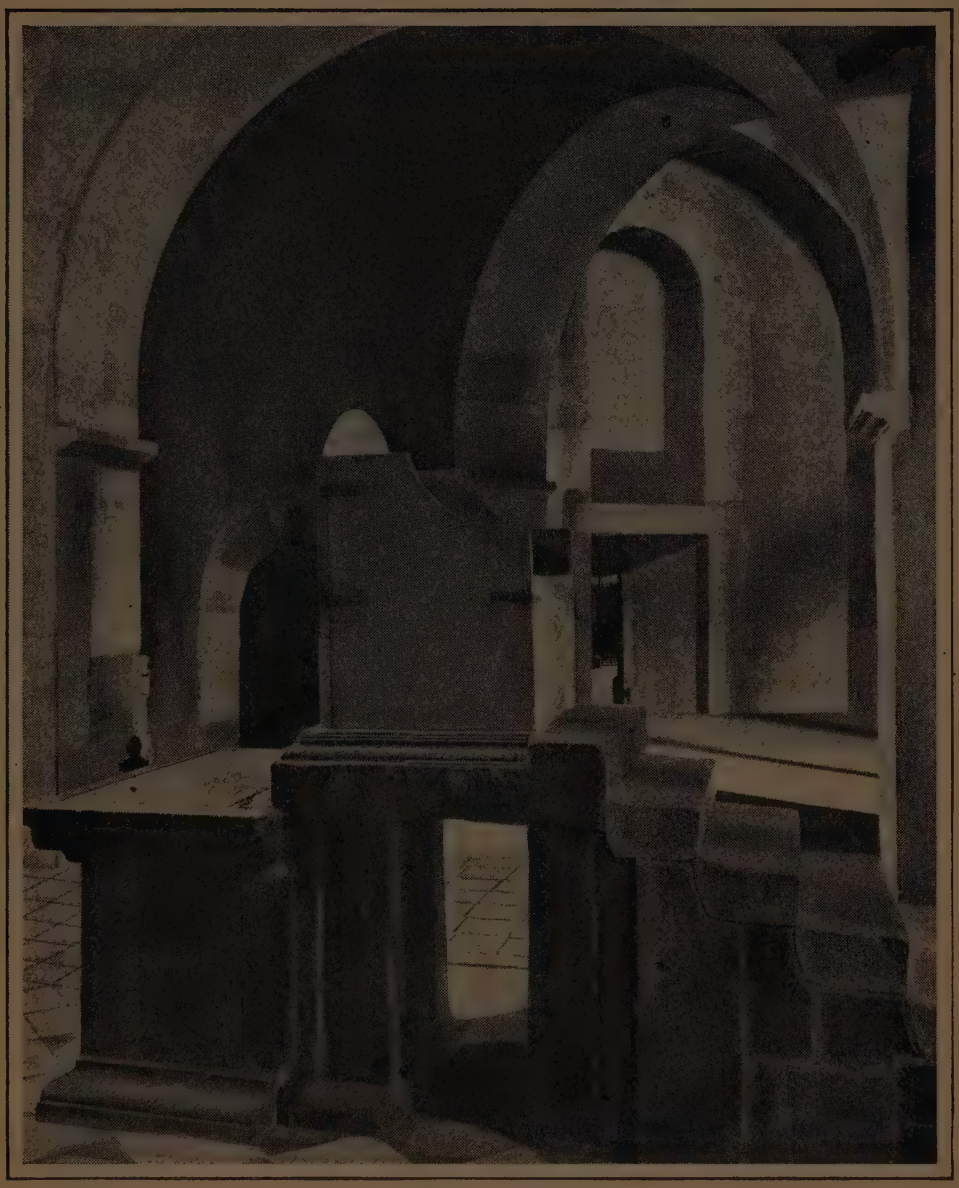
Kaiser Otto der Dritte in der Gruft Karls des Großen.

65. Der junge Kaiser Otto der Dritte wollte einst in die Gruft Karls des Großen zu Aachen hinabsteigen. Vergebens versuchte man ihn davon abzubringen. „Was kümmert mich die Ruhe der Toten?" sagte er, und er ließ die Gruft öffnen. Da saß auf goldenem Throne die Leiche Karls des Großen, vor der der tiefbewegte Otto niederkniete.

Als er nach einiger Zeit fortgehen wollte, zwang ihn ein unwiderstehlicher Drang, ein goldenes Kreuz von Karls Brust zu reißen. Da fiel die Leiche in Staub zusammen. Diese Tat warf einen Schatten auf sein ganzes späteres Leben. Und nachdem Otto, der nichts Bedeutendes geschaffen hat, gestorben war, mußte man seine Leiche von Italien nach Aachen bringen, weil er neben Karl dem Großen begraben werden wollte; „Denn," sagte er, „der Tatenlose soll beim Tatenreichen ruhen."

Syntax.

66. The Modals in Simple Tenses. — In simple tenses (present and past) the modals throw the infinitive to the end of the sentence. With them the infinitive never takes zu. Modals are rarely used alone as in English *he can, you must.* They should be followed by es or by some object. In a negative sentence of this sort, es



10. The Coronation Chair of the Emperors in the Cathedral at Aachen.

may be omitted ; nicht is then thought of as completing the modal.

Shall I show it to him ? **Soll ich es ihm zeigen ?**
I cannot, but you can. **Ich kann nicht, Sie aber können es.**

But he couldn't and wouldn't say more.

Doch mehr konnte er und wollte er nicht ſagen. — Zſchokke.

Belief is eternal, its form is earthly; we may improve it, yes, we ought to. **Der Glaub' iſt ewig, irdiſch iſt die Form; ſie dürfen wir verbeſſern, ja, wir ſollen's.** — Raupach.

But he wanted by all means to have it, and they had to call Cinderella. **Er wollte es aber durchaus haben, und Aſchenputtel mußte gerufen werden.** — Grimm.

Note. — The syntax of the German modals is simple and uniform. English modals are defective; but the German have full conjugations. When we say, *I could speak German*, we may mean that we *used to be able to* formerly, or that we *might be able to* if it were not so hard. English has but the one word, *could*, for both these meanings, for both past and conditional. German would say for the past, Vor zwanzig Jahren konnte ich Deutſch ſprechen; for the conditional: Ich könnte Deutſch ſprechen, wenn es nicht ſo ſchwer wäre. So we might almost say that the difficulty with German modals is with the English! At any rate the exact meaning of the English expression must be analyzed before it can be put into German.

Notes.

67. *Historical Note.* — Just as the descendants of Charles the Great had failed to keep his realm intact, so the heirs of Otto the Great were unable to cope with the difficulties which beset the Empire. Otto II. reigned but ten years, and Otto III. (983–1002) was only three years old when his father died. During his minority his mother and grandmother ruled for him and the power and independence of the nobles grew, thus foreshadowing another breaking up of the Empire. Otto, although intellectually so brilliant that he was called the "wonder of the world," was young and impractical, and neglected Germany to dream of the restoration of Rome as a world capital, where he was to rule in oriental splendor. But his dream was impossible; he accomplished nothing, and died in the midst of defeat.

68. English *to have* is rendered in German not only by **haben**, but by **ſein, müſſen,** and **laſſen.**

(1) Haben (hatte, gehabt, aux. haben) denotes possession and is also an auxiliary of time, like the English *to have*.

What have you there? **Was haſt du denn da?**
I have enjoyed earthly happiness; I have lived and loved.
Ich habe genoſſen das irdiſche Glück; ich habe gelebt und geliebet.
— Schiller.

(2) Sein (war, geweſen, aux. ſein) is used for *to have* only as the auxiliary for intransitive verbs. For a full treatment see § 166.

Have you been sick? **Sind Sie krank geweſen?**
The sun had not yet risen.
Die Sonne war noch nicht aufgegangen. — Heyſe.

(3) English often substitutes *to have to* for *must*. This substitution may take place in the present; it must occur in the past and future, as English has no form of *must* for these tenses. When *to have to* in English means *must*, German uses müſſen (mußte, gemußt, aux. haben). Compare also § 39, 2, Note.

I'm sorry, but we have to go.
Es tut mir leid, aber wir müſſen gehen (or **müſſen fort**).
You will have to translate it twice.
Sie werden es zweimal überſetzen müſſen.
No Oh! or Ah! helped her, she (the rose) *just had to stand it.*
Half ihm doch kein Weh und Ach, mußt' es eben leiden. — Goethe.

(4) Laſſen (ließ, gelaſſen, aux. haben) is used for *to have* in the sense of *to cause to be* (*done* or *made*).

You must have that made. **Das müſſen Sie machen laſſen.**
Francisca, have the carriage drive around!
Franziska, laß den Wagen vorfahren. — Leſſing.
The baron had had it written up so.
So hatte es der Baron aufſchreiben laſſen. — Roſegger.

Note. — The infinitive after laſſen is translated active when a personal direct object follows laſſen, and passive when the personal object is indirect (dative).

He is having his son build a house.
Er läßt ſeinen Sohn ein Haus bauen.
He is having a house built for his son.
Er läßt ſeinem Sohne ein Haus bauen.
I am having my daughter make a dress.
Ich laſſe meine Tochter ein Kleid machen.
I am having a dress made for my daughter.
Ich laſſe meiner Tochter ein Kleid machen.
Are you having the children read the book aloud?
Laſſen Sie die Kinder das Buch vorleſen?
Are you having the book read aloud to the children?
Laſſen Sie den Kindern das Buch vorleſen?

69. English *shall* and *will* have three common German equivalents: **werden, ſollen,** and **wollen.**

(1) Werden (wurde, geworden, aux. ſein) is the future auxiliary. It is used only when in English *shall* and *will* have simple future meanings, whether in declarative sentences or questions. Compare § 42, 3.

I shall not be there. **Ich werde nicht da ſein.**
Will she come to-day? **Wird ſie heute kommen?**
But nothing will come of it.
Es wird doch nichts daraus werden. — Storm.

(2) Sollen (ſollte, geſollt, ich ſoll, aux. haben) means *shall* only in the sense of *ought to, to be asked to* or *ordered to.* It never means *will.* With ſollen the necessity or intention depends on *some one besides the subject.*

Shall he help you? (Do *you* want him to?)
Soll er Ihnen helfen?
Shall we read on? (Do *you* want us to?)
Sollen wir weiterleſen?
Thou shalt not steal: (Somebody *else* forbids it.)
Du ſollſt nicht ſtehlen. — Bibel, 2 Moſe 22, 15.
The Union (newspaper) *shall be sold.* (*I* will sell it.)
Die Union ſoll verkauft werden. — Freytag.

11. THE IMPERIAL PALACE AT GOSLAR. — A favorite residence of the early emperors.

(3) **Wollen** (wollte, gewollt, ich will, aux. haben) means *will* in the sense of *want to* (see § 40, 1). It is especially common in questions. With **wollen**, the desire or intention depends *upon the subject.*

He won't pay attention. (*He* does not want to.)
Er will nicht aufpaſſen.
Shall we read on? (Do *we* want to?)
Wollen wir weiterleſen?
Will you please pass the butter? (Do *you* want to?)
Bitte, wollen Sie mir die Butter reichen?
If I wanted to do what I should, I could do all I wanted to.
Wenn ich wollte, was ich ſollte, könnt' ich alles, was ich wollte.
— Sprichwort.

Note. — **Wollen** means *shall* only in questions in the first person plural. **Wollen wir** is much commoner than **ſollen wir**. When in doubt as to how to translate *shall we*, use **ſollen wir** only when you can say *are we to.* Otherwise use **wollen wir.**

(4) *Summary.* — (*a*) The *simple future* auxiliary, whether expressed in English by *shall* or *will*, whether in declarative sentences or questions, is *always* in German some form of werden.

(*b*) *Intention* is expressed by wollen when the question rests with the subject of the verb, by ſollen when it depends upon some person or thing besides the subject.

(*c*) In general when in English you can substitute a form of *is going to*, use werden; a form of *want to*, use wollen; and a form of *ought to*, use ſollen.

Exercises.

70. (*a*) 1. Which sentences in § 65 illustrate uses of the modals? 2. What causes the chief trouble when we translate English modals into German? 3. Find illustrations of the use of modals in § 15, 2, *a*, § 15, 2, *b*, Note *b*, § 26, 2, § 27, § 28, 1, § 30, 1 (two examples), § 33, § 39, 1 and 2, § 40, 1, § 42, 2, § 49, 1, § 50, 3, and § 58, 1 and 3. The frequency of these illustrations shows how common, and so how important, is the use of modals. 4. Find in § 68, 3 an illustration of § 39, 1. 5. Memorize the last example in § 69, 3.

(*b*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Iſt er gegangen, oder iſt er noch da? 2. Wollen Sie das machen laſſen? 3. Wollen wir heute abend ins Theater gehen? 4. Werden die anderen heute abend im Theater ſein? 5. Soll ich einen neuen Anzug machen laſſen? 6. Ja, das müſſen Sie.

71. (*a*) 1. Shall we sit down over there and tell the little girl a story? 2. Shall I ask you some more questions? 3. Will he have to have a new suit? 4. Yes,

he will have to have a new one made. 5. Has he gone to the tailor, or will he come home first? 6. Will you tell me what to do (§ 69, 2)?

(*b*) 1. The next time I shall have to have a better suit made. 2. When he had been in Germany for a time, he had to have a new one made. 3. Shall we wait for the others or will you look for them? 4. Mr. Brown, shall we translate the next page for to-morrow? 5. He shall not marry her; they will be unhappy. 6. Will you please tell me how I shall get all these books?

(*c*) *The Third Otto.* — 1. Shall I tell you the story of Otto the Third, or shall we read it? 2. After Otto had had the vault of Charles the Great opened, he returned to Italy. 3. He was not afraid of the Italians, but he had to conquer them to maintain himself on the throne. 4. After he died, they (§ 57) carried his body to Aachen and buried him beside Charlemagne. 5. If you read history, you will learn how long he lived. 6. Will you do that, or shall I have to tell you [it]?

CHAPTER X.

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES. COMPOUND TENSES.

Die Rolandsäulen.

72. Im Mittelalter hatten die deutschen Städte nur wenige Rechte. Zuerst durften sie kein Gericht halten; das konnte nur der König tun. Aber später brauchten die Kaiser häufig Geld, wenn sie Krieg führen wollten, und da haben sie oft an die Städte Rechte verkaufen müssen, um das Geld zu erhalten. Die Bürger gaben ihr Geld gern für das Recht, eigene Gerichte halten zu dürfen.

Auf diese Weise haben sich viele Städte vom kaiserlichen Gericht befreien können, und sie haben als Sinnbild dieser Freiheit auf dem Marktplatz das Standbild eines riesigen Ritters errichten dürfen. Solch ein Riesenstandbild kann man heute noch in vielen deutschen Städten sehen. Man nennt es eine Rolandsäule oder bloß einen Roland.

Syntax.

73. The Modals in Compound Tenses. — Compound tenses of the modals, when not used with another verb, are regular.

I couldn't. **Ich habe es nicht gekonnt.**
I have sung what I ought to.
Was ich gesollt (habe), hab' ich gesungen. — Uhland.

(1) When used in *compound tenses with another verb*, the past participle of German modals has the same form as the infinitive. This participle with infinitive

12. The Roland at Bremen.

„Roland der Rief' am Rathaus zu Bremen." — Rückert.

form always follows the main verb ("two infinitives"), exactly the reverse of the English order.

Did you want to go? **Haben Sie gehen wollen?**
We had to stand for half an hour.
Eine halbe Stunde haben wir stehen müssen. — Thoma.
I haven't yet been able to bid you welcome.
Ich habe dich noch nicht willkommen heißen können. — Lessing.

(2) In the *dependent order* the tense auxiliary (haben or werden), instead of standing at the end of the clause, comes just before the two or more infinitives.

I think that we shall have to go.
Ich glaube, daß wir werden gehen müssen.
He said that he could not do it.
Er sagte, daß er es nicht habe tun können.
You know that you wanted to have me murdered.
Ihr wißt, daß ihr mich habt ermorden lassen wollen. — Schiller.

Notes.

74. *Historical Note.* — One of the greatest influences in medieval and modern history is the *growth of the towns.* In Germany they originated under Henry the Fowler as fortified places for markets and fairs, and grew rapidly in importance. Soon they began to secure by war and purchase "charters of liberties," which gave them their own courts and often municipal freedom (exemption from imperial taxation). They were called *free cities of the Empire*, and a Roland statue was the emblem of this independence. Later most of these cities belonged to a powerful league, the *Hansa* or Hanseatic league, whose flag floated for centuries over a majority of the ships in the North Sea. Three of these free cities, Hamburg, Bremen, and Lübeck, entered the German Empire in 1871 on a basis of equality with the other states of the present German Empire.

75. English *may* is variously rendered in German.

(1) Dürfen (durfte, gedurft, ich darf, aux. haben) is used

when *may* denotes permission. Dürfen never means *dare* (wagen).

You may go now. **Jetzt dürfen Sie gehen.**
May people go through here? **Darf man hier durchgehen?**
But if I may ask a favor, I ask just one thing.
Doch darf ich bitten, bitt' ich eins. — Goethe.

(2) Können (konnte, gekonnt, ich kann, aux. haben; not to be confused with kennen, § 58, 2) and mögen (mochte, gemocht, ich mag, aux. haben) are used for *may* chiefly with *to be*.

That may be. **Das kann sein**, or **das mag sein.**
It may be. **Es mag sein.** — Freytag.

Note. — The commonest meaning of können is English *can, to be able.* Mögen is commonly used for *to like.* See below, § 76.

(3) Where *perhaps* can be used in English instead of *may*, or where *may* is emphasized, indicating doubt, vielleicht is generally used in place of an auxiliary to translate *may.*

It may rain to-morrow. **Vielleicht regnet es morgen.**
We may be too late. **Vielleicht kommen wir zu spät.**
These people may have speculated carelessly, may be.
Diese Leute haben vielleicht leichtsinnig spekuliert, mag sein.
— Bismarck.

(4) *Summary.* — When denoting permission, *may* is always some form of dürfen. When it denotes possibility (*perhaps*), German uses vielleicht. Other uses are practically limited to, *That may be*, which German renders: Das kann sein, or less frequently, Das mag sein.

76. English *to like* has three common German renderings.

(1) Mögen (mochte, gemocht, ich mag, aux. haben) is employed for most uses of English *to like* with a direct object. Gern haben may also be used. Compare § 76, 2 below.

Don't you like Tannhäuser?
Mögen Sie Tannhäuſer nicht? or **Haben Sie Tannhäuſer nicht gern?**
You don't like her any more?
Du magſt ſie nun nicht mehr?—Hauptmann.
Father likes you, too.
Mein Vater hat Euch auch gern.—Gerſtäcker.

(2) Where English has *to like* followed by an infinitive, *I like to sing*, German uses simply the finite verb with the adverb gern, *I sing gladly.* Gern is compared: lieber, *rather, to like better to, to prefer to;* am liebſten, *to like best to.*

Do you like to study German? **Lernen Sie gern Deutſch?**
She'd rather play the piano. **Sie ſpielt lieber Klavier.**
I like best to sing. **Ich ſinge am liebſten.**
I don't like to do it. **Ich tu's nicht gern.**—Hebbel.

(3) Gefallen (gefiel, gefallen, er gefällt, aux. haben), always with the dative, is used where English can use a form of *to please* in place of *like.*

How did you like the play?
Wie hat Ihnen das Schauſpiel gefallen?
He doesn't seem to like that. **Das ſcheint ihm nicht zu gefallen.**
Annie of Tharau is the girl I like.
Ännchen von Tharau iſt, die mir gefällt.—Dach.

Note.—Never use gleichen (glich, geglichen, aux. haben, always with the dative) for *to like.* Gleichen means *to be like, to look like*, never *to like.*

He looks like his father. Er gleicht ſeinem Vater.
My heart is just like the sea.
Mein Herz gleicht ganz dem Meere.—Heine.

(4) *Summary.*—Mögen and gern (haben) are used interchangeably for *to like.* When English *like* means not so much *fondness for* as *pleasure in*, that is, when it can be rendered by *to be pleased with*, German uses gefallen. Gleichen is never used for *to like.*

77. English *to do* has two common German renderings: **machen** and **tun.**

13. THE ROLAND AT HALLE.

„Zu Halle auf dem Markt,
Da steht ein großer Rieſe." — Heiné.

(1) Machen (reg., aux. haben) contains an idea of *definite accomplishment*, of making something. It is a bit more concrete than tun.

You've done a fine job! **Da haſt du etwas Schönes gemacht!**
He didn't do that. **Das hat er nicht gemacht.**
What can be done is being done.
Was da gemacht werden kann, wird gemacht. — Bismarck.

Note. — Tun can be used in all the above cases, but machen is preferable.

(2) Tun (tat, getan, aux. haben) can be used in most cases for English *to do*. It *must* be used when *do* replaces another verb.

Children, what are you doing? You mustn't do that!
Kinder, was macht (or **tut**) **ihr denn da? Das müßt ihr nicht tun.**
It is forbidden to smoke here, but they do it just the same.
Es iſt verboten, hier zu rauchen, aber man tut es doch.
Whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them. **Alles nun, was ihr wollt, daß euch die Leute tun ſollen, das tut ihr ihnen.** — Bibel, Matt. 7, 12.

Note. — As auxiliary in the indicative or interrogative, *do* is rendered in German by the simple verb. In the imperative, emphatic *do* is usually doch.

Do you play the piano? Spielen Sie Klavier?
Your hands don't look it.
Eure Hände ſehen nicht danach aus. — Gerſtäcker.
Oh! do see! do see!
Oh! ſehen Sie doch! Sehen Sie doch! — Leſſing.

Exercises.

78. (*a*) 1. Which sentences in § 72 illustrate compound tenses of modals? 2. What is the chief difference between compound tenses of English and German modals when not followed by another verb? 3. Does the "two infinitives" construction seem to conform to the general principle, § 37, Note? 4. Verify with the last example

in § 73, 1 the rule about reversing the English order of the verbs in translating into German. 5. Find in § 75, 1 an illustration of § 15, 1.

(*b*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Haben Sie es nicht tun können? 2. Nein, ich habe es nicht gekonnt. 3. Darf ich Ihnen helfen? Ich tu' es gern. 4. Das Buch gefällt mir, aber ich mag den Helden nicht. 5. Das kann sein, aber vielleicht werden Sie ein besseres finden können. 6. Er kann nicht dafür, daß er seinem Vater gleicht.

79. (*a*) 1. May I ask if you will wait for us? 2. It may be that we shall be able to have a good time. 3. I may go to the theatre; how did you like the play? 4. I liked "William Tell" very much; I like to go to the theatre. 5. She likes to sing; has she been able to hear the opera? 6. I don't know a single soul (§§ 9 and 19, 1) who looks like me.

(*b*) 1. He may be able to think of the right word. 2. May I ask you to sit down there and tell us the story of Siegfried? 3. She likes to tell stories to the pupils, but she doesn't know any German. 4. In the theatre they always know it, if the public likes the play. 5. May we ask you if you like Wagner's operas? 6. I don't like this suit; I shall have to have a new one made.

(*c*) *The Old German Cities.* — 1. May I tell you of the German cities in the Middle Ages? 2. You may not like these old stories, but I like to tell them. 3. In the Middle Ages many German cities had wanted for a long time to get their freedom. 4. That is to say (das heißt), they wanted to be able to hold their own courts. 5. The emperors had to sell them these rights, because the emperors had to have the money. 6. That was a long time ago, but some German cities still have the same rights as then.

CHAPTER XI.

THE "TWO INFINITIVES" CONSTRUCTION WITH OTHER VERBS THAN THE MODALS.

Friedrich Rotbart.

80. Es war einmal ein deutscher Kaiser, Friedrich Rotbart genannt, den die Deutschen mehr als alle anderen Kaiser liebten, und von dessen glänzenden Taten auch die Nachwelt viel hat reden hören. Er war ein siegreicher Heerführer und man hat ihn oft an der Spitze seiner Ritter in den Kampf ziehen sehen. Doch starb er viel zu früh für sein Vaterland; er ertrank, als er im dritten Kreuzzuge nach dem Heiligen Lande zog.

Nach seinem Tode sehnten sich die Deutschen nach ihrem siegreichen Kaiser, wenn es Krieg gab. Daraus entstand wohl die Sage, daß er nicht tot sei, sondern im Kyffhäuser Berg schliefe, und wiederkommen würde, wenn die Deutschen bereit seien, sich zu vereinen. Sieben hundert Jahre später ist das deutsche Reich von Wilhelm dem Ersten und Bismarck neu gegründet worden, und aus Dankbarkeit hat das deutsche Volk seinem Kaiser auf dem "Kyffhäuser" ein Denkmal errichten lassen, an dessen Sockel Kaiser Rotbart dargestellt ist, wie er gerade aus dem Schlafe erwacht.

Syntax.

81. Two Infinitives with Other Verbs than Modals. — Besides the modal auxiliaries the commonest verbs that take an infinitive without **zu** are: brauchen, *to need;* fühlen, *to feel;* heißen, *to bid;* helfen, *to help;* hören, *to hear;*

14. THE MONUMENT ON KYFFHÄUSER. — The ruin in the distance is all that remains of a castle Barbarossa built here.

laſſen, *to let;* lehren, *to teach;* lernen, *to learn;* machen, *to make;* and ſehen, *to see.* Besides the regular past participle these verbs *may* have a past participle with infinitive form, when used with another infinitive. Laſſen is the only one whose past participle *must*

have the infinitive form when used with another infinitive.

They were learning to read. **Sie lernten leſen.**
She taught me to speak German.
Sie hat mich Deutſch ſprechen lehren (or **gelehrt**).
I saw him go. **Ich habe ihn gehen ſehen** (or **geſehen**).
Didn't you have him come? **Haben Sie ihn nicht kommen laſſen?**
I heard a sickle rustle.
Ich hört' ein Sichlein rauſchen. — Volkslied.
You made me sweat with a vengeance.
Ihr habt mich weidlich ſchwitzen machen. — Goethe.

Notes.

82. *Historical Note.* — For a century and a half (1002–1152) after the death of Otto III, the different German Emperors wasted time and armies in fruitless campaigns against the armies of the popes in Italy. In 1152 Frederick of Hohenstaufen, called *Barbarossa* (from the Italian for *red beard*), came to the throne. He brought the glory of the German Empire to its highest point and was considered the most powerful ruler in Christendom. But like his predecessors he wasted northern energy to subdue a southern land; six times he led across the Alps armies whose vitality Germany needed for itself. In those times all emperors were irresistibly drawn to Italy, and we cannot blame Frederick for neglecting Germany. His genius, valor, and renown have made him the darling of the German people. His descendants, like himself, waged fruitless war with the papacy for nearly a century, and the last of the proud Hohenstaufen line, Konradin, was executed at Naples in 1268.

83. English *as* and *than* are usually rendered by German **wie** or **als**.

(1) In comparisons **wie** means *as* and **als** means *than*. The first correlative *as* in expressions like *as good as*, *as far as*, and so on is **ſo** (§ 26, 1). *Just as* is **ebenſo**.

He is not as strong as you. **Er iſt nicht ſo ſtark wie du.**
I am older than she. **Ich bin älter als ſie.**

15. BARBAROSSA. — As represented on the base of the Kyffhäuser Monument.

You can go just as well as I. **Sie können ebenſo gut gehen, wie ich.**

Who has less than he desires must know that he has more than he is worth. **Wer weniger hat, als er begehrt, muß wiſſen, daß er mehr hat, als er wert iſt.** — Lichtenberg.

(2) Als is preferable to wie for *as*, when *as* is a conjunction of past time (not of reason. See § 17, 3). Wie is oftener used with the present.

Just as he began whispering, the teacher looked at him.
Als er eben anfing zu flüstern, sah ihn der Lehrer an.
And as he sits and listens, the flood divides.
Und wie er sitzt und wie er lauscht, teilt sich die Flut empor.
—Goethe.

84. English *when* has three common German equivalents: **als, wenn,** and **wann.**

(1) Als regularly translates *when* with past tenses. But never use als if *when* can be replaced by *whenever*.

I knew him when he was a child.
Ich habe ihn gekannt, als er noch Kind war.
But when she saw the knife, she had to believe it.
Aber als sie das Messer sah, da mußte sie's wohl glauben.
—Hillern.

(2) Wenn translates (*a*) *when* with the present or future and (*b*) *whenever* with all tenses. With a subordinate clause in past time, use wenn if the word *always* can be inserted in the main clause without changing the meaning.

(*a*) *When you are through, let's go.*
Wenn du fertig bist, laß uns fort.
When they are gone, I'll go and buy some more.
Wenn sie zu Ende sind, geh' ich und kaufe neue.—Heyse.

(*b*) *When Dietrich fought, he always won.*
Wenn Dietrich kämpfte, so siegte er immer.
When, as a youth you used to sing, you never got to the end!
Fandest du als Jüngling doch, wenn du sangst, das Ende nie!
—Hölderlin.

(3) Wann is used for *when* as interrogative.

When does the train leave? **Wann fährt der Zug ab?**
And when will the day come?
Und wann wird der Tag kommen?—Freytag.

Note. — It is better to avoid the use of wann in the general sense of *when(ever)*, although it used to be common and we read it often.

85. English *there is* (*are*) is rendered in German in two ways: **es gibt** and **es iſt.**

(1) Es gibt (es gab, es hat gegeben), with the accusative, is used in general cases when no definite place is mentioned. Es is never omitted.

There is no such thing. **Das gibt es nicht.**
Well, what's up? **Nun, was gibt's?**
There were no railroads a hundred years ago.
Vor hundert Jahren hat es keine Eiſenbahnen gegeben.
And there aren't any witches.
Und Hexen gibt es nicht. — Hauptmann.

(2) Es iſt, es ſind (es war, es iſt geweſen), with the nominative, is used for cases where a definite thing is mentioned, usually in a definite place. The verb agrees in number with the nominative which follows it. Es is omitted in the inverted or transposed order.

There were three mistakes in this exercise.
Es waren drei Fehler in dieſer Aufgabe, or **In dieſer Aufgabe waren drei Fehler.**
There is only one thing that can save us.
Es iſt nur eines, was uns retten kann. — Schiller.
In my father's house [*there*] *are many mansions.*
In meines Vaters Haus ſind viele Wohnungen.
— Bibel, Joh. 14, 2.

Note. — This similar use of es as grammatical subject extends to other words than ſein, and is commoner in German than in English.

There came three fellows across the Rhine.
Es zogen drei Burſche wohl über den Rhein. — Uhland.
Men talk and dream much of better future days.
Es reden und träumen die Menſchen viel von beſſeren künftigen Tagen.
— Schiller.

Exercises.

86. (*a*) 1. Which sentences in § 80 illustrate "two infinitives"? 2. What is the only verb besides the modals that *must* have its past participle in the infinitive form when used with another infinitive? 3. Find in § 83, 1 an illustration of § 58, 1, in § 83, 2, of § 18, 1, in § 85, 2, Note, of § 19, 1. 4. Memorize the last example in § 85, 2, Note.

(*b*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Haben Sie ihm überſetzen helfen? 2. Er hat viel beſſer leſen lernen, als Sie. 3. Wann haben Sie den grauen Rock machen laſſen? 4. Was gibt's? Es iſt nichts hier. 5. Es gibt Menſchen, die nicht ſingen lernen wollen. 6. Es ſind keine Fehler in dieſer Aufgabe.

87. (*a*) 1. As he had not been able to do his work, he sat down and waited for his friend. 2. His friend was

16. Barbarossa. — As he probably really looked. From a carefully executed contemporary sculpture in a Bavarian monastery.

not so old as he, but he liked to help him. 3. As they were sitting in the garden, an old man told them a story. 4. When there are mistakes in my exercise, I have to ask the teacher questions. 5. Whenever he had to learn to read a new German story, he did not know what to do. 6. There were three old men in the house, and they did not like to hear us sing.

(*b*) 1. I like this book better than that red one, but not so well as the other blue one. 2. When you have learned to read these books, you will know German. 3. Whenever I made a mistake the teacher asked if there were difficulties in the exercise. 4. There are four mistakes in this exercise; next time you have to do better. 5. What are you doing? Don't you know that you mustn't do that? 6. When he had heard the boys sing for a time, he told them that he liked it.

(*c*) *Emperor Redbeard.* — 1. We have often heard the teacher tell of Barbarossa. 2. There have been many German emperors, but we hear more of Frederick the First than of the others. 3. He is the one who did so much for the Empire. 4. His enemies were afraid of him whenever they had to fight against him. 5. When he conquered them, he wanted to go to the Holy Land. 6. But he was drowned there in a river.

CHAPTER XII.

REVIEW.

Wohl.

88. The particle **wohl** is used in German whenever the *idea* of probability enters a sentence. It may be translated in English by *perhaps, maybe, I think*, by a question, or by almost any expression indicating uncertainty.

He's sick, I think. **Er iſt wohl krank.**
You aren't prepared to-day, are you?
Sie ſind heute wohl nicht vorbereitet?
Maybe I shall stay a long time to-day in Capri.
Ich bleibe heute wohl lang' auf Capri. — Heyſe.

Note. — Wohl rarely means *well*, except as a predicate adjective applying to health. As an adverb *well* is gut; as an exclamation, nun.

Well, did he do it well? Nun, hat er es gut gemacht?
He felt as well in this quietude as a fish in the water.
Es ging ihm ſo wohl in dieſer Ungeſtörtheit wie einem Fiſch im Waſſer.
— Keller.

Exercises.

89. (*a*) 1. Add to your tables of declensions and conjugations the new nouns and verbs in §§ 65, 72, and 80, and review this table at each Review Lesson. 2. Name the commonest verbs that *may* take the "two infinitives" construction when their past participle follows an infinitive. 3. Name the seven verbs that *must* take the "two infinitives" construction when their past participle follows a verb.

(*b*) 1. Illustrate in German sentences four different meanings of English *have;* three of English *shall;* two of

English *will*. 2. Illustrate in German sentences three meanings each of English *as*, *may*, *when*, and *to like*.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Darf ich um noch einen Bogen Papier bitten? 2. Das mögen Sie wohl nicht so gern wie das andere. 3. Da dieser Anzug Ihnen nicht gefällt, so werden Sie einen neuen machen lassen müssen. 4. Er hat das Mädchen wohl noch nicht kennen gelernt. 5. Was gibt's? Was machen Sie denn da? 6. Wollen wir jetzt etwas anders tun? Ja, gern.

90. (*a*) 1. May I have another sandwich? 2. Shall we learn to write German now, or what shall we do? 3. I do not like Wagner's "Tannhäuser" so well as his "Siegfried." (Express the verb in three ways.) 4. It may be that you will hear him sing, but I do not know. 5. We may like this book better than the other, when we learn to read well. 6. I asked him when he would probably do it.

(*b*) 1. When I heard the boy sing, I liked him better than the man. 2. There were many mistakes in his exercises, whenever he wrote them. 3. Shall I ask him if we may sit down over there? 4. Shall we look for a bench on which (worauf) we may sit? 5. As you like this book as well as the other, I should think (dächte ich wohl) you would read it faster. 6. Will you please tell us when you want to have that coat made?

(*c*) 1. Whenever we asked them what they were doing, they told us nothing. 2. If you want to have a good suit, you will have to have it made. 3. We may like him better than now when we get acquainted (learn to know) with him. 4. May I pass you the bread or do you like rolls better (lieber)? 5. Shall we buy this dress or shall we have something made? 6. He does not know when he learned to speak German.

CHAPTER XIII.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE DATIVE.

Die Weiber von Weinsberg.

91. Die kleine Stadt Weinsberg in Württemberg wurde im zwölften Jahrhundert von König Konrad belagert. Sie

17. The Ruin of the Fortress Weibertreu. — As seen from the city of Weinsberg.

leiſtete ſo hartnäckigen Widerſtand, daß Konrad nach einiger Zeit in Zorn geriet. Er ſchwor, bei der Übergabe der Stadt alle Männer zu töten, die Frauen jedoch aus der Stadt abziehen zu laſſen und ihnen zu erlauben, ihr teuerſtes Gut mitzunehmen.

Als Weinsberg ſich endlich nach langer Belagerung ergeben mußte, da luden die Frauen ihre Männer auf den Rücken und gingen mit ihnen aus der Stadt. Die Liſt gefiel dem König nicht, aber er ſagte: „Eines Königs Wort ſoll man nicht drehen und deuteln," und er hat ſie ruhig ziehen laſſen. Auf dieſe Weiſe kamen die Frauen mit ihren Männern glücklich davon. Seit der Zeit wird die Burg zu Weinsberg von allen Leuten „die Weibertreu" genannt.

Syntax.

92. Prepositions with the Dative. — The commonest prepositions with the dative are: aus, außer, bei, mit, nach, ſeit, von, zu.

Die Quelle.

Nach dir ſchmacht' ich, zu dir eil' ich, du geliebte Quelle du!
Aus dir ſchöpf' ich, bei dir weil' ich, ſeh' dem Spiel der Wellen zu;
Mit dir ſcherz' ich, von dir lern' ich heiter durch das Leben wallen,
Angelacht von Frühlingsblumen und begrüßt von Nachtigallen.

—Ramler.

Note. — The general principle for Word Order (§ 37, Note) applies also to prepositional phrases. A prepositional phrase follows directly after the particular word it modifies: Weinsberg in Württemberg. In adverbial phrases the order is usually the same as for adverbs: (1) time, (2) place, (3) manner. See § 47. But usually German puts one of these phrases first and throws the sentence into the inverted order. See § 2, 1. For instance, *He was at home in the evening in a good humor*, would probably be translated, Am Abend war er zu Hauſe bei guter Laune.

Notes.

93. *Historical Note.* — The siege of Weinsberg (1140) is typical of the incessant conflicts in Germany in the Middle Ages. The whole country was split into principalities, duchies, and walled towns, each independent of, and frequently at war with, the others. This was the time of the picturesque castles with their "robber barons," of whom Bryce says: "These petty tyrants, whose boast was that they owed fealty only to God and the Emperor, showed themselves in practice equally regardless of both powers."

94. **Aus** generally denotes *source*. It has two common English renderings.

(1) Aus regularly means *from, out of.*

I'm from America. **Ich bin aus Amerika.**
A fairy tale from olden times, I can't get it out of my head.
Ein Märchen aus alten Zeiten, das kommt mir nicht aus dem Sinn.
— Heine.

(2) Aus is used for English *of* in such expressions as:

What has become of him? **Was iſt aus ihm geworden?**
Spring weaves a net of colors, sounds, odors.
Der Frühling ſtrickt ein Netz aus Farben, Tönen, Düften.
— Rückert.

95. **Bei** has several meanings. It is never used with the passive to translate English *by* (von, § 99, 2).

(1) In showing *position near* or *by*, bei means not so near as an and neben.

The Battle of (near) Leipzig. **Die Schlacht bei Leipzig.**
Near Andernach on the Rhine lies a deep sea.
Bei Andernach am Rheine liegt eine tiefe See. — F. Schlegel.

(2) Bei is also used to introduce a condition or circumstance (like the Latin ablative of attendant circumstance). In this use bei generally means *in, with,* or *when there is.*

Thus, Ich ſchlafe bei offenem Fenſter, means, *I sleep with the window open*, not, *I sleep by an open window.* Bei Tiſch does not mean *near the table* (am Tiſch), but *at table*, that is *during a meal.*

In this weather; with such a throng.
Bei dieſem Wetter; bei einem ſolchen Gedränge.
You can't see a thing in this light.
Bei dieſem Licht kann man gar nichts ſehen.
In icy rain and winds.
Bei eiſigem Regen und Winden. — Bürger.

(3) Bei is also used for English *with* in expressions like:

I live with the Fishers. **Ich wohne bei Fiſchers.**
Have you any money with you? **Haben Sie Geld bei ſich?**
How goes it with you at home?
Wie geht's bei dir zu Haus? — Hauptmann.

96. **Mit** is usually English *with*, but it is sometimes used for other English prepositions.

All at once there he stood. **Mit einem Male ſtand er da.**
I'm not engaged to him. **Ich bin nicht mit ihm verlobt.**
God is with us and we with him.
Gott iſt mit uns und wir mit ihm. — Körner.

97. **Nach** is akin to nahe, *near*, and most of its uses can be traced to this meaning.

(1) It regularly denotes *motion toward* or *to a place.* (See zu, § 100.)

We went to Berlin. **Wir fuhren nach Berlin.**
He went home. Nothing came of it.
Er ging nach Haus. Da ward nichts draus. — Herder.

(2) Nach translates English *after* both for time and place.

After the Emperor came the Crown Prince.
Nach dem Kaiſer kam der Kronprinz.

After work it's good to rest.
Nach der Arbeit iſt gut ruh'n.—Leſſing.

(3) Nach also means *according to* (*by*, *in*). In some cases it may follow its object.

Every one according to his taste. **Jeder nach ſeinem Geſchmack.**
He knows me only by (*according to my*) *name.*
Er kennt mich nur dem Namen nach.
Read to us according to your mood, according to your pleasure.
Lies uns nach Laune, nach Luſt.—Schiller.

98. Seit has two English renderings.

(1) When used with a word meaning a particular time or event, ſeit is translated *since*.

I've been waiting since ten o'clock. **Seit zehn Uhr warte ich ſchon.**
Since that hour my body has been wasting away.
Seit jener Stunde verzehrt ſich mein Leib.—Heine.

(2) When ſeit is used with an expression denoting an extent of time, it is usually translated *for* or *in*.

I haven't seen him for (or *in*) *weeks.*
Ich habe ihn ſeit Wochen nicht geſehen.
I've been wandering for years.
Ich wandre ſchon ſeit Jahren.—F. Schlegel.

99. Von usually denotes *source*, but less definitely than aus.

(1) Its commonest meaning is *from*.

We are going from here to Cologne.
Wir fahren von hier nach Köln.
The brooklets spring from the mountains.
Die Bächlein von den Bergen ſpringen.—Eichendorff.

(2) Von is always used for *by* with the passive voice to tell the agent. Never use bei.

18. THE WEIBERTREU FROM A NEIGHBORING HILL. — Notice the rectangular vineyards from which Weinsberg receives its name.

The sentence was first translated by a girl.
Der Satz wurde zuerſt von einem Mädchen überſetzt.
You want to get beaten by an old soldier.
Sie wollen ſich von einem alten Militär ſchlagen laſſen. — Freytag.

(3) **Von** is used for many translations of English *of*.

He is a friend of mine. **Er iſt ein Freund von mir.**
Frederick of Hohenstaufen was Emperor of Germany.
Friedrich von Hohenſtaufen war Kaiſer von Deutſchland.
They sing of spring and love, of blissful, golden time.
Sie ſingen von Lenz und Liebe, von ſel'ger goldner Zeit. — Uhland.

Note. — (*a*) When in English *of* is a sign of apposition or of measure, von is omitted in German.

The month of June, the city of Dresden, a glass of water.
Der Monat Juni, die Stadt Dresden, ein Glas Waſſer.
In the beautiful month of May.
Im wunderſchönen Monat Mai. — Heine.

(*b*) In expressions where *of* seems very closely connected with the preceding word, as *tired of*, *in spite of*, *because of*, von cannot be used; the genitive must be.

In spite of the weather we went. Trotz des Wetters gingen wir.
O, I am tired of the turmoil.
Ach, ich bin des Treibens müde. — Goethe.

100. **Zu** has various renderings in English.

(1) For English *to*, zu is used with persons (contrast nach with places, § 97, 1) and with places where there is a definite purpose or object involved, or where no motion is indicated.

Go to your mother! **Geh zu deiner Mutter!**
I'm going to bed. **Ich gehe zu Bett.**
He came home to his parents. **Er kam nach Hauſe zu ſeinen Eltern.**
This street leads to the station. **Dieſe Straße führt zum Bahnhof.**
She sang to him, she spoke to him.
Sie ſang zu ihm, ſie ſprach zu ihm. — Goethe.

(2) Zu usually means *at* with names of cities and in a few idioms.

His patience is at an end. **Jetzt iſt ſeine Geduld zu Ende.**
At Quedlinburg in the cathedral resounds the clang of bells.
Zu Quedlinburg im Dome ertönet Glockenklang. — Müller.

(3) Zu means *for* in phrases like the following:

We always have soup for dinner.
Zum Mittageſſen haben wir immer Suppe.
You are too proud for submissiveness, I for falsehood.
Du biſt zu ſtolz zur Demut, ich zur Lüge. — Schiller.

(4) In idioms zu is variously translated:

Afoot, on horseback, in a carriage.
Zu Fuß, zu Pferde, zu Wagen.
Out of the window, in at the door.
Zum Fenſter hinaus, zur Tür herein.
Count Richard came along on foot.
Graf Richard kam zu Fuß daher. — Uhland.

Note. — English *too* is translated by zu when it modifies another adverb or an adjective, by auch when it modifies a whole clause (as English *also*).

Is is too warm for you? Iſt es Ihnen zu warm?
I think so, too. Das glaub' ich auch.
Ah, he sleeps too long a time. Ach, er ſchläft zu lange Zeit.
— Fallersleben.

Exercises.

101. (*a*) 1. Illustrate with sentences the different German equivalents for English *at*. 2. Illustrate with sentences the German equivalents for English *to*. 3. For English *with* and *for* (§§ 5, 8, 15, 1, *a*, 98, 2, and 100, 3).

(*b*) 1. Find in § 15, 1, *b* an example of § 100, 4, Note; in § 15, 2, *b* of § 97, 2; in § 27 of § 99, 2; in § 28, 2 of § 99, 3. 2. Find in § 33 an illustration of § 97, 1; in § 41, 2 of § 99, 3; in § 47 of § 99, 1; in § 50, 3 of § 100, 3. 3. Find in § 76, 3 an illustration of § 99, 3; in § 85, 2, Note, of § 99, 3.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Bei ſolchem Wetter muß man zu Hauſe bleiben. 2. Meiner Meinung nach iſt es zu weit, zu Fuß zu gehen. 3. Er iſt aus Amerika,

aber er wohnt bei einer deutschen Familie. 4. Nach zehn Minuten gehen wir von hier nach Hause. 5. Ich warte schon seit zwölf Uhr auf dich. 6. Das wird von den anderen viel besser getan werden.

102. (*a*) 1. According to his story (Erzählung) he was from Linden near (§ 95, 1) Hannover. 2. What has become of the dress that you had made by my tailor? 3. Since last fall we have lived (*use pres. tense*) with [the] Browns. 4. In (§ 95, 2) such a crowd it is hard to walk home from the theatre. 5. It's after half past ten; I'm going to bed. 6. What did you get from your father for your (*use def. art.*) birthday?

19. The Octagonal Tower of Weibertreu. — This is the highest part of the ruin; it stands near the center of the park.

(*b*) 1. For (§ 98, 2) three days he has stayed (*use pres.*) at home with (§ 95, 3) his parents. 2. In (§ 97, 3) my opinion, we ought to go home with you after the theatre. 3. Tell us of the man who told you he was from Berlin. 4. Since last fall I have lived (*pres.*) in Schöneberg near (§ 95, 1) Berlin. 5. In such weather I like to stay at home with my friends. 6. Did I tell you of my new clothes that were made by your tailor for (§ 100, 3) two hundred marks?

(*c*) *The Women of Weinsberg.* — 1. According to an old story the city of Weinsberg was besieged by Konrad of

Hohenstaufen. 2. After a long siege the fortress near Weinsberg had to surrender. 3. Konrad told the people that the women might (§ 75, 1) come out of the fortress with all that they could carry. 4. When the messenger with this message came to the women, they went out of the fortress on foot with their husbands on their (*def. art.*) backs. 5. The ruin of the fortress is now a park. 6. When I asked a girl by whom it was kept up, she told me: "By the women of Weinsberg."

CHAPTER XIV.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

Der Sängerkrieg auf der Wartburg.

103. Bis gegen das Ende des Mittelalters beſchäftigten ſich die deutſchen Ritter viel mit der Dichtkunſt. Dieſe Dichter ſangen ihre Lieder und wurden deshalb Minneſänger genannt. Der Landgraf Hermann von Thüringen, der auf der Wartburg wohnte, hatte eine beſondere Vorliebe für dieſe

20. The Singers' Hall at the Wartburg. — Scene of the Singers' Contest. On the wall of the raised alcove at the back are written the songs of the principal contestants.

Minnesänger und zeichnete sich durch große Gastfreiheit gegen sie aus.

Im Jahre 1204 veranstaltete er den bekannten „Sängerkrieg" auf der Wartburg, an dem alle bedeutenden Minnesänger teilnahmen. Einer suchte den anderen in seinen Liedern zu übertreffen. Gegen das Ende des Festes trat ein schlanker Sänger auf, der so wundervoll sang, daß man ihm den Preis zuerkennen mußte. Das war Walther von der Vogelweide, ohne Zweifel der beliebteste von allen Minnesängern. Von ihm schrieb ein bekannter Dichter später: „Herr Walther von der Vogelweide, wer den vergäße, tät' mir leide."

Syntax.

104. Prepositions with the Accusative. — The commonest prepositions with the accusative are: bis, durch, für, gegen, ohne, um, wider.

An einen Freund.

Durch dich ist die Welt mir schön, ohne dich würd' ich sie hassen;
Für dich leb' ich ganz allein, um dich will ich gern erblassen,
Gegen dich soll kein Verleumder ungestraft sich je vergehn.
Wider dich kein Feind sich waffnen; ich will dir zur Seite stehn.

— Ramler.

Notes.

105. *Historical Note.* — The Minnesänger (Minne, *love*) began to flourish under the Hohenstaufen Emperors. These minstrels were usually well born, sometimes of noble birth, and they attached themselves to the great lords, whose guests they entertained. In return the great lords honored and rewarded them; in fact, Walther von der Vogelweide (1160–1230) received an estate (fief) from Emperor Frederick II. Though Latin was still the official language of church and state, the everyday tongue was German (Middle High German), and in this the Minnesänger composed

their songs. The tale in § 103 is not absolutely true. There are many conflicting stories; the most authentic account of the "Sängerkrieg" says that Wolfram von Eschenbach won through Walther's help.

106. Prepositions with *it* (*them*) and *which*.

(1) When referring to an inanimate object, da=(r) is used with prepositions instead of a *pronoun: with it*, damit; *for it*, dafür; *out of it*, daraus; *against it*, dagegen.

(2) When referring to an inanimate object, wo=(r) is used with prepositions instead of an *interrogative* or *relative: after which*, wonach; *of what*, wovon; *through which*, wodurch; *about what*, worum?

Note. — Außer, bis, and ohne do not combine with da or wo, and wider does not combine with wo. With these a form of derselbe is generally used for the personal pronoun and a form of welcher for the relative or interrogative.

107. **Bis** is used alone and with other prepositions.

(1) When used alone bis usually refers to time and means *till* or *until*.

I'll wait for you till twelve o'clock.
Ich warte auf dich bis zwölf Uhr.
Until this day, oh, was that good, was it reasonable?
Bis diesen Tag, o war das gut, war's billig? — Schiller.

(2) In connection with other prepositions bis often refers to space and means *as far as*.

I'll go along as far as the corner. **Bis an die Ecke geh' ich mit.**
And lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world.
Und siehe, ich bin bei euch alle Tage, bis an der Welt Ende.
Bibel, Matt. 28, 20.

108. **Durch** is practically always English *through*, and as such presents no special difficulties.

21. THE WARTBURG AT EISENACH. — The most famous and interesting castle in Germany.

The river remains turbid that has not gone through a lake, the heart troubled that has not passed through woe.

Der Fluß bleibt trüb, der nicht durch einen See gegangen, das Herz unlauter, das nicht durch ein Weh gegangen. — Goethe.

109. **Für** is used regularly for English *for* and in a few other expressions.

(1) Für may translate many meanings of *for*.

Is that for me? **Iſt das für mich?**
What do you take me for? **Wofür halten Sie mich?**
And now you have good precepts enough for to-day.
Und nun habt ihr für dieſen Tag gute Lehren genug. — Storm.

(2) In idioms the meaning of für varies.

Day by day, year by year, piece by piece.
Tag für Tag, Jahr für Jahr, Stück für Stück.
Are you interested in music? **Intereſſieren Sie ſich für Muſik?**
O, I'm an ardent admirer of Wagner.
Ach, ich ſchwärme für Wagner.
Man by man to-day we'll redden the iron with blood.
Wir wollen heute Mann für Mann mit Blut das Eiſen röten.
—Arndt.

110. Gegen usually means *against* or *to, toward.*

(1) The meaning *against* is usually literal or concrete.

He ran against the door. **Er rannte gegen die Tür.**
In vain she held her wet hands against her burning cheeks.
Umſonſt hielt ſie die naſſen Hände gegen die brennenden Wangen.
—Heyſe.

(2) Gegen means *toward, to,* usually in a figurative or abstract sense.

He arrived toward evening. **Er iſt gegen Abend angekommen.**
Toward friends be modest, toward yourselves be strong and firm.
Gegen Freunde ſeid beſcheiden, gegen euch ſeid ſtreng und feſt.
—Herder.

111. Um usually means *around, for,* or *at.*

(1) When um is used for *around, about,* the adverb herum may follow the object of um.

He went around the garden. **Er ging um den Garten (herum).**
Round about the light, white house gardens were laid out.
Um das leichte, weiße Haus herum waren Gärten angelegt.
—Keller.

(2) Um meaning *for* is usually figurative.

We don't play for money. **Wir ſpielen nicht um Geld.**
I don't care for any one. **Ich kümmere mich um keinen.**—Heyſe.

Note.—In German, *to compete at anything* is to do it, um die Wette, *for a wager; to row a race,* um die Wette rudern; *to run a race,* um die Wette laufen.

(3) Um meaning *at* is confined to expressions of time:

At what time will you come? **Um wieviel Uhr kommen Sie?**
So it was at eight, so at nine, so at ten o'clock.
So war es um acht, so um neun, so um zehn Uhr.—Gerstäcker.

112. Wider differs nowadays from **gegen** in that it is used only in a figurative sense. Hence it is much less common than gegen. In the literal use of *against*, see gegen, § 110, 1.

He did it against his will. **Er hat es wider seinen Willen getan.**
Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.
Du sollst nicht falsch(es) Zeugnis reden wider deinen Nächsten.
—Bibel, 2 Mose, 20, 16.

113. English *all* is usually rendered in German by **ganz** or **all.**

(1) Ganz is used only in the sense of *entire, the whole*, taking *all* as a unit. As an adverb it means *quite*, in the original sense of *entirely*. Before neuter names of cities or countries it is indeclinable.

All Berlin was astir. **Ganz Berlin war auf den Beinen.**
I dreamed all night. **Ich habe die ganze Nacht geträumt.**
Are you quite well again? **Sind Sie wieder ganz wohl?**
For every whole work one needs a whole man.
Zu jedem ganzen Werk gehört ein ganzer Mann.—Rückert.

(2) All is used for *all* in other cases, usually referring to each and every one of a *group*. It may be indeclinable before der, dieser, or a possessive.

Is that all? **Ist das alles?**
I have read all these books. **Ich habe all(e) diese Bücher gelesen.**
All good things come in threes (of all good things there are three).
Aller guten Dinge sind drei.—Sprichwort.
If he only had half of all the blows!
Hätte er nur erst die Hälfte von allen den Schlägen!—Lessing.

Exercises.

114. (*a*) 1. Which sentences in § 103 illustrate the use of prepositions with the accusative? 2. Make sentences illustrating the uses of *at* and *for* as treated in §§ 109 and 111. 3. Find in § 15, 1, *a* an illustration of § 111, 2; in § 26, 1 and in § 39, 2 of § 106, 1.

(*b*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Das alles tat er wider ſeinen Willen. 2. Gegen zehn Uhr habe ich die ganze Seite überſetzt. 3. Ich intereſſiere mich für die deutſche Oper, aber ich ſchwärme für Beethoven. 4. Leſen Sie bis zur nächſten Seite! 5. Um drei Uhr fuhr ich durch die Stadt bis ans Tor. 6. Für dich würde ich um die ganze Welt reiſen.

115. (*a*) 1. We all went on foot through the deep wood as far as (to) the little village. 2. Shall we begin at eight o'clock or toward nine? 3. We (§ 57) have to answer questions against our will all the time. 4. Hermann fought against Varus till late in the evening. 5. Round about them lay all their dead friends. 6. Will you please ask for some more ink for me?

(*b*) 1. All the city voted for him against the old man. 2. For heaven's sake, don't go through the wood at midnight. 3. All right (ſchön), I will go around the wood as far as (to) the gate. 4. At what time did he get it for you? 5. Have you any objections (*literally*, anything against it) if we go through your garden? 6. He sat all day and thought of the stories we had told him.

(*c*) *The Singers' Contest at the Wartburg.* — 1. Toward evening on a beautiful day in the year 1204, one could hear songs resound through the Wartburg. 2. It was the Minnesingers, who were singing for a prize. 3. Around

the wide hall there were (§ 85, 2) chairs and benches on which (§ 106, 2) all the guests could sit. 4. All the evening they sang, and there was (§ 85, 1) a beautiful wreath for the best singer. 5. Some voted for Walther, and some against him. 6. We (§ 57) do not know exactly who got the wreath.

CHAPTER XV.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE

Nürnberg.

116. Unter allen deutſchen Städten wird man in Nürnberg am meiſten an das Mittelalter erinnert. Es liegt auf beiden Ufern der Pegnitz, die zwiſchen den alten Häuſern dahinfließt. Noch jetzt umgeben die alten Feſtungsmauern die Stadt, und hinter ihnen ſieht man die alten Gebäude emporragen. Und

22. The Pegnitz at Nuremberg. — Notice the fortifications and the way the wall with its covered passage is carried over the river.

wenn man heute auf den Boden des alten — jetzt trockenen — Festungsgrabens hinunterblickt, sieht man Gebüsch und Blumen dort.

Hier in dieser interessanten Stadt blühte im Mittelalter die Kunst. Hier malte vor mehr als vier hundert Jahren Albrecht Dürer; hier sangen die Meistersänger; hier machte der gutmütige Hans Sachs Schuhe und Gedichte, beide nach Maß, und hier zeugen noch heute die schönen Bauten des Mittelalters von dem Kunstsinn und dem Reichtum der Bürger Nürnbergs.

Syntax.

117. Prepositions with Dative or Accusative. — The prepositions which take either dative or accusative are: an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen. They take the dative in answer to the question, *where?* wo? and the accusative in answer to the question *whither?* wohin? In other words, the *end* or *direction of motion* is indicated by the accusative; *rest* or the *place of motion* by the dative.

He walked into the room.
Er ging in das Zimmer (direction of motion).
He walked up and down in the room.
Er ging in dem Zimmer auf und ab (place of motion).
He sat in the room.
Er saß in dem Zimmer (rest).
I stood on high mountains and looked into the deep valley.
Ich stand auf hohen Bergen und sah ins tiefe Tal. — Volkslied.

(1) The above rules apply only in concrete cases. In *figurative* uses — that is, when *neither rest nor motion* is expressed — these prepositions usually take the accusative. An, auf, and über are the most common in figurative use. Review §§ 8 and 41, 1.

They laughed at my story. **Sie haben über meine Geſchichte gelacht.**

Don't count on what is in the future, don't figure on what has been promised; don't complain about what has been lost, and don't think of what has been broken.

Auf Künftiges rechne nicht, und zähl' nicht auf Verſprochnes; klag' um Verlornes nicht und denk' nicht an Zerbrochnes. — Rückert.

Notes.

118. *Historical Note.* — Nuremberg received its freedom from Frederick II in 1219. From that time on, the busy city, freed thus from political interference, built up a flourishing trade. Safely guarded by massive walls and wide moats, its prosperous burghers devoted their time not only to commerce but to literature and art as well. Thus Nuremberg came to be the industrial and artistic centre of Germany, the home of many Mastersingers. These Mastersingers were so called because they learned poetry as a trade. This poetry was made according to fixed rules, and these had to be mastered by the apprentices, who later became journeymen, and finally masters. Thus poetry became a trade like carpentry or shoemaking, and the masters of it, instead of being master-carpenters or master-shoemakers, were *master-singers*, die Meiſterſänger.

119. **An** has several English renderings.

(1) In indicating position, an means *to* or *at* (*the side of*). It suggests closer proximity than bei and neben.

I wrote on the blackboard. **Ich ſchrieb an die Wandtafel.**

I wrote at the blackboard. **Ich ſchrieb an der Wandtafel.**

The mother sat by the fire; a boy stood at her knees, two daughters pressed up close to her. **Die Hausfrau ſaß am Feuer; ein Knabe ſtand an ihren Knien, zwei Töchter drängten ſich an ſie heran.** — Goethe.

(2) The commonest verbs with which an is used in close connection are: denken, *to think of;* glauben, *to believe in;* ſich gewöhnen, *to get used to;* ſich erinnern, *to remember;* and ſchreiben, *to write to.* Notice that they contain an idea of *mental motion towards;* hence the accusative.

I must write to my mother. **Ich muß an meine Mutter ſchreiben.**
So I think of my distant love.
So denk' ich an mein fernes Lieb. — Hauff.

Note. — Some verbs take an with the dative. The commonest are: zweifeln, *to doubt;* ſterben, *to die (of);* arbeiten, *to work (at);* and leiden, *to suffer (from).*

(3) When used with adjectives, an usually means *in:* arm an, *poor in;* reich an, *rich in;* lahm an, *lame in.* Here it takes the dative.

There sat a proud king, rich in land and victories.
Dort ſaß ein ſtolzer König, an Land und Siegen reich. — Uhland.
Strong in mind, weak in body, sits the aged Kaiser Rudolf.
Stark an Geiſt, an Leibe ſchwach, ſitzt der greiſe Kaiſer Rudolf.
— Kerner.

Note. — For am with the superlative see § 218, 1. In special cases an varies both in meaning and in the case it takes.

On Tuesday, in the evening, in the morning, on the first of January.
Am Dienstag, am Abend, am Morgen, am erſten Januar.
In the sky, am Himmel (im Himmel means *in heaven*).
It's my turn now. Jetzt iſt die Reihe an mir.
A bird by its song, a man by his gait, a fool by his words, we recognize everywhere (at all places).
Einen Vogel am Sang, einen Mann am Gang, einen Toren an den Worten erkennt man an allen Orten. — Sprichwort.

120. **Auf** has several English translations.

(1) When denoting position, auf means *upon, on, top of.*

We were sitting on a bench. **Wir ſaßen auf einer Bank.**
We sat down on a bench. **Wir ſetzten uns auf eine Bank.**
My glance fell upon the captain, whose eyes rested upon the boy.
Mein Blick fiel auf den Hauptmann, deſſen Augen auf dem Knaben ruhten. — Wildenbruch.

(2) The commonest verbs with which auf is used are: antworten, *to answer, reply to;* hoffen, *to hope for;* horchen, *to listen to;* rechnen, *to count on;* ſich verlaſſen, *to rely on;*

achten, *to pay attention to;* warten, *to wait for.* With these it takes the accusative.

You can count on me. **Sie können auf mich rechnen.**
I listened to the field-song.
Ich horchte auf den Feldgesang.—Tieck.

(3) The commonest adjectives with which auf is used are stolz, *proud of;* böse, *angry at;* neidisch, *envious of;* aufmerksam, *mindful of.* Here it takes the accusative.

He was proud of his voice. **Er war stolz auf seine Stimme.**
I was right angry at myself for not being able to be angrier at you.
Ich war recht bös' auf mich, daß ich auf Euch nicht böser werden konnte.—Goethe.

Note.—(*a*) In many special cases auf means *in* or *at* with the dative and *to* with the accusative. Chief of these are: auf dem or das Land, *in* or *to the country;* auf der or die Post, *at* or *to the post-office;* auf dem or den Ball, *at* or *to a ball* (*dance*); auf dem or den Bahnhof, *at* or *to the station;* auf der or die Universität, *at* or *to the university* (of students; of professors, an); and auf dem or das Schloß, *at* or *to the castle.*

(*b*) Other common uses to which no definite rule applies are:
In German, auf deutsch; *in this way*, auf diese Weise; *at any rate*, auf alle Fälle; *by no means*, auf keinen Fall; *for to-morrow*, auf morgen; *for next week*, auf nächste Woche; *abroad* (*on travels*), auf Reisen.

It can only be said in Greek.
Es läßt sich nur auf griechisch sagen.—Wieland.

121. In usually means *in* when used with the dative, and *into* with the accusative. In a few expressions its meaning varies.

I was in town, in church, in school, in the theatre.
Ich war in der Stadt, in der Kirche, in der Schule, im Theater.
I am going to town, to church, to school, to the theatre.
Ich gehe in die Stadt, in die Kirche, in die Schule, ins Theater.
Whom God wishes to show special favor, he sends into the wide world; to him he shows his wonders in mountain, wood, stream, and field. **Wem Gott will rechte Gunst erweisen, den schickt er in die**

23. HANS SACHS' STATUE AT NUREMBERG.

weite Welt, dem will er ſeine Wunder weiſen in Berg und Wald und Strom und Feld. — Eichendorff.

Note. — The expressions zur Kirche, zur Schule suggest regular attendance with a purpose, while the above use with in refers usually to a particular act. See § 100, 1.

122. Neben means *beside*, but not so near as an. As we seldom wish to specify so closely in English, an and neben may be used interchangeably in most cases referring to places.

Who sits by you? **Wer ſitzt neben Ihnen?**
Close beside the inn stood the old church.
Dicht neben dem Wirtshauſe ſtand die alte Kirche. — Gerſtäcker.

123. Über is used literally and figuratively.

(1) When used literally über means *over, above, across.*

Over all hilltops is rest. **Über allen Gipfeln iſt Ruh'.** — Goethe.
With arms crossed over her breast she stepped down across the court. **Mit über der Bruſt gekreuzten Armen, ſchritt ſie über den Hof hinab.** — Storm.

(2) Figuratively über usually means *about*, and takes the accusative.

What were you talking about? **Worüber ſprachen Sie?**
"One can laugh about all that now," he continued.
„Über das alles," fuhr er fort, „kann man jetzt lachen."
— Wildenbruch.

Note. — Über is also used for *by way of*, in Ich fahre über Berlin. It means *from* in such expressions as: *a week from to-day, a year from to-day*, heute über acht Tage, heute übers (or über ein) Jahr.

124. Unter means *under* or *among.*

I have that among my books. **Das habe ich unter meinen Büchern.**
Neither do men light a candle and put it under a bushel, but on a candlestick. **Man zündet auch nicht ein Licht an und ſetzt es unter einen Scheffel, ſondern auf einen Leuchter.** — Bibel, Matt. 5, 15.

125. Vor is used literally meaning *before* and figuratively in various meanings.

(1) Literally vor is used with both dative and accusative and means *before, in front of.*

We rode in front of the castle. **Wir ritten vor das Schloß.**
By the spring in front of the gate there stands a linden tree.
Am Brunnen vor dem Tore da steht ein Lindenbaum. — Müller.

(2) Figuratively **vor** is used with the dative in many senses, usually with expressions implying a certain state of mind. See also §§ 4 and 25.

She got red with anger. **Sie wurde rot vor Zorn.**
I warn you of the danger. **Ich warne dich vor der Gefahr.**
You jump for joy. **Du hüpfest ja vor Freuden.** — Chamisso.

Exercises.

126. (*a*) 1. Find in § 4 an illustration of § 121; in § 8 of § 120, 2; in § 13 of § 121; in § 18, 2 of §§ 119, 1 and 121. 2. Find in § 23, 1 an illustration of § 120, 3, Note *b* and § 119, 1; in § 25 of § 125, 2; in § 41, 1 of § 119, 2; in § 50, 2 of § 121. 3. Find in § 85, 2 an illustration of § 121; in § 85, 2, Note, of § 123, 1; in § 88, Note, of § 121.

(*b*) 1. In the illustrations in § 126, *a*, above, give the case following each preposition and the reason for it. 2. Illustrate with sentences the uses of *at*, *to*, and *for* in this chapter.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Das ist richtig; Sie können sich darauf verlassen. 2. Auf keinen Fall wollen wir über Boston fahren. 3. Auf der Universität muß man vor allen Dingen an die Arbeit denken. 4. Ich habe mich noch nicht daran gewöhnt. 5. Er war so böse auf mich, daß er rot vor Zorn wurde. 6. Auf morgen wollen wir bis Seite 101 lesen.

127. (*a*) 1. He was sitting at the window on a bench. 2. I sat down beside her in an arm chair. 3. What are you laughing about? 4. I'm not laughing; I'm trembling with anger. 5. Among all the books in the library

there is nothing about the singers' contest at the Wartburg. 6. On the first of July I'm going to the country.

(*b*) 1. I am used to paying attention to my teachers. 2. Are you afraid of ghosts, or don't you believe in them? 3. We went across the street and sat down in front of the

24. The Wall and Moat at Nuremberg.

old house beside the church. 4. At any rate she will not be very angry at us. 5. We sat by the spring in front of the gate and listened to the birds under the trees. 6. A week from Monday (§§ 119, 3, Note, and 123, 2, Note) we shall be on that high mountain.

(*c*) *A Letter.* (See § 296, Note.) — 1. Dear Mother: Here we are in Nuremberg, where we are constantly reminded of the Middle Ages. 2. We arrived early in the morning

and went across the old moat, under the gate between the beautiful buildings, and listened to the river which flows through the town. 3. Then we went to the old castle by way of the market, where on market days there is much in which you would be interested. 4. In front of the castle is a very deep well, and beside a church is a little tavern called the "Bratwurstglöcklein." 5. When one is travelling in Germany one ought above all to visit Nuremberg. 6. You can depend upon it that you will be wild about it. Your loving daughter.

CHAPTER XVI.

REVIEW.

Schon.

128. The particle **ſchon** is used in German not only to translate English *already*, but in other cases. See also § 228, 2.

(1) Whenever the *idea* of *already* enters a sentence, German uses ſchon. It is not necessarily translated in English.

Have you been in Germany? **Waren Sie ſchon in Deutſchland?**
I have translated twice. **Ich habe ſchon zweimal überſetzt.**
He had gone out of the room.
Er war ſchon aus der Stube gegangen. — Wildenbruch.

(2) Schon is also used when the sentence contains an idea of future accomplishment. It may be translated in English by *all right* or *never fear*.

I'll be there on time, all right.
Ich werde ſchon zur rechten Zeit da ſein.
He'll pass, never fear. **Er wird ſchon verſetzt werden.**
We'll find the others all right.
Wir finden die anderen ſchon. — Storm.
You shall hear nothing further from me, never fear.
Du ſollſt ſchon nichts wieder von mir hören. — Heyſe.

Exercises.

129. (*a*) 1. Make a table of all the German equivalents for English *at* that have been treated in Chapters XIII, XIV, and XV and illustrate them with sentences. 2. Do

the same for the German equivalents of English *to*. 3. For the German equivalents of English *for*.

(*b*) 1. Apply the general rule for order (§ 37, Note) to prepositional phrases. Illustrate with one or more sentences. 2. How does German translate *it* and *which* following a preposition? Illustrate with sentences. 3. Are there any exceptions to the preceding answer? If so, give them with illustrative sentences.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Bitte, warten Sie einen Augenblick auf mich; ich werde ſchon daran denken. 2. Waren Sie ſchon auf dem Lande? 3. Haben Sie etwas dagegen, wenn ich durch Ihren Garten gehe? 4. Wir haben ſchon viele Pläne auf morgen über acht Tage. 5. An wem iſt die Reihe? 6. Auf keinen Fall dürfen Sie ſo darauf antworten.

130. (*a*) 1. All these people are from Schöneberg near Berlin. 2. In such weather we ought not to go afoot as far as to the castle. 3. We stayed all summer in a little village beside a broad lake. 4. Among all my friends there aren't any to whom I write year by year. 5. This man was so angry at the other that he went across the street every time he met him (begegnen with dat.). 6. Who is to blame (Schuld daran) that you did not write to your mother on Sunday?

(*b*) 1. We climbed onto the mountain by way of a narrow path between two large rocks. 2. Above all (§ 125, 2) she wishes a dress of silk for her birthday. 3. When he came back to his friends he hadn't any money with him. 4. In my opinion we cannot go from here as far as to the castle before seven o'clock. 5. In such rain I go out of the house only against my will. 6. At four

o'clock we shall go across the river and before five we shall be up (oben) on top of the mountain.

(*c*) 1. At Nuremberg there were many old houses in which we were all interested. 2. Toward sunset I went across a wide river where I rested till night. 3. After dinner will you go to town with me by way of the old church? 4. A week from (§ 123, 2, Note) to-day I'll write to you about my trip to Berlin. 5. Have you any objections (anything against it) if I go with you from the hotel as far as to the post-office? 6. We must wait for him till to-morrow, as he has all the money for us with him.

CHAPTER XVII.

INSEPARABLE VERBS.

Die Buchdruckerkunst.

131. Um das Jahr 1450 erfand Johann Gutenberg in Mainz die Buchdruckerkunst, die sich schnell über ganz Deutsch-

25. Statue of Gutenberg at Mainz. — In the background rises the famous Mainz Cathedral, historically one of the most interesting in Germany.

land verbreitete. Man empfand ein lebhaftes Intereſſe für die neuen Bücher, und der Beruf eines Buchdruckers erſchien vielen als ſehr verlockend.

Obwohl dieſe Kunſt nicht in Nürnberg entſtand, ſo trat dieſe Stadt doch ſehr bald an die Spitze des Buchhandels. Hier beſaß Anton Koberger die größte Druckerei in ganz Europa, denn er beſchäftigte hundert Geſellen mit der Bedienung ſeiner vierundzwanzig Preſſen. Bis 1504 hatte er über zweihundert Werke gedruckt, und um ſie zu verkaufen, durchreiſten ſeine Agenten ganz Deutſchland.

Syntax.

132. Inseparable Prefixes. — The commonest inseparable prefixes are be, emp, ent, er, ge, miß, ver, zer. They are never accented; in fact, in ordinary conversation they are pronounced only as "grace notes." Verbs compounded with these particles are conjugated exactly like their corresponding simple forms, except in tenses with the past participle. They form the past participle without the prefix ge: befehlen, befahl, befohlen; erzählen, erzählte, erzählt.

Let him who possesses learn to lose.
Wer beſitzt, der lerne verlieren. — Schiller.
And there is no new thing under the sun.
Und geſchieht nichts Neues unter der Sonne.
— Bibel, Prediger Salomonis 1, 9.
Duty fulfilled is always still felt as debt.
Erfüllte Pflicht empfindet ſich immer noch als Schuld. — Goethe.

Notes.

133. *Historical Note.* — After the fall of the Hohenstaufens, the next great imperial family was the house of Habsburg. Rudolph, the first of the line (1273–1291), abandoned the Italian policy of his predecessors and devoted his energies to Germany.

He insisted that all official documents and proclamations be written in German (instead of Latin as heretofore) and thus helped to develop the German language. But the greatest boons to the German tongue were to be the invention of printing and the Protestant Reformation. When manuscripts had to be laboriously copied by hand, books were rare, nor were they of the kind to appeal to the people. But Gutenberg's invention brought them within reach of all, while Luther's writings furnished matter of compelling interest.

134. It must be clearly understood at the outset that it is impossible to give a definite meaning in all cases to inseparable prefixes. The following notes, which partially cover the commonest uses, may help students to acquire some feeling for the more important meanings.

135. **Be-** has usually one of three meanings.

(1) It may merely *strengthen* a simple verb: beſehen, *to look at* (*carefully*), bedeuten, *to mean* (*exactly*), behalten, *to keep.*

What does that mean? **Was bedeutet das?**
I'll visit you this very week.
Ich beſuche euch in dieſer Woche noch. — Heyſe.

(2) Be- may mean to *provide with* the thing indicated by the root of the verb: bekränzen, *to provide with a wreath;* bekleiden, *to provide with clothes;* beſchirmen, *to provide with protection;* bedecken, *to* (*provide with a*) *cover.*

Keep your hat on, sir (*cover yourself*).
Bedecken Sie ſich, mein Herr.
Do you want happiness made happy, reward rewarded?
Wollt ihr das Glück beglückt, den Lohn belohnt? — Hauptmann.

(3) Be- may simply *make transitive* an intransitive verb: klagen, *to complain* — beklagen, *to mourn;* ſiegen, *to win* — beſiegen, *to conquer;* reiſen, *to travel* — bereiſen, *to travel through, to "do";* weinen, *to weep* — beweinen, *to bemoan,*

weep for; zahlen, *to pay out money* — bezahlen, *to pay somebody;* antworten, *to (make) answer* — beantworten, *to answer, reply to.*

Why don't you answer? **Warum antworten Sie nicht?**
I can't answer the question. **Ich kann die Frage nicht beantworten.**
To make war on oneself is the hardest fight, to conquer oneself the finest victory. **Sich ſelbſt bekriegen iſt der ſchwerſte Krieg; ſich ſelbſt beſiegen iſt der ſchönſte Sieg.** — Logau.

136. **Ent-** usually has one of two kindred meanings.

(1) It denotes the *becoming*, the *beginning* of an action, often in a figurative sense: entſtehen, *to arise* (figurative, *begin to stand*); entbrennen, *to flame up* (figurative, *begin to burn*); entblühen, *to blossom out* (*begin to bloom*).

He is aflame with love for her. **Er iſt mit Liebe zu ihr entbrannt.**
There arose a great hubbub.
Es entſtand ein großes Hallo. — Wildenbruch.

(2) From this idea of passing into another state comes the idea of *separation*, which is now the commoner meaning: entlaufen, *to run away;* enterben, *to disinherit;* entziehen, *to draw away;* entnehmen, *to take from.* Compare bewäſſern, *to water*, with entwäſſern, *to drain.*

Many quotations are taken from Goethe's works.
Viele Zitate ſind Goethes Werken entnommen.
And when it flees, belief also flees away.
Und flieht's, entflieht der Glaube auch. — Hauptmann.

Note. — Before f, ent- becomes emp-: empfehlen, *to recommend;* empfinden, *to feel;* empfangen, *to receive;* but in all these cases it has lost its original meaning.

He is received with joy in the springtime.
Er wird im Lenz mit Luſt empfangen. — Novalis.

137. **Er-** comes from an old root meaning *out;* hence, *to the end, thoroughly.* Compare English *tired out.* It usually

contains the idea of finality, accomplishment, sometimes success; ermüden, *to tire out;* erſinnen, *to recall* (*think out*); erfinden, *to invent* (*find out*); erreichen, *to reach* (*out and get*); erkennen, *to recognize* (*know thoroughly*).

I shouldn't have recognized you. **Ich hätte Sie doch nicht erkannt.**
But finally he let himself be persuaded after all.
Endlich ließ er ſich aber doch erbitten. — Storm.

138. **Ge-** meant originally *completeness*, or a *being together*, but its meaning is almost entirely lost, except that it occurs regularly as the prefix to the past participle.

I'm glad to do it. **Es iſt gern geſchehen.**
Enjoy what God has allotted to you; be glad to do without what you have not. **Genieße, was dir Gott beſchieden, entbehre gern, was du nicht haſt.** — Gellert.

139. **Miß-** means *defective, false, bad, wrong:* mißverſtehen, *to misunderstand;* mißlingen (from gelingen, *to succeed*), *to fail.*

I misunderstood that. **Das habe ich mißverſtanden.**
And a councilman of Breisach abuses his (Dürer's) favorite pupil like a rascal! **Und ein Ratsherr von Breiſach mißhandelt ſeinen Lieblingsſchüler wie einen Schuft!** — Hillern.

140. **Ver-** is the most puzzling of the prefixes, but it usually has one of three meanings.

(1) The old root meaning is *on, to the end:* vergehen, *to pass* (of time, *to go on to the end*); verhallen, *to die away* (of sound, *to sound to the end*); verſchlingen, *to swallow* (*entirely*).

How the time flies! **Wie ſchnell vergeht die Zeit!**
The last tones have died away. **Die letzten Töne ſind verhallt.**
— Chamiſſo.

(2) Thus ver- comes to mean *beyond the end*, into a different or opposite state: verachten, *to despise* (achten, *to*

honor); verbieten, *to forbid* (gebieten, *to bid*); verlernen, *to unlearn* (lernen, *to learn*); verkaufen, *to sell* (kaufen, *to buy*).

Betrayed and sold. **Verraten und verkauft.** — Sprichwort.

It is easy to put things out of tune, but not every one can put them in tune. **Verstimmen ist leicht, aber stimmen kann nicht jeder.** — Börne.

(3) So ver- comes finally to have the meaning not necessarily opposite, but just *wrong, false.* In this sense it is often reflexive: sich versehen, *to see wrong;* sich versprechen, *to misspeak, to say wrong;* verkennen, *to mistake for some one else;* verführen, *to lead astray;* verdrehen, *to twist, to give a wrong meaning to.*

Excuse me, I misspoke! **Verzeihen Sie, ich habe mich versprochen.**

Don't sit about too long, don't lie around too much, don't fly too high. **Versitz' dich nicht, verlieg' dich nicht, zu hoch hinaus verflieg' dich nicht.** — Scheffel.

Note. — But there are countless words with ver- to which none of these meanings can be traced. Nor can one foretell the meaning of ver- in any given case. For instance, achten means *to esteem* and ehren means *to honor*, but verachten means *to despise*, while verehren means *to honor exceedingly.* So, too, versprechen means *to promise*, sich versprechen, *to misspeak;* vergeben with the dative, *to forgive*, with the accusative, *to give away.* Read again § 134.

141. Zer- regularly means *separation, destruction, to pieces:* zerreißen, *to tear to pieces;* zerbrechen, *to break to pieces;* zerstören, *to destroy* (*disturb to pieces*).

I smashed my cup. **Ich habe meine Tasse zerbrochen.**

The halls are destroyed. **Die Hallen sind zerstört.** — Uhland.

Exercises.

142. (*a*) 1. Point out the illustrations of inseparable prefixes in § 131. 2. Explain those that can be explained according to the Notes in this chapter. 3. In what way do inseparable verbs differ from simple verbs?

(*b*) 1. Find and explain according to the Notes (§§ 134–141) the examples of inseparable verbs in the following sections: § 15, 2, *b*, Note *b*, § 23, 1, § 27, § 28, 1, § 43, 1. 2. In § 51, 1, § 58, 1, § 66, § 69, 2, § 73, 2, § 76, 3. 3. In § 92, § 100, 2, § 104, § 113, 1, § 117, 1, § 119, 3, Note, § 121.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Sie haben es wohl vergeſſen, oder haben Sie es mißverſtanden? 2. Verzeihen Sie mir; ich habe mich verſprochen. 3. Es geſchieht (*serves*) ihm recht, enterbt zu werden. 4. Ich empfinde ein lebhaftes Intereſſe dafür. 5. Können Sie ſich nicht erinnern, was das bedeutet? 6. Wenn Sie das behalten, ſo müſſen Sie mehr bezahlen; ich würde es verkaufen, wenn es mir gehörte.

143. (*a*) 1. He didn't succeed in remembering what the sentence meant. 2. Don't tear up that piece of paper; keep it to cover your German grammar. 3. There arose such a noise that one could hardly recognize one's own voice. 4. Have you heard to whom the big house belongs? 5. I misunderstood the waiter and paid him too much. 6. I can recommend these chairs; they are of oak and you can't break them easily.

(*b*) 1. The thief succeeded in getting away with a great deal of (viel) money. 2. The man complained of his loss, but later he forgot it entirely. 3. Kriemhilde received Siegfried and crowned him with a wreath, when he reached Worms. 4. It often happens that pupils who have forgotten, claim (behaupten) that they misunderstood the question. 5. If you twist the sentence so, I cannot help (§ 39, 2, Note) misspeaking. 6. The time passed so rapidly that we did not succeed in reaching the top of the mountain.

(*c*) *John Gutenberg.* — 1. When Gutenberg invented the art of printing, people did not feel any particular interest in it. 2. They paid him very little and he did not succeed in showing others what his invention meant. 3. But when they recognized its importance there arose great competition. 4. In Nuremberg the biggest print-shop belonged to Anton Koberger. 5. Only a little time passed before the art of printing had spread over all Germany. 6. And we must not forget that we owe this to Gutenberg.

CHAPTER XVIII.

SEPARABLE VERBS.

Albrecht Dürer.

144. Der größte deutsche Künstler des Mittelalters, Albrecht Dürer, hat sich durch seine wundervollen Gemälde ausgezeichnet. Als Jüngling wanderte er nach Italien aus, wo er viele Orte besuchte und sich an den bedeutendsten Stätten der Kunst eifrig in der Malerei übte. Nach einiger Zeit kehrte er in sein Vaterland zurück und, als er in Nürnberg eintraf, zeichnete sich seine Kunst durch ihre Frische und Naturtreue aus. Er wurde vom Kaiser Maximilian freundlich aufgenommen, bekam aber keine Stellung.

Seine Gemälde finden wir in allen bedeutenden Galerien, aber nicht nur als Maler schätzen wir ihn so hoch. Selten hat sich ein Maler zu gleicher Zeit auch durch solche vorzüglichen Kupferstiche und Holzschnitte ausgezeichnet, wie Dürer es getan hat. Und abgesehen von all seiner künstlerischen Bedeutung war er auch ein angesehener Bürger von edlem Charakter, auf den ganz Deutschland mit Recht stolz sein kann und stolz ist.

Syntax.

145. Separable Prefixes. — The Separable Prefixes include all those not inseparable, that is, all except those mentioned in the last chapter. They may be (1) prepositions, as an and aus in anziehen, *to put on;* ausziehen, *to take off;* (2) adverbs, as hin and vorbei, in hingehen,

26. Portrait of Albrecht Dürer. — Painted by the artist himself.

to go (away); vorbeigehen, *to go by, to pass*; or (3) nouns, as Haus, in haushalten, *to keep house*; Statt, in ſtattfinden, *to take place*.

146. German is *partial to separable verbs*, especially in conversation. If two verbs have the same meaning and one is separable, this one is usually preferred in talking, though the other may be used regularly in more formal language. For instance, one sees signs on doors: „Die Tür ſchließt von ſelbſt," and in trains: „Bitte die Tür nicht zu öffnen, bevor der Zug hält," and in theatres: „Die Vorſtellung (*performance*) beginnt um acht Uhr." But in conversation Germans say regularly: „Wollen Sie bitte die Tür zumachen?" „Er machte das Fenſter auf." „Wann fängt die Vorſtellung an?"

147. Separable verbs have three peculiarities.

(1) For *simple tenses* (present or past) *in independent clauses* the prefix is put at the end of the clause, except that a complementary infinitive follows it.

It now begins to dawn. **Es fängt nun an, zu tagen.** — Fouqué.
The people is aroused, the storm breaks loose.
Das Volk ſteht auf, der Sturm bricht los. — Körner.

(2) For *simple tenses in dependent clauses* the prefix is attached to the verb, just like an inseparable prefix.

He is not so stupid as he looks.
Er iſt nicht ſo dumm, wie er ausſieht. — Sprichwort.
Who doesn't go ahead, goes back.
Wer nicht vorangeht, kommt zurück. — Goethe.

(3) For *compound tenses*, whether in dependent or independent clauses, the prefix precedes the verb and is attached to it. When the infinitive with zu is used,

zu (like ge in the past participle) comes between prefix and verb.

She stopped reading aloud. **Sie hat aufgehört, vorzulesen.**
A thing put off may yet be done.
Aufgeschoben ist nicht aufgehoben. — Sprichwort.
Though time may have flown, memory never yields.
Ist die Zeit auch hingeflogen, die Erinnerung weichet nie. — Uhland.

Notes.

148. *Historical Note.* — After the death of *Rudolph of Habsburg* (1291), half a dozen different families furnished emperors, but in 1438 the crown fell again to the Habsburgs and from then on remained in that family. The most interesting and romantic of the Habsburgs was *Maximilian I* (1493–1519), "the last of the knights," the patron of Dürer (the Kaiser Max in Hillern's Höher als die Kirche). Under him a noble effort was made to reconstruct the Empire and to modernize Germany, but it failed because of the petty jealousies among the German states, of which there were at that time between three and four hundred.

149. Hin and her. Nearly all German verbs of motion are compounded with the adverbs hin and her to denote direction of motion.

(1) Hin means motion away from the speaker, her motion toward the speaker.

There he goes. **Da geht er hin.**
Is she coming across? **Kommt sie herüber?**
Whither thou goest, I will go.
Wo du hingehest, da will ich auch hingehen. — Bibel, Ruth 1, 16.

(2) Hin und her means *to and fro, hither and thither*, and is usually treated as an independent adverb, rather than as a separable prefix.

He ran hither and thither. **Er ist hin und her gelaufen.**
Wretched thoughts tore him hither and thither.
Jammervolle Gedanken rissen ihn hin und her. — Freytag.

27. ALBRECHT DÜRER'S HOUSE IN NUREMBERG.

Note. — The difficulty with hin and her lies in the fact that in English we have no equivalent word to translate. The idea is contained in our verb, but German adds a word of direction, which we forget to use when we put our English thoughts into German. But especially with gehen and kommen it is easy to get the habit of using hin and her. These phrases should be practised till they become second nature.

Come up, come over, come here.
Kommen Sie herauf, kommen Sie herüber, kommen Sie hierher.
Go up, go across, go out.
Gehen Sie hinauf, gehen Sie hinüber, gehen Sie hinaus.
He came no one knows whence, he went no one knows whither.
Er kam, und niemand weiß woher; er ging, und niemand weiß wohin.
— Leſſing.

150. English *place* has several German renderings.

(1) Der Ort (die Orte or die Örter) is used for a definite place in a broad sense, as one might refer to a city, a field, or any large space.

That is a pretty place. **Das iſt ein hübſcher Ort.**
This truth changes according to time and place.
Dieſe Wahrheit wechſelt nach Zeit und Ort. — Bismarck.

(2) Der Platz (die Plätze) usually means (*a*) *public square*, (*b*) *room*, in the sense of *space*, (*c*) a *seat*, at the theatre or in a similar place. It rarely means *place*.

(*a*) *I saw him in the Paris Square.*
Ich habe ihn auf dem Pariſer Platz geſehen.
That spreads abroad through streets and square.
Das dringt in die Weite durch Gaſſen und Platz. — Uhland.

(*b*) *Have you room enough?* **Haben Sie Platz genug?**
There's room for us both in the sea.
Es iſt Platz für uns beide im Meer. — Heyſe.

(*c*) *Is this seat taken?* **Iſt dieſer Platz belegt?**
Young L. stood erect in his seat.
Das kleine L. ſtand aufrecht auf ſeinem Platz.
— Wildenbruch.

Note. — In poetry, der Raum is regularly used for *room* in the sense shown in (*b*).

Give room [*make way*], *ye peoples.* Gebt Raum, ihr Völker. — Dahn.
In the smallest hut there is room for a happy loving pair.
Raum ist in der kleinsten Hütte für ein glücklich liebend(es) Paar.
— Schiller.

(3) Die Stelle means *place* in a narrow sense, a *particular place*, more as English uses *spot.*

I don't understand this place (*passage*).
Diese Stelle verstehe ich nicht.
I should do it on the spot. **Ich täte es auf der Stelle.** — Freytag.

(4) Die Stellung means *place* in the sense of *position*, either an actual position, a figurative one, or a job.

The maid doesn't like her new place.
Die neue Stellung gefällt der Magd nicht.
I fear that the ministers have got into an awkward place.
Ich fürchte, daß die Minister in eine schiefe Stellung geraten sind.
— Bismarck.

Exercises.

151. (*a*) 1. What are the three peculiarities of separable verbs? 2. Which of these three peculiarities is illustrated by each of the examples of separable verbs in § 144? 3. Give sentences illustrating all the uses of hin and her.

(*b*) 1. Find separable verbs in the following sections: § 9, § 15, 1, *b*, § 19, 2, § 30, 1, and Note, § 43, 1, § 50, 2, Note, § 62, § 68, 4, § 92, § 111, 1. 2. Which of the three peculiarities of separable verbs does each of the sentences in Question (*b*) 1 illustrate?

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Fangen Sie doch nicht an, bis ich aufgehört habe! 2. Kommen Sie herein; hier ist noch viel Platz. 3. Er lief hin und her, aber er konnte den Ort nicht finden. 4. Ich habe drei

Plätze für Tannhäuser; wollen Sie mitgehen? 5. Wo gehst du hin? Es ist noch nicht Zeit anzufangen. 6. Komm doch her und hilf mir; ich verstehe diese Stelle nicht.

152. (*a*) 1. As I sat down in (auf) my seat, the teacher began to talk. 2. There he goes; when do you think he will come back? 3. Read on (weiter); this is not the place where the exercise stops. 4. Come here and look at (ansehen) this picturesque little square. 5. How do you like your new place, and when does your work begin? 6. I shouldn't think (§ 41, 1, Note) of beginning before Monday.

(*b*) 1. The dog ran hither and thither in (auf) the square. 2. Where are you going and when do you arrive? 3. If you will come here I will tell you of my new place. 4. Is this the place where you want to have your house built? 5. I shouldn't think of it (§ 41, 1, Note); there isn't room enough here. 6. We went to and fro and looked for a more comfortable seat.

(*c*) *German Picture Galleries.*—1. When one begins to speak of the galleries in Germany, it is hard to stop. 2. There is no room here to tell of all the places where we can look at beautiful paintings. 3. The best are probably (wohl) in Berlin, Dresden, and Munich; these places are especially distinguished for (durch) their galleries. 4. Every year great art exhibitions take place, where countless pictures are brought together. 5. The Germans are so interested in art that thousands go (§ 149, 1) to visit these exhibitions. 6. There are usually so many people there that there is hardly room enough to look at the pictures.

CHAPTER XIX.

COMMON PREFIXES.

Luther und der Teufel.

153. Als Martin Luther Professor an der Universität zu Wittenberg war, wurde er wegen seiner Schriften verfolgt. Aber seine Freunde unterstützten ihn und brachten ihn heimlich auf der Wartburg unter. Dort führte er seinen Plan durch,

28. Luther's Room at the Wartburg. — Sight-seers are said to have carried away the inky plaster as souvenirs.

das Neue Teſtament aus dem Griechiſchen ins Deutſche zu überſetzen.

Als Luther auf der Wartburg bei dieſer Arbeit war, hat er ſich ſo überarbeitet, daß er wilde Trugbilder ſah. Eines Abends glaubte er, der Teufel ſei da und wolle ihn umſtricken. Da warf Luther ſein Tintenfaß dem Teufel an den Kopf. Der Teufel verſchwand, aber der Fleck an der Wand, wo die Tinte hinſpritzte, iſt noch heute zu ſehen.

Syntax.

154. Common Prefixes. — The four prepositions durch, über, um, and unter may be separable or inseparable.

(1) They are *separable* when both prefix and verb are used in their natural meaning. The verbs are then often intransitive, take the same auxiliary as the simple verb, and have the accent on the prefix. Like other separable verbs, they take ge= in the past participle between prefix and verb.

(2) The prepositions are *inseparable* when used in a figurative sense or one not exactly literal. The verbs are then usually transitive, have haben as auxiliary, and take the accent on the root of the verb, not on the prefix. They do not take ge= in the past participle. The inseparable use is much commoner than the separable.

One who is already soaked through boldly lets himself get rained on.
Ohne Scheu durchregnen läßt der ſich, der ſchon ganz durchnäßt.
— Sprichwort.

He only wishes to instruct you, not to convince you.
Nur unterweiſen will er dich, nicht überweiſen. — Uhland.
No one who doesn't convince himself will be convinced by you.
Niemand, der ſich nicht ſelbſt überzeugt, wird von dir überzeugt werden. — Platen.

Note. — When the preposition has an object, the verb cannot be classed as separable. Ich bin durch Deutſchland gereiſt, *I traveled through Germany*, is a sentence with a simple verb and preposition. Ich habe Deutſchland durchreiſt, *I toured Germany*, has an inseparable verb. Ich bin durchgereiſt, *I traveled through*, illustrates a separable verb.

I translate the sentence. Ich überſetze den Satz (inseparable).
I put (ferry) my friend across.
Ich ſetze meinen Freund über (separable).
I put (ferry) my friend across the river.
Ich ſetze meinen Freund über den Fluß (simple verb and preposition).
Ich habe den Satz überſetzt (inseparable).
Ich habe meinen Freund übergeſetzt (separable).
Ich habe meinen Freund über den Fluß geſetzt (simple verb).

Notes.

155. *Historical Note.* — Martin Luther is known as the "father of the modern German language." Under Emperor Maximilian, efforts were made to establish an official German court language in place of the many existing dialects. All official documents and proclamations were issued by the imperial chancery, the office of the Emperor's chancellor, in the language of Middle Germany. But this language was by no means common till the popularity of Luther's works spread it broadcast through the land. Luther wrote: "I have no certain, special, peculiar language in German; I use the common German tongue, that the people of both upper Germany and lower Germany may understand me. I speak the official Saxon language (ich rede nach der ſächſiſchen cantzeley [Kanzlei]) which all princes and kings in Germany follow." See map, p. 282.

156. The phrase *into German* is usually rendered by **ins Deutſche,** while *in German* may be **auf deutſch** or **im Deutſchen.**

What is that in German?
Wie heißt das auf deutſch (or **im Deutſchen**)?
Please put that into German.
Bitte, überſetzen Sie das ins Deutſche.

In German we lie when we are polite.

Im Deutſchen lügt man, wenn man höflich iſt. — Goethe.

In German "world" is a woman, in Latin she's a man (die Welt; *mundus*, masc.).

Auf deutſch iſt Welt ein Weib, lateiniſch iſt ſie Mann. — Logau.

29. The Outer Court at the Wartburg. — Luther's room was in the building at the left centre.

157. English *to think* may have various German renderings. See § 41.

(1) Glauben and meinen (both reg., aux. haben) are the commonest. They translate *think* in the sense of to have a *belief* (der Glaube) or an *opinion* (die Meinung). Meinen often implies not only having an opinion, but telling it. In the expression, *to think so*, *so* is either omitted entirely in German or is rendered by das or es.

Do you think it will rain?
Glauben Sie (or **meinen Sie**), **daß es regnen wird?**
Yes, I think so.
Ja, das glaube ich, or **das meine ich,** or simply: **Ich glaube** or **ich meine.**
"*Believing*" *and* "*thinking*" *deceive many a one.*
Glauben und Meinen betrügt mannig einen. — Sprichwort.
I don't think so. In the whole village they think that there's something up there that's uncanny. **Das glaub' ich nicht. Man meint im ganzen Dorf, es sei da oben etwas nicht geheuer.** — Hauptmann.

Note. — (*a*) Glauben, *to believe a person*, regularly takes the dative case.

Not one believes me, every one believes the blind man.
Nicht einer glaubt mir, jeder glaubt dem Blinden. — Sudermann.

(*b*) In the sense of *believing a thing*, glauben always takes the accusative:

Don't believe everything you hear.
Glaub' nicht gleich alles, was du hörst. — Wieland.

(*c*) Glauben, *to believe in*, takes an with the accusative. See § 119, 2.

Believe in the power of honor.
Glaub' an die Gewalt der Ehre. — A. W. Schlegel.

(2) Denken (dachte, gedacht, aux. haben) indicates *mental action* or concentration. See § 41.

Did you think of that? **Haben Sie daran gedacht?**
I've never thought about thinking.
Ich habe nie über das Denken gedacht. — Goethe.

(3) In the sense of *to think of, to consider*, usually with two objects, German uses finden or halten für. They must be used only where the English *find* or *consider* could be used.

I think him a dunce. **Ich halte ihn für einen Dummkopf.**
Don't you think that beautiful? **Finden Sie das nicht schön?**
I always thought myself a man of honor.
Ich habe mich immer für einen Mann von Ehre gehalten.
— Freytag.

Exercises.

158. (*a*) 1. Which sentences in § 153 illustrate common prefixes? 2. Write two sentences to show that the separable use of the common prefixes is just like other separable verbs. 3. Write two sentences to show that the inseparable use of the common prefixes is like other inseparable verbs.

(*b*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Ich bin feſt überzeugt, daß Sie es überſetzen können. 2. Du biſt ganz durchnäßt; du mußt dich gleich umziehen. 3. Ich glaube, das ſollten wir noch nicht unternehmen. 4. Ja, das meine ich auch, denn es iſt viel zu ſchwer. 5. Wenn Sie es nicht ins Deutſche überſetzen, ſo kommen Sie wohl nicht durch. 6. Ich glaube, er hält ſich für viel beſſer, als er iſt; meinen Sie nicht?

159. (*a*) 1. If he won't ferry us across, we shall have to go around. 2. You can't get around it; you must translate these sentences. 3. I think he has carried out what he has undertaken. 4. We don't think this book very hard; we don't overwork. 5. When I undertake something hard, I do not like to be interrupted. 6. Will you please look through this exercise and see if I have translated it right?

(*b*) 1. He was thoroughly (feſt) convinced that he could carry out what he had undertaken. 2. I think you translated the last sentence wrong (falſch). 3. Shall we ferry you across or are you going around? 4. I think him a German professor; didn't you think so, too? 5. She interrupted me to ask me to look through her exercise. 6. I don't think you'll overwork if you translate these sentences.

(*c*) *Luther and the German Language.* — 1. Many years ago Emperor Maximilian undertook a unification of the many German dialects (Mundarten) into a common language. 2. He was supported by his Chancery, which thought the German dialects too complicated. 3. The work of the Emperor was often interrupted by the quarreling nobles, who were not interested in the German language. 4. So this work was carried out only (erſt) after Luther translated the Bible. 5. Luther's works include (umfaſſen) many other writings besides the translation of the Bible, but people (§ 57) think his translation of the Bible his best work. 6. And, more than his other works, his Bible united the German dialects.

30. MARTIN LUTHER. — From a portrait painted by his friend, Lucas Cranach.

CHAPTER XX.

REVIEW.

Überhaupt.

160. The particle überhaupt is used to strengthen general statements. It is usually translated in English by *at all* or *anyway*.

That isn't right at all. **Das ist überhaupt nicht richtig.**
Do you know him at all? **Kennen Sie ihn denn überhaupt?**
But who could think such a thing anyway?
Aber wer konnte so etwas überhaupt denken? — Wildenbruch.

Exercises.

161. (*a*) 1. Give a list of the *inseparable* prefixes; of the *common* prefixes. 2. What is the only difference between *inseparable* verbs and *simple* verbs? 3. In what three ways do *separable* verbs differ from *simple* verbs? 4. Do verbs with common prefixes have the peculiarities of both separable and inseparable verbs? 5. When do simple verbs resemble verbs with common or separable prefixes? (§ 154, 2, Note.)

(*b*) 1. From the illustrations in § 142, *b*, choose the two quotations which please you best, and learn them by heart. 2. Of the illustrations in § 151, *b*, learn by heart the two which you like best.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Es fällt mir gar nicht ein, dieses Hotel zu empfehlen. 2. Ich glaube, es ist überhaupt kein Platz mehr da; was meinen Sie? 3. Was denken Sie davon überhaupt? 4. Wenn Sie nicht

überſetzen können, ſo ſchlagen Sie doch im Wörterbuch nach! 5. Ich halte es für unmöglich, dieſe Regel zu mißverſtehen. 6. Das kommt darauf an.

162. (*a*) 1. The dog ran hither and thither, but he didn't go around the little lake. 2. I do not think these exercises hard at all, but I do not understand all the rules in this book. 3. Did you misspeak, or did I misunderstand the question? 4. I like my new place, but I do not think it so good as the other. 5. Open your book, stand up, and translate the next page. 6. I can't; I have forgotten what the first word means.

(*b*) 1. That is not the right place; begin with the next line. 2. Wait till he stops and sits down in (auf) his seat. 3. I think we must wait for the teacher; don't you think so too? 4. He claims there is no room on that bench; what do you think? 5. Believe me, there aren't any good places at all in that office. 6. I don't think him as clever as he looks (ausſehen); what do you think?

(*c*) 1. He paid too much for the suit he had made. 2. Come here and I will tell you how the prisoner escaped from prison. 3. The poor child didn't know where it came from or where it was going. 4. I think there isn't any better place where we could spend the summer. 5. I don't think that he misspoke when he translated that sentence; he didn't understand what it meant. 6. We began at quarter to nine; don't you think it is almost time to stop?

CHAPTER XXI.

Haben AND Sein AS AUXILIARIES.

Die Uhren Kaiser Karls des Fünften.

163. Kaiser Karl V. hatte zwei Uhren, die niemals gleich gingen. Es ist ihm niemals gelungen, die beiden zum gleichen richtigen Gehen zu bringen, obwohl er das fleißig versuchte. Ebenso ist es ihm mit seinem Reiche ergangen, das aus Deutschland und Spanien bestand. Es war schwer, diese Staaten auf gleiche Weise zu regieren. Eines Tages begegnete ihm ein Freund, der wußte, daß die Uhren nicht gleich gingen.

Dieser Freund sagte dem Kaiser: „Wenn es dir nicht gelungen ist, zwei kleine Uhren in gleichem Gange zu erhalten, wie kannst du hoffen, Spanien und Deutschland mit gleichen Gesetzen zu regieren? Trenne lieber die beiden!" „Du hast recht," sagte Karl, und er ist dem Rate seines Freundes gefolgt. In Deutschland ist nach ihm sein Bruder Ferdinand auf den Thron gekommen; den Rest seines Reiches hat er seinem Sohne Philipp gegeben. Er selbst hat sich von der Regierung zurückgezogen.

Syntax.

164. Haben and sein as Auxiliaries. — As auxiliary, haben usually indicates verbal action, while sein is used to indicate the condition following such action. This general rule applies to most of the following more detailed statements.

31. EMPEROR CHARLES V. — From a painting by Titian.

165. Haben is used with (*a*) all transitives, (*b*) all reflexives, (*c*) all modals, (*d*) all impersonals except gelingen, geſchehen, and glücken, and (*e*) many intransitives. These last include especially those denoting no change in position, like hangen, *to hang*, leben, *to live*, liegen, *to lie*, ruhen, *to rest*, ſchlafen, *to sleep*, ſitzen, *to sit*, ſtehen, *to stand*, wohnen, *to dwell*. Braten, *to roast*, kochen, *to boil*, and rauchen, to *smoke*, take haben whether used with or without an object.

(*a*) *I have seen him.* **Ich habe ihn geſehen.**
(*b*) *Have you had a good time?* **Haben Sie ſich gut amüſiert?**
(*c*) *He hasn't been able to do it.* **Er hat es nicht tun können.**
(*d*) *I was glad that it rained.*
Es hat mich gefreut, daß es geregnet hat.
(*e*) *How long have you slept?* **Wie lange haben Sie geſchlafen?**
She has stood there long enough.
Sie hat lange genug da geſtanden.
Live as you will wish to have lived, when you die.
Lebe, wie du, wenn du ſtirbſt, wünſchen wirſt, gelebt zu haben.
— Gellert.

166. Sein is used with (*a*) all intransitives that denote change of position or condition, (*b*) ſein, *to be*, and bleiben, *to remain*, and (*c*) the impersonals gelingen, *to succeed*, geſchehen, *to happen*, and glücken, *to have good luck, to succeed.*

(*a*) *She has gone home.* **Sie iſt nach Hauſe gegangen.**
He has become very angry. **Er iſt ſehr böſe geworden.**
(*b*) *I have never been in Germany.*
Ich bin noch nie in Deutſchland geweſen.
They have stayed a long time. **Sie ſind lange geblieben.**
(*c*) *I have succeeded well.* **Es iſt mir gut gelungen (geglückt).**
It happened according to Wodan's command.
Es iſt geſchehen nach Wodans Gebot. — Baumbach.

Note. — Two common English transitives, *to follow* (folgen), and *to meet by chance, to happen upon* (begegnen), are intransitives in

German and take ſein and the dative. German befolgen and treffen correspond exactly to *follow* and *meet*, and take haben and the accusative.

Have you followed my advice? Sind Sie meinem Rate gefolgt?
How often have I met him on my walks!
Wie oft bin ich ihm auf meinen Spaziergängen begegnet!
— Wildenbruch.

167. Some intransitives may take either **haben** or **ſein**.

(1) When indicating the *goal* of the act, they take ſein.

I traveled to Berlin. **Ich bin nach Berlin gereiſt.**
He has ridden to town. **Er iſt in die Stadt geritten.**
We rowed to the shore. **Wir ſind ans Ufer gerudert.**
In this he has gone too far. **Er iſt hierbei zu weit gegangen.**
— Schiller.

(2) When indicating simply the *verbal action*, not the goal, they take haben.

I have traveled for Allyn and Bacon.
Ich habe für Allyn und Bacon gereiſt.
He has ridden till he is tired. **Er hat geritten, bis er müde iſt.**
We have rowed for two hours. **Wir haben zwei Stunden gerudert.**
I never rode like that. **So hab' ich nie geritten.** — Goethe.

Note. — Of course when these verbs are used transitively, even when they indicate the goal of the action, they take haben.

I rode my horse to town. Ich habe mein Pferd in die Stadt geritten.
He drove us to the station. Er hat uns nach dem Bahnhof gefahren.

Notes.

168. *Historical Note.* — Charles V (1519–1556), grandson of Maximilian I, inherited Austria from his father, and Spain and the Netherlands from his mother. When he was chosen Emperor, the former glories of the Empire seemed to be revived in his vast domains. In 1547, a year after the death of Luther, Charles emerged victorious from a religious war and stood for a brief space at the very zenith of his power, the mightiest ruler in

Christendom. But the religious struggles which he strove to stop, kept on, and disturbances in various quarters of his wide realm wearied him of worldly cares, so that in 1556 he withdrew, leaving to his brother Ferdinand I Austria and the Habsburg possessions, and to his son Philip the Netherlands, Spain, and the Spanish possessions in the New World.

169. German **Uhr** has two common English equivalents.

(1) It regularly means *watch* or *clock*. When confusion between these two might arise, die Taſchenuhr is used for *watch*.

Where is the clock? I don't see it.
Wo iſt die Uhr? Ich ſehe ſie nicht.
The clock, it tells the hour.
Die Uhr, ſie zeigt die Stunde. — Grillparzer.

(2) Uhr is used for English *time* or *o'clock* in telling time (see § 50, 4).

What time is it? **Wieviel Uhr iſt es?**
At three o'clock we mounted our horses.
Um drei Uhr ſetzten wir uns zu Pferde. — Liliencron.

Note. — The *hour* is always die Stunde, which also means *the lesson*. Never use Uhr for *hour*.

We waited for him two hours.
Wir haben zwei Stunden auf ihn gewartet.
I will give you a lesson daily.
Ich werde Ihnen täglich eine Stunde geben. — Wildenbruch.

170. German **beide** has two peculiarities.

(1) When used with an article, a possessive, or a demonstrative, it comes between this and its noun.

I have both books. **Ich habe beide Bücher.**
I have both the (or *my*) *books.*
Ich habe die (or **meine**) **beiden Bücher.**
Both the parents have gone out.
Die beiden Eltern ſind hinausgegangen. — Chamiſſo.

(2) In referring to two actions or two things that are thought of as belonging together, German uses **beides** for *both*. It can never be used for persons.

Did he sing or play? — Both!
Hat er gesungen oder gespielt? — Beides!
Both are right. **Beides ist richtig.**
I am pleased that both spring from your hands.
Ich bin vergnügt, daß beides aus deinen Händen quillt. — Mörike.

Note. — (*a*) **Die beiden** is usually used for *the two* in referring to a definite pair.

The stepmother and the two sisters were frightened.
Die Stiefmutter und die beiden Schwestern erschraken. — Grimm.

(*b*) When in doubt as to which form (**beides** or **beide**) to use, a safe rule is to use **alle beide**, which is correct for persons, things, or actions. It may be substituted for **beides** or **beide** in nearly all the examples in (1) and (2).

Who possesses that does not need both.
Wer das besitzt, braucht alle beide nicht. — Hebbel.

171. English *to meet* has two common German renderings.

(1) The commoner is **treffen** (traf, getroffen, er trifft, aux. **haben**), also as reflexive, **sich treffen**. It generally means *to meet by appointment, intentionally.*

Did you meet him? **Haben Sie ihn getroffen?**
Where shall we meet each other? **Wo wollen wir uns treffen?**
I'd meet many old friends and comrades there.
Ich würde viele alte Freunde und Kameraden dort treffen.
— Freytag.

(2) In the sense of *to meet by chance, to run across*, German generally uses **begegnen** (reg. insep., aux. **sein**), with the dative. See § 166, Note.

I just met your sister in Broad Street.
Ich bin eben in der Breiten Straße Ihrer Schwester begegnet.
In the court the coachman met him.
Auf dem Hofe begegnete ihm der Kutscher. — Storm.

Note. — *To meet* in the sense of *to get acquainted with* is kennen lernen. The regular remark in Germany when one is introduced is *Very agreeable*, ſehr angenehm. The common forms of introduction are:

Have you met Mr. Brown? Haben Sie Herrn Braun kennen gelernt?
May I present you to my sister? or *May I acquaint you?*
Darf ich Sie meiner Schweſter vorſtellen? or Darf ich die Herren (die Herrſchaften, when of different sexes) bekannt machen?

172. English *right* is rendered in German in two ways.

(1) Recht is used (*a*) for all cases of *right* as distinguished from *left* and (*b*) for the expression *to be right* when referring to persons. In the latter case it is used only with the verb haben.

(*a*) *I hurt my right foot.* **Ich habe mir den rechten Fuß verletzt.**
Let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth.
So laß deine linke Hand nicht wiſſen, was die rechte tut.
—Bibel, Matt. 6, 3.

(*b*) *Am I right?* **Hab' ich recht?** (Never, **Bin ich recht?**)
Yes, you are right. **Ja, da haſt du recht.** —Hauptmann.

(2) Richtig is used for *right* in the sense of *correct*. It is used generally with ſein and of things.

Is this sentence right? **Iſt dieſer Satz richtig?**
That isn't right (*doesn't happen right*).
Das geht nicht richtig zu. —Leſſing.

Note. — A common expression for *that is right*, especially in referring to number, paying bills, counting change, and so on, is: Das ſtimmt (*that is in tune*).

173. English *hard* is variously rendered in German.

(1) As an adjective in the sense of *hard to the touch*, the opposite of *soft*, *hard* is hart.

This pencil is too hard. **Dieſer Bleiſtift iſt zu hart.**
He is girt from top to toe in hard steel.
Er iſt vom Wirbel bis zur Sohl' in harten Stahl geſchnallt.
—Uhland.

(2) As an adjective in the sense of *difficult, hard* is ſchwer.

This exercise is not hard. **Dieſe Aufgabe iſt nicht ſchwer.**
It may have been hard for the old man.
Schwer mag es dem greiſen Manne geweſen ſein.—Roſegger.

(3) As an adverb, in the sense of *industriously, hard* is fleißig.

You must study harder. **Sie müſſen fleißiger lernen.**
But they worked all the harder.
Aber deſto fleißiger arbeiteten ſie.—Keller.

(4) As an adverb in the sense of *vigorously, hard* is ſtark.

It rained very hard. **Es regnete ſehr ſtark.**
The old man smoked harder.
Der Alte rauchte ſtärker.—Wildenbruch.

Exercises.

174. (*a*) 1. Explain by the rules in § 164 to § 167 the uses of haben and ſein in § 163. 2. Apply the general rule in § 164 to the special cases in §§ 165, 166, and 167. 3. Give German sentences illustrating two common verbs which take ſein and the dative when their English equivalents take *have* and a direct object.

(*b*) 1. Find examples of the auxiliary haben in § 6, 1, § 28, 2, § 51, 2, § 68, 1 and 4, § 73, 1 and 2, § 81. 2. Find illustrations of the auxiliary ſein in § 30, 2, § 68, 2, § 128, 1, § 140, 1, § 147, 3, § 150, 4. 3. Under what phase of the rules in §§ 164–167 does each of the above examples belong?

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Ich möchte ſie kennen lernen. Wollen Sie mich vorſtellen?—Sehr angenehm! 2. Was iſt denn geſchehen? Ich habe nichts gehört. 3. Ich bin den beiden eine Stunde lang gefolgt. 4. Sie haben recht; der Satz iſt richtig. 5. Ich hatte deutſche Stunden, aber das Buch war zu ſchwer. 6. Sie haben wohl nicht fleißig genug gearbeitet.—Ja, das ſtimmt!

175. (*a*) 1. It was very hard, but we succeeded in translating both the sentences right. 2. We had followed them for two hours when it began to rain hard (§ 173, 4). 3. During all the lesson the two girls were right every time they translated. 4. If you work hard, your exercises will be right. 5. Have you decided at what time we shall meet [each other]? 6. Have you met my brother? May I present him to you?

(*b*) 1. I gave him both my pencils; he said one was too hard, but the other was just (gerade) right. 2. Two hours ago we met them both in (auf dem) Harvard Square. 3. In the last lesson you weren't right a single time, but both these sentences are right. 4. Is this exercise hard or long? Both. 5. You have slept a long time; now you must study (lernen) hard. 6. If you had followed my advice, the work would not have been so hard.

(*c*) *Charles the Fifth.*—1. Emperor Charles was right when he followed his friend's advice. 2. He had not succeeded in ruling both his kingdoms well. 3. He worked hard, but it was too hard for him. 4. He had lived a long time in Germany and in Spain. 5. Of the two he liked Spain best, so he retired there (§ 149, 1). 6. In history it has often happened that the ones who work hardest succeed least.

CHAPTER XXII.

ENGLISH VERBALS TRANSLATED BY GERMAN INFINITIVES.

Der dreißigjährige Krieg.

176. Auch nach dem Tode Karls des Fünften sehen wir die Deutschen über die Religion streiten. Im Jahre 1618 brach ein gewaltiger Bürgerkrieg aus. Dieser dreißig Jahre

32. The Walls and Towers of Rothenburg. — This picturesque city was taken by General Tilly in the Thirty Years' War, but the walls were not demolished.

dauernde Kampf ist der fürchterlichste in der ganzen Weltgeschichte. Um sich zu erhalten, fingen die Heere an, die armen Bauern auszuplündern. Diese fuhren eine Zeitlang fort, das Land zu bebauen, aber nur, um es wieder von den Heeren verwüstet zu sehen. Da wurden sie selber Räuber.

Die Hälfte der Bevölkerung Deutschlands ist damals vernichtet worden, und ein ganzes Geschlecht ist herangewachsen, ohne in Kirche oder Schule zu gehen. Die einzige Beschäftigung war der Krieg. Ein halbes Jahrhundert litt Deutschland unter diesem Elend, und es dauerte zweihundert Jahre, bis es sich von den Folgen dieses Krieges erholt hat.

Syntax.

177. Verbals in *-ing*. — English verbals in *-ing* are translated in German by a participle, by an infinitive, or by a clause. The third use — clauses — will be treated in the next chapter.

178. When the English verbal in *-ing* is a *participial modifier*, it is rendered in German by the present participle. In English the verbal (participle) follows its noun and is followed by its modifiers; but in German it precedes its noun and is preceded by its modifiers. It is rare in conversation, but common in formal German, especially in signs and newspapers.

The book lying on the table is mine.
Das auf dem Tisch liegende Buch gehört mir.
I should be (as) sounding brass, or a tinkling cymbal.
So wäre ich ein tönend(es) Erz oder eine klingende Schelle.
— Bibel, 1 Kor. 13, 1.

Note. — (*a*) This same order is followed for past participles as well as those in *-ing*.

A boat made by a little boy.
Ein von einem kleinen Knaben gemachtes Boot.

I flew through the neighborhood to the owner of the house Mr. Albret had once pointed out to me as for sale.

Ich flog in die Nachbarschaft zum Besitzer des mir einst von Herrn Albret als verkäuflich angedeuteten Hauses. — Zschokke.

(*b*) The English progressive form in *-ing* is rendered in German by the simple verb. See § 227, 1.

Are you coming? Kommen Sie mit?
I was walking along by myself in the wood.
Ich ging im Walde so für mich hin. — Goethe.

179. When the English verbal in *-ing* is *not a participial modifier*, it is rendered in German by an infinitive or by a clause. For the translation by a clause, see Chapter XXIII.

180. When the verbal in *-ing* is *translated by a German infinitive*, zu is omitted after certain verbs; after others it is not omitted.

(1) Zu is *omitted* in translating an English verbal in *-ing* when the infinitive follows bleiben, finden, hören, sehen, and verbs of motion when used with spazieren. *Hear* and *see* take either infinitive or verbal in English: *I heard him sing* or *singing*. But in German they are followed only by the infinitive without zu.

He remained sitting. **Er blieb sitzen.**
Did you see them playing (or *play*) *football?*
Hast du sie Fußball spielen sehen?
I heard a brooklet babbling (or *babble*).
Ich hört' ein Bächlein rauschen. — Müller.
I went riding when I should have preferred to go walking.
Ich ritt spazieren, da ich doch lieber spazieren gegangen wäre.
— Moltke.

Note. — When used with *come*, in expressions like *came running*, the verbal is translated in German by the past participle (kam gelaufen).

A bird comes flying. Kommt ein Vogel geflogen. — Volkslied.

(2) Zu is *used* in translating an English verbal in *-ing* after anfangen, *to begin;* fortfahren, *to continue;* aufhören, *to stop;* gelingen, *to succeed.* The first two may also be used with the infinitive in English, as well as with the verbal in *-ing*: *I began reading* or *to read.* But in German they are followed only by the infinitive with zu.

She began singing (or *to sing*). **Sie fing an zu ſingen.**
He continues whispering (or *to whisper*). **Er fährt fort zu flüſtern.**
Did you succeed in getting tickets?
Iſt es Ihnen gelungen, Karten zu bekommen?
Now when he had left speaking he said unto Simon.
Und als er hatte aufgehört zu reden, ſprach er zu Simon.
—Bibel, Luc. 5, 4.

181. **Ohne,** *without*, and **anſtatt,** *instead of*, are followed by the infinitive, when English *without* and *instead of* are followed immediately by the verbal in *-ing*. Cases where a modifier intervenes — as *without MY seeing* — are treated in the next chapter.

I turned round without seeing him.
Ich wandte mich um, ohne ihn zu ſehen.
Instead of coming in, he walked calmly on.
Anſtatt hereinzukommen, ging er ruhig weiter.
O, do not go without blessing me.
O geht nicht, ohne mich zu ſegnen. — Klopſtock.

Notes.

182. *Historical Note.* — The two immediate successors of Charles V were more liberal and not inclined to wage religious wars, and during their reigns Protestantism made great gains. A hundred years after the beginning of the Reformation (1517–1618) Protestants and Catholics were about equally numerous and equally zealous in Germany. Relations between them became more and more strained till in 1618 the most horrible of all religious wars broke out. First Denmark, then Sweden, and finally

33. THE FORTRESS AT COBURG. — One of the strongholds that withstood the sieges of the Thirty Years' War. A later Duke of Coburg (Saxe-Coburg-Gotha) was the husband of Queen Victoria.

France entered Germany under pretence of helping the Protestants, and army after army harried the land. The leaders adopted the policy of supporting the army upon the country. The peasants were outrageously plundered and their lands laid waste; villages, even cities and whole industries, were wiped out of existence. But finally there came an Emperor — Ferdinand III (1637–1657), the great-grandnephew of Charles V — who opposed the war, and eleven years after his accession it came to a close (1648) in the Peace of Westphalia. Not till the middle of the nineteenth century did some parts of Germany again contain as many inhabitants as before 1618.

183. English *to take* is generally **nehmen** (nahm, genommen, aux. haben).

(1) *To take time*, in the sense of *to last*, is always German dauern (reg., aux. haben), never nehmen.

How long does it take to get to town?
Wie lange dauert es, bis man in die Stadt kommt?
It took quite awhile, before he came to the surface again.
Es dauerte eine Zeitlang, ehe er wieder auf die Oberfläche kam.
—Storm.

(2) *To take a train* (*street car, omnibus,* or *carriage*) is usually fahren mit (fuhr, gefahren, aux. ſein), though nehmen is also used in this sense.

Did you take the omnibus? **Sind Sie mit dem Omnibus gefahren?**
No, we took an auto. **Nein, wir ſind mit einem Auto gefahren.**
Take the train through Germany.
Fahr doch mit der Bahn durch Deutſchland.—Wolzogen.

(3) *To take a trip* or *a walk* is eine Reiſe or einen Spaziergang machen (reg., aux. haben).

We took a walk this morning.
Heute morgen haben wir einen Spaziergang gemacht.
We'll take the trip together.
Wir machen die Reiſe zuſammen.—Schiller.

(4) *To take a person for some one else* or *to consider as* is halten für (hielt, gehalten, aux. haben). See § 157, 3. Halten is also used for *to take a newspaper.*

I took you for your brother.
Ich habe Sie für Ihren Bruder gehalten.
What paper do you take?
Welche Zeitung (never **Papier**) **halten Sie?**
You take me for a child.
Du hältſt mich für ein Kind.—Chamiſſo.

Note. — *To take pains* is ſich (dative) Mühe geben.

Mr. Bolz, I'll take pains not to show you that.
Herr Bolz, ich will mir Mühe geben, Ihnen das nicht zu zeigen.
—Freytag.

184. English *half* has two German equivalents.

(1) As a noun *half* is always die Hälfte.

I'll only take half. **Ich nehme nur die Hälfte.**
So half of these purses are his.
So ist die Hälfte dieser Beutel sein. — Lessing.

(2) As an adjective or adverb, *half* is regularly **halb**.

You have lost half a day. **Sie haben einen halben Tag verloren.**
It is only half as far. **Es ist nur halb so weit.**
I did it with half a glance.
Ich tat es mit einem halben Blicke. — Keller.

185. English *only* is both adverb and adjective.

(1) As an adverb, *only* is (*a*) **nur**, except when it modifies time-expressions in the sense of *for the first time, not until;* then it is (*b*) **erst**.

(*a*) *There are only two seats here.* **Hier sind nur zwei Plätze.**
Love only, love is life.
Die Liebe nur, die Lieb' ist Leben. — Fallersleben.
(*b*) *The boy is only four years old.*
Der Knabe ist erst vier Jahre alt.
Only when he stood close before them, did they start up.
Erst als er dicht vor ihnen stand, fuhren sie in die Höhe.
— Hillern.

(2) As an adjective, *only* is **einzig**.

I was the only man there. **Ich war da der einzige Mann.**
The poet is the only true man, and the best philosopher is only a caricature beside him. **Der Dichter ist der einzige wahre Mensch, und der beste Philosoph ist nur eine Karikatur gegen ihn.** — Schiller.

Note. — **Einzig** also means *single* in the sense of *sole, only: not a single time*, kein einziges Mal. See § 9. It must not be confused with **einzeln**, *single* in the sense of *separate, individual: a single (odd) volume*, ein einzelner Band; *single (detached) houses*, einzelne Häuser. *A single man* is ein unverheirateter Mann.

Exercises.

186. (*a*) 1. State the differences between the English and German uses of the present participle as a modifier. 2. Illustrate these differences by sentences in each lan-

guage. 3. Do these differences hold also for past participles when used as modifiers? Illustrate.

(*b*) 1. Name the commonest German verbs which are followed by an infinitive without zu when translating an English verbal in *-ing*. 2. Illustrate their use in two German sentences. 3. Name the commonest German verbs followed by an infinitive with zu to translate an English verbal in *-ing*. 4. What four verbs (§ 180, 1 and 2) may have an English translation just like the German? 5. Illustrate the uses of ohne and anſtatt with zu and the infinitive.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Wo ſind wir geſtern ſtehen geblieben? (the schoolroom phrase for *stop*). 2. Nein, hören Sie noch nicht auf zu leſen! 3. Bitte, wollen Sie fortfahren zu überſetzen? 4. Ich höre jemand flüſtern; das muß ſofort aufhören. 5. Es hat nur eine halbe Stunde gedauert. 6. Die erſte Hälfte der Aufgabe hat er überſetzt, ohne ſich Mühe zu geben.

187. (*a*) 1. Please stop whispering and begin translating. 2. Instead of taking a carriage when you take a long trip, you ought to take the train. 3. Otherwise (ſonſt) it will take so long that you will not arrive till (§ 185, 1, *b*) the next day. 4. Without waiting for help, he succeeded in translating half a page. 5. If you continue working hard, it will take only half an hour. 6. He didn't see me coming, so I found him lying on the ground.

(*b*) 1. We heard the teacher read the first half of the exercise without translating. 2. That is the only mistake you made. 3. If you continue whispering, we shall have to stop reading. 4. If you cannot begin translating, you need not stand. 5. She read half a page without making a single mistake. 6. They looked for him a long time,

and it took two hours before they found him sleeping under a tree.

(*c*) *Germany after the Thirty Years' War.* — 1. Only after two centuries did Germany begin recovering from the consequences of the Thirty Years' War. 2. Half the country was devastated, and it took a long time before we find Germany thriving. 3. Instead of despairing, the Germans continued working and took pains to develop their country. 4. That was the only way in which (wie) they succeeded in recovering from the war. 5. They never stopped working. 6. And to-day we see Germany thriving and developing extraordinarily.

CHAPTER XXIII.

ENGLISH VERBALS AND INFINITIVES TRANSLATED BY GERMAN CLAUSES.

Der Große Kurfürst.

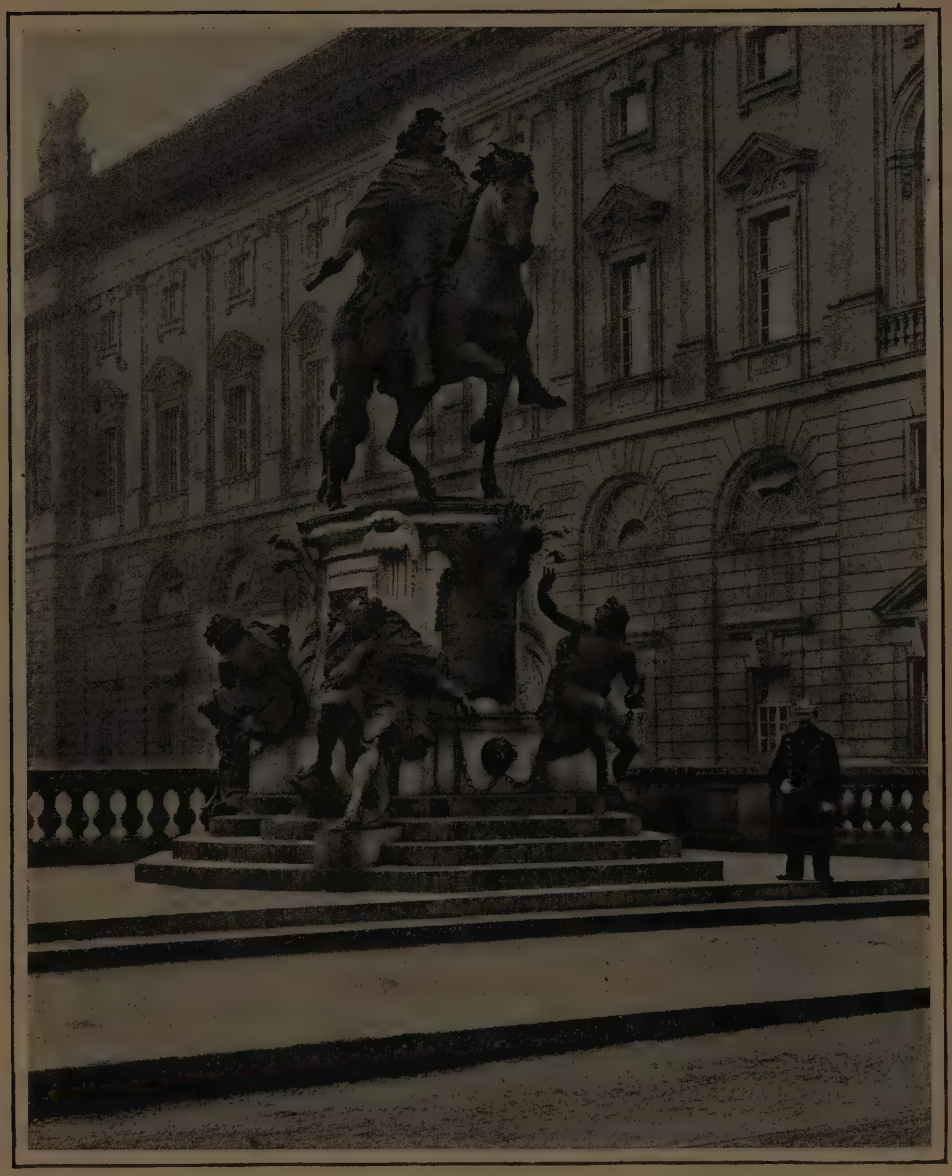
188. Im Jahre 1640 wurde Friedrich Wilhelm Kurfürst von Brandenburg und Herzog von Preußen. Da er damals ganz Deutschland von dem großen Krieg verwüstet sah, so wünschte er, daß sein kleines Heer sich stets kriegsbereit halte. Im Gegensatz zu anderen Fürsten jener Zeit bestand er darauf, daß sein Heer nicht plünderte.

Als seine Feinde im Begriff waren, in sein Land einzudringen, verjagte er sie mit diesem kleinen Heere, ohne daß er eine einzige Schlacht verlor. Er hatte seinen Leuten gesagt, sie sollten bedenken, daß sie Deutsche seien. Und kurz bevor er seinem Sohne die Regierung übergab, empfahl er diesem, für das Wohl seines Volkes zu sorgen. Das war „der große Kurfürst" und die Deutschen sind noch stolz darauf, daß er für das Vaterland so viel getan hat.

Syntax.

189. Verbals rendered by Clauses. — English verbals in *-ing* are rendered by German clauses in two important cases.

(1) When an English verbal in *-ing* is in a *participial phrase of time* or *cause*, it is rendered in German not by a participle or by an infinitive, but by a clause. This clause is generally introduced by als, *when*, wäh-



34. STATUE OF THE GREAT ELECTOR IN BERLIN.

rend, *while*, indem, *at the moment when*, *as*, or da, *as*, *because*. Thus these participial phrases must be mentally changed to clauses before translating.

While reading I fell asleep.
Während (or **als**) **ich las, ſchlief ich ein.**

Coming around the corner she slipt.
Indem ſie um die Ecke kam, glitt ſie aus.
Seeing her fall, he hurried to help her.
Da er ſie fallen ſah, eilte er ihr zu Hilfe.
"But where are your strawberries?" she asked finally, stopping and taking a deep breath.
„Wo bleiben denn aber deine Erdbeeren?" fragte ſie endlich, indem ſie ſtehen blieb und einen tiefen Atemzug tat. — Storm.

(2) When the English verbal in *-ing* is the *object of a preposition*, it is usually rendered in German by a daß-clause. The corresponding German preposition is then combined with the particle da- and comes just before daß.

We insisted on his going. **Wir beſtanden darauf, daß er gehe.**
She spoke of seeing him.
Sie ſprach davon, daß ſie ihn geſehen hatte.
Were you proud of being there?
Waren Sie ſtolz darauf, daß Sie da waren?
Often we please most by giving others opportunity to please.
Man gefällt oft am meiſten dadurch, daß man andern Gelegenheit zu gefallen verſchafft. — Goethe.

190. Ohne daß and anſtatt daß. — When a possessive comes between *without* or *instead of* and the verbal in *-ing*, — *without MY seeing*, — German renders this verbal by a **daß**-clause. Compare § 181.

Instead of his doing it, you ought to.
Anſtatt daß er es tut, ſollten Sie's.
Without his meaning to, without his knowing it, the critic emphasizes defects and overlooks beauties.
Ohne daß er es will, ohne daß er es weiß, hebt der Beurteiler Flecken hervor, überſieht er Schönheiten. — Engel.

191. Infinitives rendered by Clauses. — Some *English infinitives* are translated into German by a daß-clause,

usually when the English infinitives follow verbs like *to tell* (ſagen), *to know* (wiſſen), or *to believe* (glauben).

He told me to wait. **Er ſagte mir, daß ich warten ſollte.**
I know him to be my friend. **Ich weiß, daß er mein Freund iſt.**
In the end you too will believe me to be such a bad man. **Am Ende glaubſt du auch noch, daß ich ſolch ein ſchlechter Menſch bin.** — Hillern.

(1) After *to wish* (wünſchen), the English infinitive, if it has a subject accusative, *I wish him to go*, is rendered by a daß-clause. Otherwise German uses the infinitive after wünſchen just as English does after *to wish*.

After *to command* (befehlen), a *short* infinitive phrase may be translated into German by the infinitive as well as by a daß-clause. Longer English phrases after *to command* are usually rendered in German by daß-clauses, not by the infinitive.

I wish to go. **Ich wünſche zu gehen.**
I wish him (subject accusative) *to go.*
Ich wünſche, daß er gehe (or **geht**).
She ordered me to stay. **Sie befahl mir, zu bleiben.**
Then he commanded us all to fold our hands.
Dann befahl er, daß wir alle die Hände falteten. — Wildenbruch.

Notes.

192. *Historical Note.* — The electors were the seven — later nine — German princes who chose the Emperor. The Great Elector (who reigned 1640–1688) developed Brandenburg (Prussia) in peace and extended it by war. He secured Eastern Pomerania, Prussia's first seacoast. The Elector's son (1688–1713) raised his title from Elector of Brandenburg to "King in Prussia." His son in turn (1713–1740), called the „Soldatenkönig," developed the mighty army which was to be used so magnificently by his son Frederick the Great (1740–1786). All these Prussian rulers desired to strengthen their country by promoting education, husbanding their resources, and developing the army.

193. English *about* has several German meanings.

(1) As a preposition in the sense of *around*, *about* is translated by um (§ 111, 1); in the sense of *concerning*, by über (§ 123, 2).

(2) As a limiting adverb *about* is rendered in German by etwa or ungefähr. The latter is the more current.

About how far is it to the station?
Wie weit iſt es ungefähr (etwa) nach dem Bahnhofe?
It's about half a mile. **Es iſt ungefähr (etwa) eine halbe Meile.**
About as much as nothing. **Ungefähr ſo viel wie nichts.** — Kleiſt.

(3) *To be about to* do something is usually im Begriff ſein.

The two armies were about to fight.
Die beiden Heere waren im Begriff zu kämpfen.
I was often about to tell him so frankly.
Ich war oft im Begriff, es ihm offen zu ſagen. — Keller.

Note. — Other expressions for *to be about to* are: eben wollen, gerade wollen, and auf dem Punkte ſtehen, all of which may be literally translated in English: *I just wanted to*, *was on the point of*, and so on.

194. English *little* has two German renderings.

(1) When *little* can be replaced in English by *small*, German uses klein.

What a little house! **Welch kleines Haus!**
Who doesn't honor the little isn't worthy of the great.
Wer das Kleine nicht ehrt iſt des Großen nicht wert. — Sprichwort.

(2) When English *little* can be replaced by *not much*, German uses wenig. It is usually indeclinable.

I have little money. **Ich habe wenig Geld.**
(**Ich habe kleines Geld** or **Kleingeld** means *I have small change.*)
Do you speak German? A little.
Sprechen Sie Deutſch? Ein wenig.
There is gay life there, and even if little money, still many kinds of wares. **Da iſt frohes Leben, und wenn auch wenig Geld, doch vielerlei Ware.** — Zſchokke.

195. English *ready* has two German renderings.

(1) In the general sense of *preparedness* or *mental readiness* German generally uses bereit. It usually looks to the future and is completed by an infinitive.

Are you ready to begin? **Sind Sie bereit, anzufangen?**
I am ready to die. **Bereit bin ich zu ſterben.** — Fouqué.

(2) In the sense of *physical readiness, ready* is German fertig, which also means *through, finished*, generally looks to the past, and is not completed by an infinitive.

He isn't ready (through) yet. **Er iſt noch nicht fertig.**
Money, checks are prepared, ready as my nod commands.
Gelder, Wechſel ſtehn bereit, fertig, wie mein Wink gebeut.
— Grillparzer.

196. English *self* (*himself, myself, themselves, yourself*) has two German renderings.

(1) As the reflexive, *self* is ſich for the third person of both numbers and for the polite form of address. For the first and second persons the personal pronoun (dative or accusative) is used.

Did you cut yourself? **Haſt du dich (Haben Sie ſich) geſchnitten?**
I hurt myself. **Ich habe mir weh getan.**
Did I ever promise myself to you?
Hab' ich mich dir je verſprochen? — Heyſe.

(2) As the intensive, *self* is ſelbſt or ſelber (indeclinable).

Did you write that yourself?
Haben Sie das ſelbſt (ſelber) geſchrieben?
The servant would like to be a knight himself.
Der Knecht wär' ſelber ein Ritter gern. — Uhland.

Note. — Selbſt also means *even*. Never use eben, which is usually the adverb *just*.

Mortal, even your thoughts are not your own.
Selbſt die Gedanken, Sterblicher, ſind nicht dein eigen. — Arndt.

197. English *to order* has two German renderings.

(1) In ordering something at a store or restaurant, use bestellen (reg. insep., aux. haben).

Have you ordered? **Haben Sie schon bestellt?**
Yes, dear Lottie, I will attend to and order everything.
Ja, liebe Lotte, ich will alles besorgen und bestellen. — Goethe.

(2) In the sense of *command, order* is befehlen (befahl, befohlen, aux. haben) with the dative. It may be followed by an infinitive or a clause. See § 191, 1.

He ordered you to do it.
Er befahl Ihnen, es zu tun (or **daß Sie es tun**).
Command therefore that the sepulchre be made sure.
Darum befiehl, daß man das Grab verwahre.
— Bibel, Matt. 27, 64.

Note. — The phrase *in order to* is um zu with an infinitive phrase, or damit with a clause whose verb is usually in the subjunctive.

We went early in order to get better seats.
Wir sind früh gegangen, um bessere Plätze zu bekommen (or damit wir bessere Plätze bekämen).
Hans hurried to meet them, in order to hear what was up.
Hans eilte ihnen entgegen, um zu hören, was es gab. — Hillern.

Exercises.

198. (*a*) 1. State the two cases where English verbals in *-ing* are rendered in German by clauses. 2. Illustrate each case by two German sentences. 3. Translate three English sentences into German to illustrate English infinitives rendered by German clauses. 4. What is the difference between the use of ohne and anstatt in this chapter and in Chapter XXII? Illustrate each with a sentence.

(*b*) 1. Which sentences in § 188 may have English verbals in their translation? 2. Which sentences in § 188 may have English infinitives to translate their clauses? 3. Give the rule (§§ 189, 190, or 191) covering each case.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Aber ich habe noch nicht beſtellt. 2. Er war im Begriff abzureiſen, aber ſeine Sachen waren noch nicht fertig. 3. Du ſollſt deinen Nächſten lieben wie dich ſelbſt (3 Moſe 19, 18). 4. Sie haben nur ungefähr eine Stunde gearbeitet; das iſt zu wenig. 5. Jetzt bin ich bereit, mit der Überſetzung fortzufahren. 6. Er ging nach Hauſe, ohne daß der Lehrer es bemerkte.

199. (*a*) 1. She told him to translate without anybody's helping him. 2. Instead of her going, I was about to go myself. 3. He ordered a little chicken (translate *little* two ways), but it wasn't ready (§ 62). 4. Coming suddenly into the room, the teacher found the pupils whispering. 5. He scolded the pupils for (darum) not being ready to translate. 6. He ordered us to stop before we were ready.

(*b*) 1. I know him to be about sixty years old. 2. He insists on our ordering everything that (was) we like. 3. Having translated all the exercise without the teacher's finding a single mistake, she was proud of knowing so much. 4. I was about to say that about half the class is ready to translate this page. 5. Dewey ordered Gridley to begin the fight when he was ready. 6. Seeing the little girl whispering, the teacher ordered her to stop.

(*c*) *The Development of Brandenburg-Prussia.* — 1. Two hundred and fifty years ago Brandenburg was a little country about one-seventh as large as the Prussia of to-day. 2. But it was about to become a great power by (dadurch) having great rulers. 3. They ordered their people (das Volk) to work hard. 4. We know the Great Elector to have been an extraordinary man. 5. He was always ready to fight in order to help his people. 6. He wished them to thrive, and Prussia is proud of having developed so well during his life.

CHAPTER XXIV.

REVIEW.

Ja.

200. The particle **ja** is used not only for the answer *yes*, but in two other cases.

(1) Ja may strengthen a command. It is then emphasized and may be translated by various emphatic words in English, *by all means*, *be sure*, and so on.

Come by all means! **Kommen Sie ja!**
Be sure not to forget it! **Vergeſſen Sie's ja nicht!**
Let me hear it right soon.
Laſſen Sie mich es ja bald hören!—Leſſing.

(2) Ja may emphasize a well-known fact. It is then unaccented and may often be translated by exclamatory *why*, *I tell you*, *you know*, or by inverting the sentence.

Why, I told you so! or *Didn't I tell you so!*
Das ſagt' ich Ihnen ja!
Why, it's nonsense! or *It's nonsense, I tell you!*
Es iſt ja Unſinn!—Wildenbruch.

Exercises.

201. (*a*) 1. What is the difference in general between haben and ſein as auxiliaries? 2. Illustrate by two sentences for each and explain. 3. Give two sentences illustrating the use of haben and ſein with the same verb. 4. When are ohne and anſtatt followed by a phrase, and when by a clause?

(*b*) 1. Make a table showing the different ways in which German may translate an English verbal in *-ing*. 2. Illustrate with a German sentence each way shown in your table.

3. What are the commonest cases where an English infinitive is translated by a German clause? 4. Illustrate.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Vergeſſen Sie ja nicht, daß wir eine lange Reiſe machen! 2. Ich ſage Ihnen ja, das Buch iſt nicht ſchwer. 3. Der Lehrer fand ihn flüſtern und befahl ihm aufzuhören. 4. Der Schüler hörte auf zu flüſtern. 5. Es hat nur ungefähr eine halbe Stunde gedauert. 6. Wir ſind ja noch lange nicht fertig.

202. (*a*) 1. Please stand up and begin translating. 2. When you have stopped reading, please remain seated (sitting). 3. Work hard, and instead of its taking about half a day, you can be ready in two hours. 4. His little boy was only four years old; he was the only child. 5. We are in a hurry (haben Eile); we ordered (§ 128, 1) about twenty minutes ago and we take the next train. 6. In ordering, you should ask how long it will take.

(*b*) 1. It takes about an hour before everything is ready. 2. Seeing the two men following the lady, I was about to speak to (anreden) them. 3. Finding half the class whispering, the teacher ordered them to stop. 4. It took about half a minute before they all stopped whispering. 5. Why, I tell you, his only child is about fifteen years old. 6. The teacher will soon begin taking you for a dunce if you don't stop making mistakes all the time.

(*c*) 1. That is much too little; it is only about half as big as I wished. 2. I ordered him to be ready to take the train at ten o'clock. 3. Instead of his being ready, it took about half an hour before he came. 4. Going walking yesterday evening, we heard a nightingale singing. 5. Coming home late, the man found his only child playing before the fire. 6. The teacher told us to take pains and translate half a page without anybody's helping us.

CHAPTER XXV.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Friedrich der Große und die Windmühle.

203. Neben dem Schlosse Friedrichs des Großen zu Potsdam stand eine Windmühle, von welcher die folgende Geschichte erzählt wird. Der Besitzer der Mühle wollte sie nicht verkaufen. Der König, der sie gern kaufen wollte, ließ den Müller kommen, und sagte: „Was soll denn das? Wenn du mir die Mühle, die dort oben steht, nicht verkaufst, so werde ich sie dir einfach nehmen."

„Wenn Sie das tun," antwortete der Müller, „so wende ich mich an das Berliner Gericht. Wer schlecht behandelt wird, kann dort immer Gerechtigkeit finden." Diese Antwort gefiel dem König so sehr, daß er dem Müller seine Windmühle ließ. Und neben dem Schlosse in Potsdam ist sie noch heute zu sehen.

Syntax.

204. The Passive Voice. — German uses the passive voice in several ways not common in English. The passive auxiliary is **werden**, not **sein**, and the agent is usually introduced by **von**, *by*.

(1) The *personal passive* corresponds to the English.

I was hit by a ball. **Ich wurde von einem Balle getroffen.**

Do you know the place where the treasure of the house was concealed by your husband? **Kennst du den Ort, an dem der Schatz des Hauses von deinem Gatten einst verborgen ward?** — Sudermann.

Note. — Germans are very fond of using man with the active where English often has the passive. This is especially true of verbs that take the dative.

35. THE FAMOUS WINDMILL AT POTSDAM.

I was told. Man ſagte mir.
She was helped. Man half ihr.
It's true she was called only little Mariette.
Man nannte ſie zwar nur die kleine Mariette. — Zſchokke.

(2) The *impersonal passive* is very common in German. It cannot be translated literally into English, but must be rendered like man with the active. Es is omitted in the inverted or transposed order.

There's a dance to-night.
Es wird heute abend getanzt, or **Heute abend wird getanzt.**
What time do you dine? **Um wieviel Uhr wird zu Mittag gegeſſen?**
They were playing out there.
Es wurde da draußen geſpielt, or **Da draußen wurde geſpielt.**
An answer is requested (*r.s.v.p.*, répondez s'il vous plaît).
Um Antwort wird gebeten (U.A.w.g.).
You can't have anything charged (*chalked up*) *here.*
Angekreidet wird hier nicht. — Baumbach.

Note. — The English passive infinitive after *to be* is translated into German by the active.

This house is for sale (*to be sold*). **Dies Haus iſt zu verkaufen.**
She was nowhere to be seen. **Sie war nirgends zu ſehen.**
They looked everywhere; the belt was not to be found.
Überall wurde geſucht; das Koppel war nicht aufzufinden.
— Wildenbruch.

Notes.

205. *Historical Note.* — Frederick the Great (reigned 1740–1786) is the most popular of all the Prussian kings. As a youth he was abused by his crusty old father, who had no sympathy with the poetic, musical boy. As king, Frederick not only developed the army and won battles, but patronized music and literature as well. In the later years of his life, after his wars were over, he was affectionately called „Der alte Fritz," a name which still clings to him throughout Germany. He traveled over Prussia, helping trade and industry and seeing that justice was carried out in the courts he had established. He called himself the first servant of the state and is said to have remarked in regard to the courts: "The rich have the means to defend themselves; the poor have only me." Such was „der große König," who did more for Prussia than any of his predecessors.

206. English *to be* is variously rendered in German owing to German's being more exact than English. The commonest German renderings of *to be* are (1) in cases of *feeling* and *health*, and (2) in indicating *place where*.

(1) When *to be* applies to *health* German uses **ſich befinden** or **es geht** with the dative. To say *I am cold*, meaning *I feel cold*, German uses **es iſt** with the dative: Es iſt mir kalt. Never say, Ich bin kalt. In the transposed or inverted order es is omitted in this latter construction, but not in the expression es geht.

I am very well. **Mir geht's ſehr gut. Ich befinde mich ſehr wohl.**
He is (feels) cold; are you warm? **Ihm iſt kalt; iſt Ihnen warm?**
How is her ladyship? **Wie geht es dem Fräulein?** — Freytag.
So Agathon was happy beyond all his hopes.
Agathon befand ſich alſo über alle ſeine Hoffnung glücklich.
— Wieland.

(2) In indicating *position* (*place where*) German is much more exact than English. Wherever in English a form of *to be* is used to denote position, and could be replaced by a more specific word, it is always best to use the specific word in German.

The lamp is on the table. **Die Lampe ſteht auf dem Tiſche.**
His residence was in the suburbs.
Seine Wohnung lag in der Vorſtadt. — Wildenbruch.
There was nothing bad in the letter.
Es ſtand nichts Schlechtes in dem Brief. — Thoma.

Note. — Two other common translations of *to be* are angehen with the accusative, and koſten.

How much is that? Wieviel koſtet das?
What are my eyes to you?
Was gehen dich meine Augen an? — Storm.

207. English *it*, when translated into German, must take the gender of the noun to which it refers.

My watch is fast; I must set it.
Meine Uhr geht vor; ich muß sie stellen.
So she awaited the evening. It came, but Mirtl did not.
So erwartete sie den Abend. Er kam, aber Mirtl kam nicht.
—Rosegger.

Note. — When a German neuter noun naming a person is referred to by a pronoun, the pronoun is usually neuter, though the logical gender often prevails. Note below welches (*neuter*, to agree with das Fräulein) ihren (*her*, to agree with the logical gender).

What a pretty girl! Did you notice her?
Welch hübsches Mädchen! Haben Sie es bemerkt?
Are you the lady who sent her secretary to me?
Sind Sie das Fräulein, welches ihren Schreiber zu mir geschickt hat?
—Freytag.

208. English *who* is both relative and interrogative. As a relative it is translated in German by **der** or **welcher**; as an interrogative by **wer**. The indefinite compound relative (*he*) *who* is also **wer**. German never omits the relative.

Who is that? **Wer ist denn das?**
That is the gentleman who lives next door.
Das ist der Herr, der (or **welcher**, never **wer**) **nebenan wohnt.**
He that hath ears to hear, let him hear.
Wer Ohren hat, zu hören, der höre!—Bibel, Matt. 11, 15.

209. English *which* corresponds exactly to German **welch** in being both relative and interrogative. But the English relative *which* may also be rendered in German by the relative **der**, as well as by **welcher**. German never omits the relative.

Which man is that? **Welcher Mann ist das?**
Is this the book (which) you wanted?
Ist dies das Buch, das (or **welches**) **Sie wünschten?**
There are crimes over which no grass will grow.
Es gibt Untaten, über welche kein Gras wächst. — Hebbel.

210. English *what* is usually German **was**, both for the interrogative and the indefinite compound relative (*what*,

36. FREDERICK'S PALACE AT POTSDAM.

that which). But when *what* modifies a noun, German must use **welch**. *What kind of* is **was für (ein)**.

What's the matter? **Was iſt denn los?**
What books are these? **Welche Bücher ſind das?** (§ 211, 3, *b*, Note.)
What kind of books are these? **Was für Bücher ſind das?**
Man is what he eats. **Der Menſch iſt, was er ißt.** — Feuerbach.

211. English *that* is either a conjunction or a pronoun, relative or demonstrative.

(1) As a conjunction, *that* is always German daß (with ß), and is followed by the transposed order.

I tell you that it isn't true. **Ich ſage dir, daß es nicht wahr iſt.**
That you have the rose, you notice only by the thorn.
Daß du die Roſe haſt, das merkſt du nur am Dorn. — Rückert.

(2) As a relative, *that* is the German relative der (or welcher). German never omits the relative.

That isn't the book (that) I ordered.
Das ist nicht das Buch, das (or **welches**) **ich bestellt habe.**
He had taken to the city fish that that gentlewoman had ordered.
Er hatte Fische in die Stadt gebracht, die jene vornehme Dame bestellt hatte. — Heyse.

Note. — When referring to neuters like alles, nichts, etwas, and so on, the relative *that* or *which* is was.

That is all that I have. Das ist alles, was ich habe.
You are right; stick to that which is natural and that one can take hold of. Du hast recht; halte dich an das, was natürlich ist und was man greifen kann. — Hillern.

(3) As a demonstrative, *that* (*those*) is the German demonstrative der or jener.

(*a*) Der is also often used for the personal pronoun *he, she, it.*

There is the man that did it.
Da ist der Mann, der (relative) **es getan hat.**
There is the man; he (that one) did it.
Da ist der Mann; der (demonstrative) **hat es getan.**
Let that one never be chosen by you, that has never been his own friend. **Der** (demon.) **werde nie von dir erlesen, der** (rel.) **nie sein eigener Freund gewesen.** — Lessing.

(*b*) When *that* points a contrast with *this* or indicates something *definitely remote*, German uses jener.

This book is easy, that one hard.
Dies Buch ist leicht, jenes schwer.
Who will bring back the beautiful days, those days of first love?
Wer bringt die schönen Tage, jene Tage der ersten Liebe, zurück?
— Goethe.

Note. — With sein, das is used indeclinably, referring to either singular or plural nouns.

What men are those? Welche Männer sind denn das?
Those are heaven's terrible judgments.
Das sind des Himmels furchtbare Gerichte. — Schiller.

Exercises.

212. (*a*) 1. Make a table, with illustrations, of all the uses of der, die, das. 2. Of all the equivalents for English *that;* for *which.* 3. Write sentences illustrating the use of the German for our English indefinite compound relative (*who, he who; what, that which*).

(*b*) 1. Explain all the das's in Das iſt das Buch, das ich las, and Das iſt das Buch; das las ich. 2. What word order follows the relatives? Give examples. 3. Translate: *Those are the books I lost,* and *Those were the only ones he had.* 4. Contrast the German and English uses of the passive.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Wie geht es Ihnen? Sehr gut; ich befinde mich ſehr wohl. 2. Was geht das Sie an? 3. Wieviel koſtet der Hut? Er iſt zu klein. 4. Iſt Ihnen kalt? Mir iſt furchtbar warm. 5. Geſtern abend wurde geſungen und geſpielt. 6. Das ſind die Klaſſen, wo am fleißigſten gelernt wird.

213. (*a*) 1. He asked her how she was, and she replied: What's that to you? 2. Those sentences were written by that little boy. 3. Those are the girls who believe everything I tell them. 4. I do not know who wrote this sentence, but I know a pupil who can correct it. 5. It is said that those are the largest birds that have ever been caught alive. 6. I was told that those were the rooms where they danced (§ 204, 2).

(*b*) 1. I do not know whether those are my books; what is it to you? 2. How much is that picture which is on the wall, and this one which is on the table? 3. What is the matter? Are you cold? 4. He said that those were the best translations that had been made by this class. 5. When do you sup, and do you ever dance (§ 204, 2) after

supper? 6. They looked for my hat everywhere, but it was nowhere to be found.

(c) *Frederick the Great.* — 1. Frederick the Great lived mostly in Potsdam, a city which is on the Havel, west of Berlin. 2. There was built for him there a beautiful castle, which was called "Sans Souci," by the king. 3. Frederick was often to be seen in Potsdam, when he went walking with his dogs. 4. He was so simple and friendly that he was called "the old Fritz" by the people. 5. Those were the qualities that made him popular among the Germans. 6. When he died, his death was lamented by all Germany.

CHAPTER XXVI.

ADJECTIVES.

Friedrich der Große und Washington.

214. Friedrich der Große bewunderte George Washington sehr. Seiner Meinung nach stand Washington an der Spitze aller Generäle seines Zeitalters. Je mehr Friedrich von Washington hörte, desto höher stellte er ihn. Aber die Engländer konnte er überhaupt nicht leiden, denn als Bundesgenossen hatten sie ihn einmal im Stich gelassen und in die größte Verlegenheit gebracht.

Deshalb interessierte er sich besonders für den Krieg zwischen den Amerikanern und den Engländern. Ihm erschienen Washingtons Kämpfe bei Trenton von der größten Bedeutung, und er nannte sie „den glänzendsten Feldzug des Jahrhunderts." Als Washington die Engländer schlug, hat Friedrich seine Kriegskunst aufs höchste gelobt und später hat er Washington ein Schwert geschenkt, das die Inschrift trug: „Der älteste General dem besten."

Syntax.

215. The Use of Adjectives. — German adjectives differ from English in their (1) *inflection*, (2) *capitalization*, (3) *comparison*, and (4) *use*.

216. *Predicate adjectives* are uninflected. As *modifiers*, adjectives take a weak ending when preceded by an *inflected form* of a „der" word or of an „ein" word. When not so preceded they take a strong ending.

The spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak.
Der Geiſt iſt willig, aber das Fleiſch iſt ſchwach.
—Bibel, Matt. 26, 41.

A noble man attracts noble men.
Ein edler Menſch zieht edle Menſchen an. —Goethe.

Shared joy is doubled joy, shared sorrow is halved sorrow.
Geteilte Freude iſt doppelte Freude, geteilter Schmerz iſt halber Schmerz. —Tiedge.

217. German *adjectives are written with a capital* when they are used as nouns. After **etwas** and **nichts** adjectives are also written with a capital, except **anderes**, *else*. But in cases where English would use *one* after the adjective — *the new one, a good one* — German uses simply an adjective written with a small letter.

This is the best one. **Dies iſt das beſte.**
I hear nothing good of him. **Ich höre nichts Gutes von ihm.**
The new in it isn't good and the good isn't new.
Das Neue daran iſt nicht gut, und das Gute daran iſt nicht neu.
—Voß.

He maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust.
Er läßt ſeine Sonne aufgehen über die Böſen und über die Guten, und läßt regnen über Gerechte und Ungerechte. —Bibel, Matt. 5, 45.

218. German *comparatives and superlatives* correspond to English, except the adverbial superlative with **am**, the absolute superlative with **auf**, and the comparison of long words.

(1) German adjectives may be used as adverbs except in the superlative, where the adverb has the form am — en; am beſten, am liebſten. This adverbial form is used for a predicate adjective, singular or plural.

The strong man is mightiest alone.
Der Starke iſt am mächtigſten allein. —Schiller.

37. STATUE OF FREDERICK THE GREAT IN BERLIN.

It is noble to distress no one, nobler always to practise charity, but noblest to love even enemies.

Edel iſt's, niemand betrüben, edler iſt's, im Wohltun ſtets ſich üben, doch am edelſten, auch Feinde lieben. — Herder.

And the oldest one, whom he had always loved most, hung on his lips. **Und der älteſte, den er immer am meiſten geliebt, hing an ſeinen Lippen.** — Goethe.

(2) The absolute superlative aufs — -e, aufs beſte, aufs höchſte, is always adverbial and means *in the -est possible way*.

He gave you the highest possible praise. **Er lobte Sie aufs höchſte.**
They leaped about and caroused and sang their very best.
Sie ſprangen frei und hielten Schmaus, und ſangen auf das beſte.
— Uhland.

(3) Long words are regularly compared in German. Never use mehr and meiſt to form the comparative and superlative. Mehr is used only for *rather* when two adjectives are being compared with each other; meiſt for *mostly* in the sense of *usually*.

She has the most wonderful voice!
Sie hat die wundervollſte Stimme!
He could easily take me for more (rather) vain than virtuous.
Er konnte mich leicht für mehr eitel als tugendhaft halten.
— Leſſing.

219. The principal cases where the *use of German adjectives* differs from English are with personal pronouns, and in a few special expressions.

(1) The use (usually substantive) of an *adjective after a personal pronoun* is much commoner in German than in English. German usage is far from uniform, but an adjective following a personal pronoun is generally strong in the nominative singular and accusative plural, weak in the other cases.

You lucky dog! **Sie Glücklicher!** (*man*), **Glückliche!** (*woman*).
Woe to me most wretched! **Wehe mir Ärmſten!**
I see you both. **Ich ſehe Sie beide.**
We Germans fear God, nothing else in the world.
Wir Deutſchen fürchten Gott, ſonſt nichts in der Welt. — Bismarck.

(2) There are several cases where an English adjective must be rendered in German by a *paraphrase*. The commonest of these is the case of ſpät, which is rarely used with ſein except when es is the subject.

It is late. **Es iſt ſpät.**
He is late. **Er kommt ſpät.**
The train is twenty minutes late.
Der Zug hat zwanzig Minuten Verſpätung, or **iſt um zwanzig Minuten verſpätet.**
Your watch is fast (*slow*). **Ihre Uhr geht vor** (**nach**).
You'll be too late. **Du kommſt zu ſpät.** — Storm.

Notes.

220. *Historical Note.* — Frederick the Great was the greatest military genius of his age. He won Silesia (Schleſien) from Austria, thus carrying forward the expansion of Prussia, which his great-grandfather, the Great Elector, had begun by annexing Pomerania (Pommern). Austria tried to avenge herself and, in the Seven Years' War (1756–1763), — the French and Indian War in America, — Russia, Sweden, and France all joined Austria against Prussia. But Frederick's genius saved the country in spite of the desertion of his one ally, England, and in 1772 he was strong enough to annex part of Poland. Great as Frederick was in war, he was, like the Great Elector, greater in peace. See §§ 188, 192, and 205.

221. English *to stand* has two common German renderings.

(1) Literally it is ſtehen (ſtand, geſtanden, aux. haben).

How long did you stand there? **Wie lange haſt du da geſtanden?**
They now stood right under the window.
Sie ſtanden jetzt gerade unter dem Fenſter. — Wildenbruch.

(2) For *to stand, endure, suffer,* German uses leiden (litt, gelitten, aux. haben).

I can't stand him. **Ich kann ihn nicht leiden.**
The professor couldn't stand me.
Der Professor konnte mich nicht leiden. — Thoma.

222. English *to put* has various German equivalents, usually more specific than the English. Compare *to be,* § 206.

(1) *To put in an upright position* is German stellen (reg., aux. haben). Use it whenever English could use *stand* in an active sense.

He put (stood) the pitcher on the floor.
Er stellte den Krug auf den Boden.
Put the light on the table.
Stellen Sie das Licht auf den Tisch. — Storm.

Note. — Stellen is used for *to put* questions (Fragen stellen, see § 15, 2, *b*, Note *b*) and also for *to set* clocks or watches.

(2) *To put in a reclining position* is legen (reg., aux. haben). Use it whenever English could use *lay, laid, laid* for *to put.*

Put the book on the desk. **Legen Sie das Buch auf das Pult.**
Put every man's money in his sack's mouth.
Lege jeglichem sein Geld oben in seinen Sack.
— Bibel, 1 Mose 44, 1.

(3) Less definite than stellen and legen is setzen (reg., aux. haben). Use it whenever English could substitute *to set* for *to put.*

He put his grip behind the door.
Er setzte seine Reisetasche hinter die Tür.
Let us put Germany in the saddle, so to speak.
Setzen wir Deutschland, so zu sagen, in den Sattel. — Bismarck.

(4) German uses stecken (reg., aux. haben) for *to put* (compare *to stick*) when the object of the verb is to be concealed

in or surrounded by the object of the preposition. Do not confuse ſtecken with ſtechen, *to prick, to sting.*

Put the sword in the sheath.
Stecken Sie das Schwert in die Scheide.
Hans put the key in his pocket.
Hans ſteckte den Schlüſſel in die Taſche. — Hillern.

(5) German uses tun (tat, getan, aux. haben) in a loose sense for many uses of *to put*, especially with liquids.

Please put in some more milk.
Bitte, tun Sie noch etwas Milch hinein!
So put it (the bud) in a glass of water.
So tu' es in ein Waſſerglas. — Feuchtersleben.

223. English *the* is not always the definite article **der, die, das.** With comparatives — *the more, the merrier* — the first *the* is German je, the second deſto.

The farther we went, the hotter it got.
Je weiter wir gingen, deſto heißer wurde es.
The more the body is hidden, the more the soul is disclosed.
Je mehr der Körper verhüllt (iſt), deſto mehr enthüllt ſich die Seele. — Richter.

Exercises.

224. (*a*) 1. Make an outline table, showing the uses of adjectives treated in this chapter. 2. Illustrate each use by a German sentence. 3. Translate, *He put it on the table*, in as many ways as you can. 4. Explain in what position the object represented by es will be in each case.

(*b*) 1. Classify according to your outline table the uses of adjectives in the last illustration in § 4, § 9, § 16, 1, § 23, 1, § 29, 2, § 30, 1, Note, § 41, 1. 2. Also in § 85, 2, Note, § 100, 4, Note, § 110, 1, § 111, 1, § 112, § 113, 1, § 119, 3. 3. Also in § 120, 3, § 173, 1 and 2, § 211, 3, *b*. 4. Memorize the last illustrations in § 216 and § 217.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Ich kann die Knaben nicht leiden, die die Hände immer in die Hosentaschen stecken. 2. Sie Ärmster, Sie kommen zu spät. 3. Ich habe nichts Falsches (*wrong*) im Satze gesehen. 4. Je länger wir arbeiten, desto besser werden unsere Aufgaben. 5. Stellen Sie die Blumen in eine Vase, setzen Sie die Vase auf den Tisch, und tun Sie etwas Wasser hinein! 6. Das Mädchen übersetzt am besten, obwohl sein Bruder aufs fleißigste arbeitet.

225. (*a*) 1. The good do not always live the longest. 2. I can't stand that man; he always puts (§ 222, 3) his hat on (auf), before he leaves the house. 3. The longer we wait for him, the later we shall be. 4. Please put the little table where it will stand most firmly. 5. The teacher asked the boy to put on the table the letter which he had just put in his pocket. 6. This is the most beautiful place I ever saw; there can't be anything more wonderful.

(*b*) 1. Hard work makes good pupils, or in other words, the harder one works, the better one learns. 2. We can't stand the coffee when they put hot milk in it. 3. He stood there as if he didn't understand, although the teacher spoke most distinctly (§ 218, 2). 4. Please put your cane in the corner and [put] your things on this chair. 5. The man put his satchel on the floor, opened it most carefully, took out something black, and put it in his pocket. 6. You poor thing (*write for both boy and girl*), you are late, and the best seats are already occupied.

(*c*) *The Great King.* — 1. Frederick the Great stands at the head (Spitze) of Prussian rulers, the greatest Hohenzollern. 2. In his youth he had to stand all kinds of severity from his father. 3. But as king he showed

himself the most extraordinary general of his age. 4. He was always doing something good for his people (Volk). 5. And of course (natürlich) the harder he worked for them, the more they honored and loved him. 6. In [the year] 1912 the whole German people celebrated with great enthusiasm the two hundredth birthday of the "Great King."

CHAPTER XXVII.

USE OF TENSES.

Goethe und Schiller.

226. Es kommt nur selten vor, daß die beiden größten Dichter eines Landes so gut miteinander übereinstimmen wie Goethe und Schiller es taten. Die Freundschaft zwischen den beiden begann, nachdem Schiller schon einige Zeit in Jena gelebt hatte. Elf Jahre lang (1794–1805) haben sie alles, was sie schrieben, zusammen besprochen. Wenn dem einen ein guter Gedanke einfiel, so teilte er ihn dem andern mit.

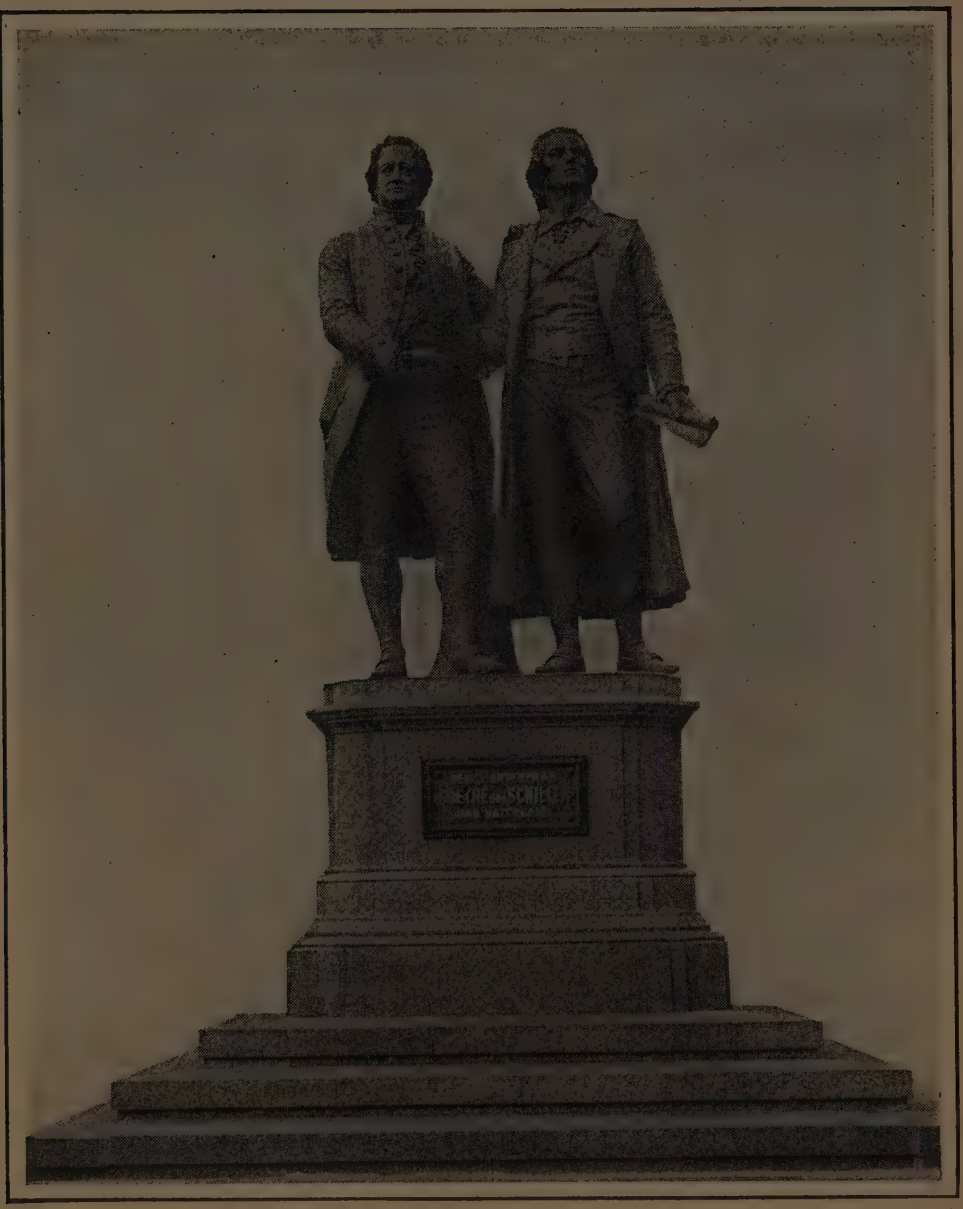
So setzten sie eine Freundschaft fort, in der man keine Eifersucht bemerkt. Einmal hat man Goethe gefragt, ob er nicht zugebe, daß er größer sei als Schiller. „Nun," antwortete er, „anstatt zu fragen, wer der größte ist, sollte man Gott danken, daß es zwei so große Dichter gibt."

Syntax.

227. The Use of Tenses. — In general the use of tenses in German corresponds to that in English. But there are several exceptions.

(1) German has *no progressive or emphatic forms*. These are rendered by simple tenses. Never use a form of tun for the English emphatic *do* in *do come* and so on. See § 178, Note *b*.

Do you like tea? **Trinken Sie gern Tee?**
Yes, I do. **Ja, ich trinke ihn gern.**
He doesn't see the rocky reefs.
Er schaut nicht die Felsenriffe. — Heine.



38. THE STATUE TO GOETHE AND SCHILLER AT WEIMAR. — Note the inscription.

228. The *German present* is used not only for the simple English present and for the progressive and emphatic forms of the English present, but also for the English future and with ſchon for the English perfect.

(1) When the *English future* is used with an adverbial expression referring to the future, it is rendered in German by the present. German considers the adverb sufficient to indicate the tense. When the adverbial expression is omitted, the future is used. Avoid ſollen and wollen as future auxiliaries, except in the question *shall we?* wollen wir? See § 69, 3.

I shall go to town. **Ich werde in die Stadt gehen.**
This afternoon I shall go to town.
Heute nachmittag gehe ich in die Stadt.
He will do that. **Er wird das tun.**
He will do that to-morrow. **Das tut er morgen.**
Only wait, soon thou too shalt rest.
Warte nur, balde ruheſt du auch. — Goethe.

(2) The *English perfect* has two distinct meanings. When we say, *I have been there*, the verbal action is ended. But when we say, *I have been here two hours*, the verbal action is still going on. For this English perfect denoting past verbal action continuing into the present, German uses the present with ſchon.

How long have you studied German?
Wie lange lernen (treiben) Sie ſchon Deutſch?
He has been sick a long time. **Er iſt ſchon lange krank.**
For many days I have noticed it in silence.
Schon viele Tage ſeh' ich's ſchweigend an. — Schiller.

Note. — Similarly for the *English pluperfect* denoting verbal action continuing into the past, German uses the past with ſchon.

How long had you studied German?
Wie lange lernten (trieben) Sie ſchon Deutſch?
Hans Liefrink had been in the church since daybreak.
Hans Liefrink war ſchon ſeit Tagesanbruch in der Kirche. — Hillern.

229. For the *English past* (imperfect, preterit), German uses the past or the perfect.

(1) The *German past* (imperfect) is the tense for *connected narrative*. It is the regular tense for all novels, stories, and histories.

Once upon a time there was a man. **Es war einmal ein Mann.**
I came, saw, and conquered. **Ich kam, sah, und siegte.**
She stopped and trembled in every limb with fright.
Sie blieb stehen und zitterte vor Schreck an allen Gliedern.
— Zschokke.

(2) The *German perfect* is the tense for *stating facts* or reporting particular, unconnected events. Usually where in English a form of the verb with *did* is or can be used, German uses the perfect.

This morning I bought two books.
Heute morgen habe ich zwei Bücher gekauft.
Did you see the airship? **Haben Sie das Luftschiff gesehen?**
Whom did you drink to last?
Wem habt Ihr zuletzt zugetrunken? — Gerstäcker.

Note. — (*a*) As soon as an isolated fact or event becomes connected with other events so as to make a narrative, German uses the past instead of the perfect. If in the first example above, instead of reporting a particular act, I were to narrate what I did this morning, I should use the past. *This morning I got up early, went to town and bought two books.* Heute morgen stand ich früh auf, ging in die Stadt und kaufte mir zwei Bücher.

(*b*) On the other hand, if in the midst of a narrative in the past tense a particular event is to be emphasized, it is put into the perfect. For example, in the above sentence if I wanted to add with emphasis, *And then I dropped them in the mud*, I should say, Und die habe ich dann in den Schmutz fallen lassen.

Notes.

230. *Historical Note.* — Johann Wolfgang Goethe (1749–1832) was born twenty years after Gotthold Ephraim Lessing (1729–1781) and ten years before Friedrich Christoph Schiller (1759–1805). These three, especially the two friends Goethe and Schiller, are the lions of German literature, the best known, the

most admired, the oftenest quoted. Though German literature reached its highest perfection in Goethe and Schiller, it by no means ended there. The following brief summary is meant only for reference. It contains the names and dates of Germany's leading literary men since the time of Goethe and Schiller, especially those most often quoted in this book.

With the new nineteenth century began the so-called Romantic School in German Literature. Its greatest names are: the brothers August Wilhelm Schlegel (1767–1845) and Friedrich Schlegel (1772–1829), Ludwig Tieck (1773–1853), Heinrich von Kleist (1777–1811), Joseph von Eichendorff (1788–1857), and Heinrich Heine (1797–1856). The poets of the wars of liberation (die Befreiungskriege), Körner (1791–1813), Arndt (1769–1860), and Rückert (1788–1866), were followed by Uhland (1787–1862), Kerner (1786–1862), Hauff (1802–1827), Möricke (1804–1875), Wilhelm Müller (1794–1827), Hoffmann von Fallersleben (1798–1874), Geibel (1815–1884), and Scheffel (1826–1886). Baumbach (1841–1905) is best known in America for his Märchen. Freytag (1816–1895), Heyse (1830–), Keller (1815–1890), and Storm (1817–1888) represent the nineteenth century in Story; Hebbel (1813–1863) and Wildenbruch (1845–1909) in the Drama; Hauptmann (1862–) and Sudermann (1857–), the so-called Naturalistic Movement.

231. English *to occur* is usually **vorkommen** or **einfallen.**

(1) Vorkommen (kam vor, vorgekommen, aux. ſein) is used in the sense of *to happen.*

That often occurs. **Das kommt häufig vor.**
It wouldn't have occurred again.
Es wäre nicht wieder vorgekommen. — Liliencron.

(2) Einfallen (fiel ein, eingefallen, aux. ſein) is used with the dative for *to occur to some one.* See § 41, 1, Note.

It occurred to him that he ought to go.
Es iſt ihm eingefallen, daß er gehen ſollte.
It all only occurred to me on the way.
Es fiel mir alles erſt unterwegs ein. — Heyſe.

39. GOETHE'S "GARDEN HOUSE" AT WEIMAR. — Here the poet often withdrew from his city house, to work in quiet surroundings.

232. English *to agree* has two German equivalents.

(1) To agree *with somebody* is übereinſtimmen (reg. sep., aux. haben), mit.

I agree with you perfectly.
Ich ſtimme mit Ihnen vollkommen überein.
Their witness (testimony) agreed not together.
Ihr Zeugnis ſtimmte nicht überein. — Bibel, Marcus 14, 56.

(2) To agree *to something* in the sense of *admit* is zugeben (gab zu, zugegeben, aux. haben) with a direct object.

Yes, I agree to that (admit it). **Ja, das gebe ich zu.**
I agree that you are a better newspaper man.
Ich gebe zu, daß Sie ein beſſerer Journaliſt ſind. — Freytag.

233. English *to continue* has two common German renderings.

(1) When used intransitively or with an infinitive, *to continue* is fortfahren (fuhr fort, fortgefahren, aux. haben). See § 180, 2.

She continued to cry. **Sie fuhr fort zu weinen.**
"Now that was noteworthy," he continued.
„Nun war das merkwürdig," fuhr er fort. — Wildenbruch.

(2) When used with an object, *to continue* is usually fortsetzen (reg. sep., aux. haben).

He continued his work. **Er setzte seine Arbeit fort.**
The ship continues on its way with oars.
Das Schiff setzt seinen Weg mit Rudern fort. — Wieland.

234. English *well* has three common German renderings.

(1) As an adverb modifying a verb, *well* is gut.

You did that well. **Das haben Sie gut gemacht.**
That was well given. **Das war gut gegeben.** — Freytag.

(2) As an adverbial interjection, *well* is nun. It comes first in the sentence and is set off by a comma.

Well, what's up? **Nun, was gibt's?**
So! Well, good-by, Mr. Landlord!
Ja so! Nun, adieu, Herr Wirt! — Lessing.

Note. — When not set off by a comma, nun means *now*, the same as jetzt.

Now everything must change.
Nun muß sich alles, alles wenden. — Uhland.

(3) As predicate adjective referring to health, *well* is German wohl. See § 88, Note, and § 206, 1.

Now I am well again. **Jetzt bin ich (ist mir) wieder wohl.**
But are you well, father?
Aber ist Euch auch wohl, Vater? — Schiller.

Exercises.

235. (*a*) 1. Make an outline table showing the cases where the use of tenses in German differs from the English use. 2. Illustrate each use in your table by a sentence. 3. What is the difference between Ich treibe ſchon zwei Jahre Deutſch, and Ich habe ſchon zwei Jahre Deutſch getrieben.

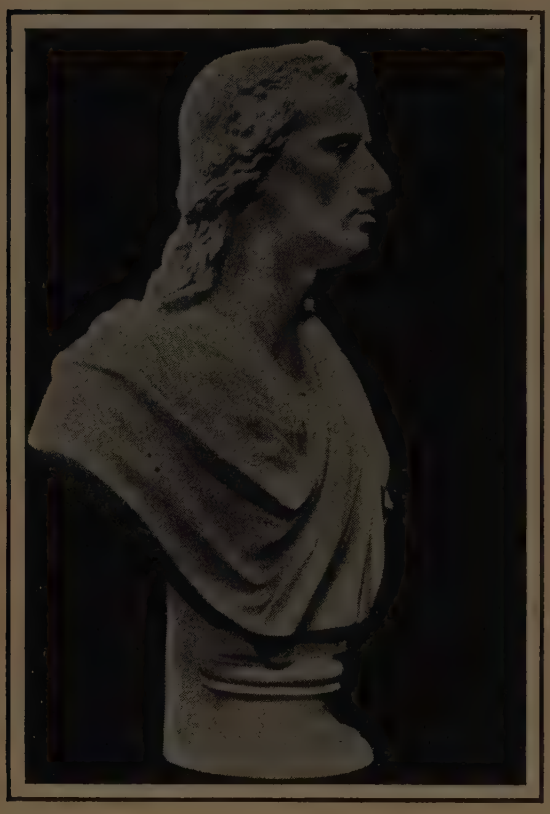
(*b*) 1. Classify according to your table the use of tenses in the last examples in § 5, § 6, 1, § 15, 1, *a*, § 29, 3, § 62, § 68, 1, § 73, 2, § 98, 2. 2. Also in the last examples in § 111, 2, § 147, 3, § 157, 3, § 167, 2, § 185, 1, *b*. 3. Find in § 231, 2 an example of § 185, 1, *b*.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Wie lange treiben Sie ſchon Deutſch? 2. Das gebe ich zu, aber es iſt mir noch nie eingefallen. 3. Nun, fahren Sie fort! Das war ſehr gut überſetzt. 4. Es fiel mir nicht ein, daß das hier vorkommen könnte. 5. Wir ſind ſchon lange hier, und es gefällt uns ſehr gut, aber morgen müſſen wir unſere Reiſe fortſetzen. 6. Nun, geben Sie zu, daß das nicht vorkommen ſollte?

236. (*a*) 1. Well, how are you to-day? Did you continue to sleep well? 2. No, I must agree that I'm not very well, though I have been at home three weeks. 3. We don't agree with you that you should continue your work here. 4. It did not occur to him to agree, so they continued quarreling. 5. How long have you been in Germany, and how do you like it? 6. We have been here two months, and we agree with you that it is a beautiful country.

(*b*) 1. We shall continue our work to-morrow as if nothing disagreeable had occurred. 2. It only (§ 185, 1, *b*)

occurred to me yesterday how long I have been here. 3. If you agree with us that we have been here long enough, we shall continue our journey day after to-morrow. 4. Well, you read that page so well, please continue reading. 5. Yes, I agree that it often occurs that he is too late. 6. Well, I have studied German for twenty years; when do you think I shall know it?



40. SCHILLER. — The bust by Daneker in the Library at Weimar.

(*c*) *The German Classics.* — 1. It does not often occur that a people knows its classics as well as the Germans. 2. On the German stage, as in the German schools, we constantly hear the works of Goethe and Schiller. 3. It never occurs to the Germans to bring up their children without teaching them the classics. 4. Even if we do not agree with the Germans, we must agree that they have very good schools. 5. That has been for years a well-known fact. 6. And Germany will continue to have good schools as long as it continues this work.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

REVIEW.

Doch.

237. The particle **doch**, besides its regular adversative meaning of *after all, yet,* has other uses. But in all of them there is an adversative idea.

(1) In giving an affirmative answer to a negative question or statement, German uses doch for *yes,* instead of ja. It contains a suggestion of contradiction, *Oh, yes, but —.*

Can't you see? — Oh, yes, I can. **Können Sie nicht ſehen? — Doch.**
I don't think he'll come. — Oh, yes, he will.
Ich glaube nicht, daß er kommt. — Doch.
You wouldn't have recognized your father again, would you? — Oh, yes, I would. **Du hätteſt deinen Vater nicht wieder erkannt? — Doch.**
— Schiller.

(2) Doch may be used to add emphasis to a sentence. It is then unaccented, and may be translated in many ways.

Do come in! **Kommen Sie doch herein!**
Well, it's fine that you are coming!
Das iſt doch nett, daß Sie kommen.
Do calm yourself. **Beruhige dich doch!** — Wildenbruch.

Note. — The English repetition of the auxiliary — *isn't it? don't they? has he?* and so on — is rendered in German by nicht or nicht wahr for the negative, by doch for the affirmative.

It's warm, isn't it? Es iſt warm, nicht? (or nicht wahr?)
It isn't warm, is it? Es iſt doch nicht warm?
You aren't going to start out again to-day, are you?
Sie werden heute doch nicht wieder aufbrechen? — Leſſing.

Exercises.

238. (*a*) 1. Explain and illustrate with sentences the chief differences between the use of the passive in German and English. 2. Explain, with examples, the uses of the German equivalents for *that, well, who, to put, which.* 3. In what respects does the use of adjectives in German differ from English use? Illustrate with sentences.

(*b*) 1. What is the difference between aufs beſte and am beſten? 2. What English tenses may be represented by the German present? 3. Illustrate each use with a sentence. 4. Explain fully, with illustrations, the difference between the use of the German past (imperfect, preterit) and perfect tenses.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Das hat er wohl noch nicht überſetzt. — Doch. 2. Sie wollen doch nicht zugeben, daß Sie ihn nicht leiden können? 3. Was fällt Ihnen ein (§ 41, 1, Note)? Fahren Sie doch fort zu leſen! 4. Sie Glücklicher! Geſtern abend wurde getanzt, und Sie kamen nicht zu ſpät. 5. Das geht ihn doch nichts an. 6. Stecken Sie es doch in die Taſche; es koſtet wenig, nicht (wahr)?

239. (*a*) 1. They don't agree with each other yet, do they? — Oh, yes. 2. Oh, don't put any sugar in my tea; I can't stand anything (not anything = ?) sweet. 3. After he had put his hat on a chair, it occurred to him that he should leave it outside. 4. You'll be late, and you know there's going to be a dance to-night (§ 204, 2). 5. We like it so well here that we shall not continue our journey till (§ 185, 1, *b*) next week. 6. She continued looking for her hat, but it was nowhere to be found.

(*b*) 1. I asked her how much the watch was, and she told me it was a hundred marks. 2. I asked her to set it, and

said, "I will put it in my pocket." 3. Which watch is the one that you put on the table? 4. You aren't going to town with that man, are you? — Why, yes. 5. They are going to sing this evening (§ 204, 2); I know I shall be late, but my other glove is nowhere to be found. 6. Those are the girls who didn't know the difference between this sentence and that one.

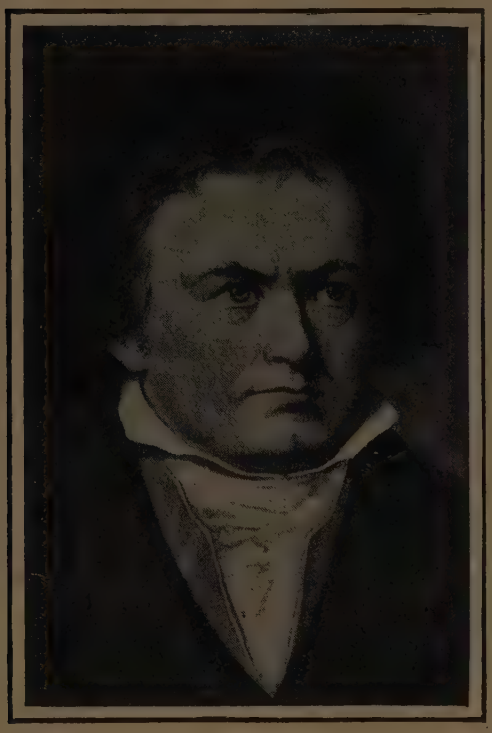
(*c*) 1. When I asked how much the hat was, I was told it was not to be sold. 2. They couldn't agree with each other which suit looked (aussehen) the best. 3. In school they were singing, outside they were playing; nowhere was a quiet place to be found. 4. Well, shall we look at something else? Those are the cheapest things over there. 5. I can't stand this store; I've been standing here since quarter to three; I shall be late home. 6. Well, if it takes so long, why don't you take something expensive and put it in your pocket? Then they'll wait on you!

CHAPTER XXIX.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Beethoven und Goethe.

240. Während Goethe einige Zeit in Wien verbrachte, ging er eines Tages mit Beethoven spazieren. Wir hören von Beethoven selbst, wie einmal die ganze kaiserliche Familie dahergekommen wäre, als die beiden durch den Park gingen. Sogleich, schreibt der Komponist, habe Goethe den Hut abgenommen und sei aus dem Wege gegangen.



41. Ludwig van Beethoven.

Er selbst aber, der die Kaiserlichen Hoheiten schon früher gesehen hätte, habe den Hut bis über die Ohren heruntergezogen, die Hände in die Taschen gesteckt, und sei an den Fürstlichkeiten vorbeigegangen. Da habe ihm Erzherzog Rudolf scherzend den Hut abgenommen. Beethoven wollte Goethe nicht verzeihen, daß er vor den Fürsten zurückgetreten war. „Könige," sagte er, „können Titel und Ehren verleihen, aber große Männer wie uns können sie nicht machen."

Syntax.

241. The German Subjunctive. — In general, the subjunctive is the mode of *possibility* and uncertainty, while the indicative denotes reality and certainty. The German subjunctive may be divided into two chief classes: (1) the *indirect discourse* (or *dependent*) *subjunctive*, and (2) the *unreal* (or *contrary to fact*) *subjunctive*. The latter is treated in the next chapter.

The border line between indicative and subjunctive is often so uncertain that either use is correct. But there is always a difference in *meaning*, which should be thoroughly understood.

242. The *indirect discourse* (or *dependent*) *subjunctive* is used in subordinate clauses after verbs of *telling*, *thinking*, *saying*, and the like. Of course such reported statements cannot be so real or certain as the original; hence the subjunctive.

I thought that I had the right book.
Ich dachte, daß ich das richtige Buch hätte.
Grandmother says you are a wise man.
Großmutter ſagt, du ſeiſt ein weiſer Mann. — Hauptmann.

243. In indirect discourse *English changes the present tense to past*, if the verb of the main clause is past. German *may* do the same, but usually it does not; instead it keeps the tense of the direct discourse. To determine what tense a German would use, ask yourself, "what were the speaker's exact words?"

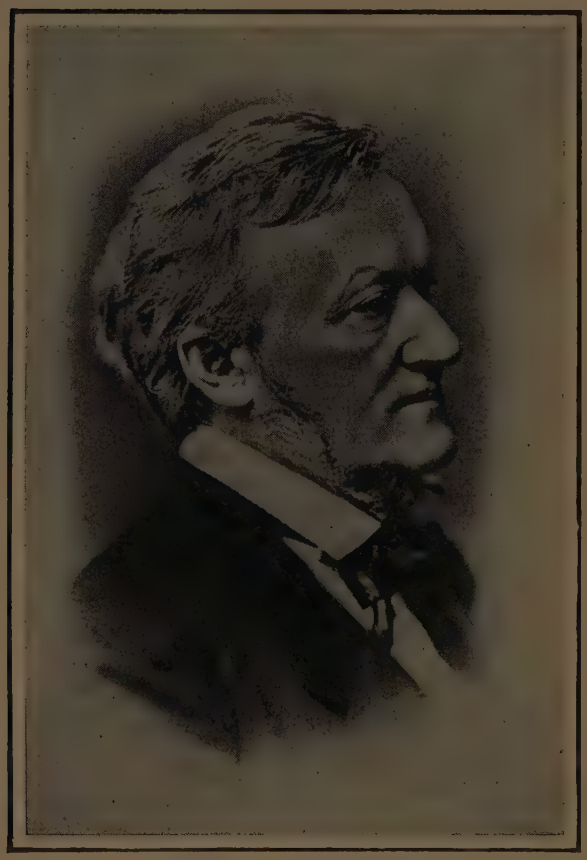
He said, "I am ill." **Er ſagte: „Ich bin krank."**
He said that he was ill. **Er ſagte, daß er krank ſei.**
She said, "I have a new hat."
Sie ſagte: „Ich habe einen neuen Hut."

She said that she had a new hat.
Sie ſagte, daß ſie einen neuen Hut habe.
He asked one of the bystanders if it was the body of his friend.
Er fragte einen der Umſtehenden, ob es der Körper ſeines Freundes ſei. — Schiller.

244. The *indicative is used* when the speaker wishes to emphasize his belief in the truth of what he reports.

He said that he didn't do it. **Er ſagte, daß er es nicht getan hat.**
I told that I was riding on a narrow Alpine path.
Ich erzählte, daß ich auf einem ſchmalen Alpenpfad ritt.
— Bismarck.

Notes.



42. Richard Wagner.

245. *Historical Note.* — Ludwig van Beethoven (1770–1827) marks a turning point in the history of instrumental music. He is best known for his symphonies, though he composed over two hundred songs. During his lifetime he was admired chiefly for his improvisations.

Germany has always been famous for its music. Its best-known composers are Bach (1685–1750), who composed especially for the organ; Händel (1685–1759) and Haydn (1732–1809), famous for their oratorios; Mozart (1756–1791), active in

all fields; von Weber (1786–1826), best known for his operas; Schubert (1797–1828), the most poetic of all musicians, renowned for his songs; Mendelssohn (1809–1847), a romantic creator of symphonies and songs; Schumann (1810–1856), writer of songs, ballads, and symphonies; the famous pianist, Liszt (1811–1886); and last and greatest, Liszt's son-in-law, Richard Wagner (1813–1883), who perfected the music-drama.

246. English *to pass* is variously rendered in German.

(1) In the sense of *to hand to*, it is reichen (reg., aux. haben), not to be confused with riechen, *to smell*.

Will you please pass the bread?
Wollen Sie mir, bitte, das Brot reichen?
Without asking further for permission he passed the glass to him, too. **Ohne weiter um Erlaubnis zu fragen, reichte er auch ihm das Glas.** — Wildenbruch.

(2) As a neuter verb, in speaking of time — as, *the time passes — to pass* is vergehen (verging, vergangen, aux. sein).

The time passes slowly. **Die Zeit vergeht langsam.**
The night has now passed. **Die Nacht ist nun vergangen.** — Arndt.

(3) As an active verb, in speaking of time — as, *he passed the time — to pass* is usually verbringen (verbrachte, verbracht, aux. haben).

How shall we pass the time? **Wie verbringen wir die Zeit?**
He looked for a protecting tree, to pass the night there.
Er suchte einen schützenden Baum, die Nacht dort zu verbringen.
— Gerstäcker.

(4) In the sense of *to go by, to pass* is usually an etwas (dative) vorbeigehen (ging vorbei, vorbeigegangen, aux. sein). Vorbei (vorüber) here means *past*, and is used with different verbs of action, *walk, ride, drive*. English uses *to pass* for all these meanings; German must be more specific and use gehen, reiten, or fahren, according as the subject walks, rides, or drives. Compare § 206, 2 and § 222.

Yesterday we passed your house (*on foot, on horseback, in a carriage*). **Gestern sind wir an Ihrem Hause vorbeigegangen, vorbeigeritten, vorbeigefahren.**

He shook hands with everybody who passed him.
Er schüttelte jedem die Hand, der an ihm vorbeikam. — Thoma.
He looks past others.
An anderen schaut er vorbei. — Sudermann.

Note. — *To pass* in the sense of *to be promoted* is versetzt werden.

Did you pass? Sind Sie versetzt worden?
The juniors, who in time passed into the senior class.
Die Sekundaner, die nun in der Zeit nach Prima versetzt wurden.
— Wildenbruch.

247. English *along* has two different German meanings.

(1) In the sense of *along the street*, it is entlang, or daher (her), following the accusative.

We went along the street.
Wir gingen die Straße entlang (or **daher** or **her**).
Rush, river, along the valley.
Rausche, Fluß, das Tal entlang. — Goethe.

(2) In the sense of *along with some one*, to denote *accompaniment*, German uses mit (for mitgehen).

May I go along? **Darf ich mit (gehen)?**
I'll go along to India. **Ich will ja mit nach Indien.** — Storm.

248. English *before* has three common German renderings.

(1) As a *conjunction*, *before* is usually ehe.

Before I could speak to him, he was gone.
Ehe ich ihn anreden konnte, war er fort.
Before she could prevent it, Antonino had taken her in his arms.
Ehe sie es wehren konnte, hatte Antonino sie in die Arme genommen. — Heyse.

(2) As an *adverb*, *before* is (*a*) noch or (*b*) früher or vorher.

(*a*) When the adverb *before* follows a negative, German uses **noch**. Here it is generally indefinite, and means *up to the present time*.

He hasn't read that before. **Das hat er noch nicht gelesen.**
I never saw her before. **Ich habe sie noch nie gesehen.**
That was so splendid and brilliant as she (Cinderella) had never had before. **Das war so prächtig und glänzend, wie es (Aschenputtel) noch keins gehabt hatte.** — Grimm.

(*b*) In affirmative clauses, the adverb *before* is usually German **vorher** or **früher**. These words usually refer to a more or less definite period in the past.

You ought to have done that before.
Das hättest du früher (or **vorher**) **tun sollen.**
She no longer looked as rosy as before.
Sie sah nicht mehr so rosig aus wie früher. — Werder.

(3) As a *preposition*, *before* is usually **vor**, either with the dative of place where or with the accusative of place whither. See § 125, 1.

249. English *way* is usually **der Weg** or **die Weise**.

(1) **Der Weg** is used only concretely of *way* in the sense of a *path* or *road*.

Is this the nearest way? **Ist dies der nächste Weg?**
Safe is the narrow way of duty.
Sicher ist der schmale Weg der Pflicht. — Schiller.

(2) **Die Weise** is used only abstractly of the *way* or *manner* in which something is done.

I don't like the way he writes.
Mir gefällt nicht die Weise, wie er schreibt.
Every one in his own way. **Jeder auf seine Weise.** — Sprichwort.

Note. — **Weise** unites with adjectives to form adverbs: **glücklicherweise**, *fortunately*; **möglicherweise**, *possibly*; **natürlicherweise**, *naturally*; and so on.

Exercises.

250. (*a*) 1. What are the chief differences between German and English indirect discourse? 2. What is the difference between Er ſagte, daß ich recht hatte, and Er ſagte, daß ich recht hätte? 3. Is either sentence wrong? Explain (§ 244).

(*b*) 1. Make an outline table illustrating all the German equivalents of *to pass* which are treated in this chapter. 2. Illustrate each use with a sentence. 3. Translate in two ways, *That isn't the right way*, and explain both meanings.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Wie ſchnell vergeht die Zeit! (*How time flies!*) 2. Wollen Sie mir, bitte, die Butter reichen? 3. Wir gehen morgen in die Stadt; willſt du mit? 4. Mit Vergnügen, aber welchen Weg geht ihr? 5. Wir gehen an der Schule vorbei und dann den Waldweg entlang bis in die Stadt. 6. Das iſt der beſte Weg nach der Stadt, und das iſt die beſte Weiſe, einen Feiertag zu verbringen.

251. (*a*) 1. He said he passed three very pleasant hours there, before he continued his way along the valley. 2. We told our friends how we had passed the little huts and had gone along the narrow way into the wood. 3. Will you please pass me the sugar? I haven't had any before (§ 248, 2, *a*). 4. That is not the way in which (wie) you ought to ask if you may go along. 5. I told you before that the time would pass faster than you expected. 6. They said that they had never passed such a pleasant day before.

(*b*) 1. That boy thinks the only way to pass is to study (lernen) hard before the examinations. 2. Time

passed swiftly before we reached this narrow way. 3. He said that they would pass a beautiful waterfall, so we went along. 4. The way led along the river, past the little village where we had passed last (vorig) summer. 5. The girl's father thought that she (§ 207, Note) had eaten enough, and would not pass her the bread. 6. Before I met (§ 171, 2, Note) the girl, I was sure that I had seen her before.

43. GOETHE. — From the bust by Trippel in the Library at Weimar.

(c) *Ludwig van Beethoven.* — 1. Before Beethoven became famous he passed much time in Bonn. 2. But after some time he went to Vienna. 3. There we hear that he lived more pleasantly than before. 4. They say that Vienna had never before known such a distinguished artist. 5. There are many stories which tell how he behaved (ſich benehmen) when he passed his friends on the street. 6. We know him to have been a great musician, but many people think he was not a polite man.

CHAPTER XXX.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL.

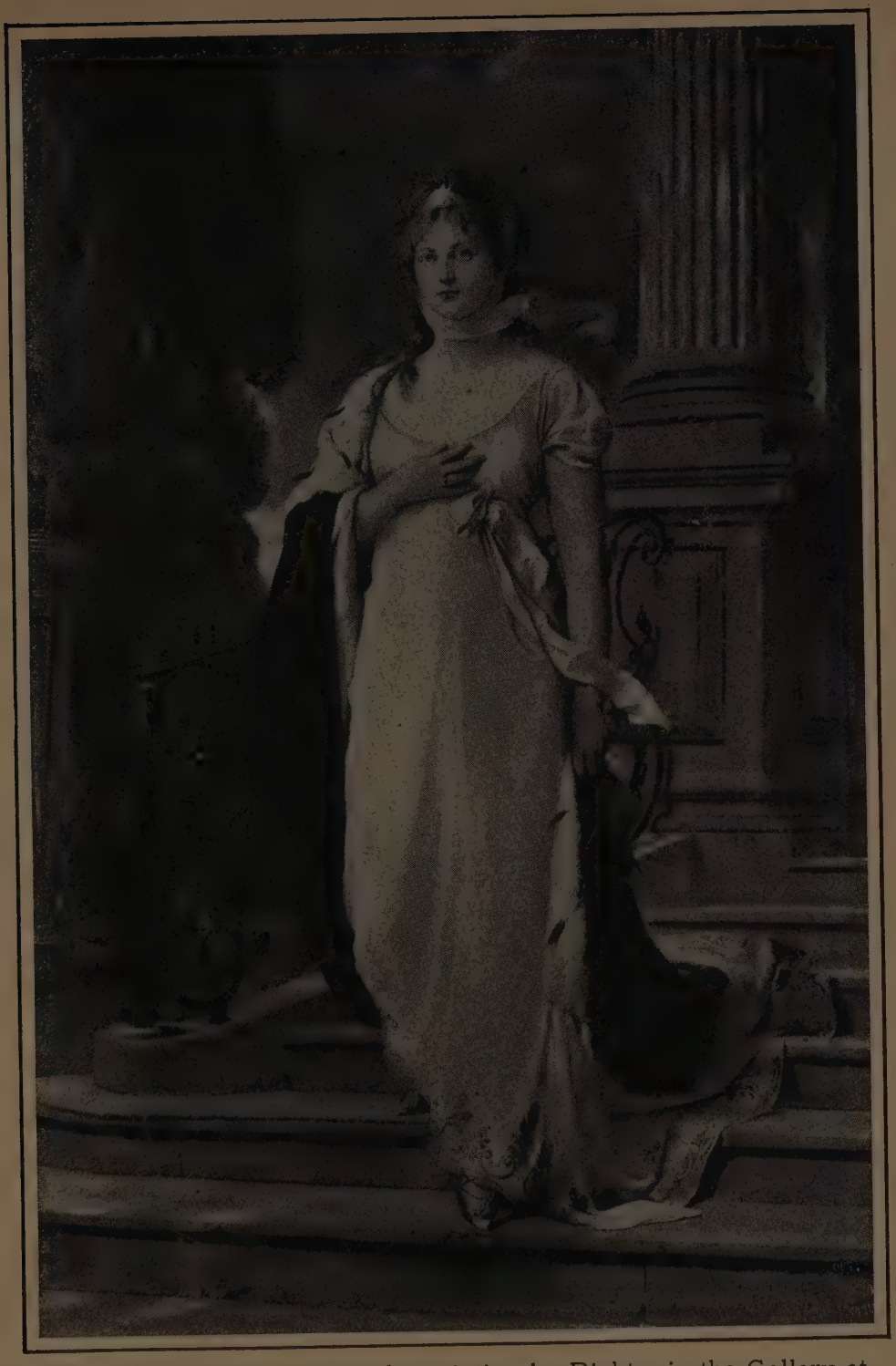
Königin Luise.

252. Nachdem die schöne Königin Luise Nachricht von dem französischen Siege bei Königsberg erhielt, floh sie mit ihren Söhnen aus der Stadt. Als sie sich nach einer Weile ausruhen wollten, sah Luise einen Trupp Soldaten kommen. „Gott helfe uns," rief sie aus, „wenn es Franzosen sind." Schnell entschloß sich die Königin; sie warf ein Tuch über den Kopf, als wäre sie eine Bauerfrau, und führte die Prinzen ins Kornfeld. „Was auch komme," sagte sie den Kindern, „seid ruhig, bückt euch nieder, und pflücket die Kornblumen."

Den Franzosen fiel es natürlich gar nicht ein, diese Frau mit den Kindern für Fürstlichkeiten zu halten und aus diesem Grunde gingen sie ruhig weiter, ohne Verdacht zu schöpfen. Wer hätte je denken können, daß der junge Wilhelm, der auf so kluge Weise von seiner Mutter gerettet wurde, sechzig Jahre später Frankreich erobern und das neue deutsche Reich gründen würde! Und wer hätte geglaubt, daß eben die Kornblume — seine Lieblingsblume — die Nationalblume Deutschlands werden würde!

Syntax.

253. The Unreal Subjunctive. — The unreal subjunctive (including the subjunctive contrary to fact) corresponds exactly to the English. It is used when no



44. Queen Luise. — From the painting by Richter in the Gallery at Cologne.

statement of fact is made, and is sometimes divided into four classes: (*a*) the *hortative* subjunctive (of *command*), (*b*) the *optative* subjunctive (of *wish*), (*c*) the *potential* subjunctive (of *possibility*), and (*d*) the subjunctive *contrary to fact*.

(*a*) *Let us go; let him come.*
Gehen wir; komme er, or **er möge kommen.**
God help me! **Gott helfe mir!**—Luther.

(*b*) *Were I only there!* **Wäre ich nur da!**
Would that he would write! **Schriebe er doch!**—Leſſing.

(*c*) *It would hardly be possible.* **Es wäre kaum möglich.**
Far away I'd like to go!
In die Ferne möcht' ich ziehen.—Schenkendorf.

(*d*) *If she had time, she would be glad to do it.*
Wenn ſie Zeit hätte, täte ſie es gern.
Had I pinions, had I wings, I would to the hills away.
Hätt' ich Schwingen, hätt' ich Flügel, nach dem Hügeln zög' ich hin.—Schiller.

254. The *conditional mode* in German is formed by prefixing forms of **würde,** *would* (past subjunctive of **werden**), to the present infinitive. It is merely another form of the potential (§ 253, *c*), and is used chiefly in the conclusions of conditional sentences.

It would hardly be possible.
Es würde kaum möglich ſein. (**Es wäre kaum möglich.**)
No one would speak in company, if he realized how often he misunderstands the others. **Niemand würde in Geſellſchaft ſprechen, wenn er ſich bewußt wäre, wie oft er die andern mißverſteht.**—Goethe.
How happy many a man would live, if he bothered as little about others' affairs as about his own.
Wie glücklich würde mancher leben, wenn er ſich um anderer Leute Sachen ſo wenig bekümmerte als um ſeine eigenen.—Lichtenberg.

Note.—The past subjunctive may be used for the conditional, except with weak verbs where the past subjunctive and indicative have

the same form. In such cases the conditional should be used. In the last two examples above, Goethe could have used ſpräche for würde ſprechen, but it would have been bad usage for Lichtenberg to use lebte for würde leben. Why?

255. German *conditional sentences* take the same mood and tense as the English. In fact, they are just like the English, except in their inversion of the *conclusion* when the condition precedes (§ 2, 2), and in the two cases below where the *condition* may be inverted. Remember that when the condition precedes, German usually begins the conclusion with the adverb ſo. This has no English equivalent, though it may sometimes be rendered by *then*.

(1) German can invert a present condition, while English cannot.

If he comes, I shall go. **Kommt er, ſo gehe ich.**
If it rains to-morrow, we shall stay at home.
Regnet es morgen, ſo bleiben wir zu Hauſe.
And if you're not willing, I shall use force.
Und biſt du nicht willig, ſo brauch' ich Gewalt. — Goethe.

(2) In *comparative conditions*, introduced by *as if*, *as though*, and so on, German may omit wenn or ob (in als wenn, als ob) and invert the sentence. English of course cannot do this.

You look as if you had been sick.
Du ſiehſt aus, als ob du krank geweſen wäreſt (or **als wäreſt du krank geweſen**).
Pray as though no work would help; work as if no prayer would help. **Bete, als hülfe** (past subj. of **helfen**) **kein Arbeiten; arbeite, als hülfe kein Beten.** — Sprichwort.
The wood rustles mysteriously, as if it would like to confide something to me. **Es rauſcht der Wald geheimnisvoll, als möcht' er mir was anvertrauen.** — Lenau.

Notes.

256. *Historical Note.* — Frederick the Great was succeeded by his nephew, Frederick William II (1786–1797), an unimportant monarch. His son, Frederick William III (1797–1840), was a patron of art and learning — he founded the University of Berlin and built the Royal Theatre and the Old Museum — rather than a statesman and soldier. His wife Luise had much more firmness of purpose than he, but she died in 1810, the idol of her people then and now. It is an interesting fact that the German Empire, which Napoleon abolished during the reign of Queen Luise, was to be reëstablished some sixty years later by her son. And it was the irony of fate that the proclamation of the New Empire should be made in the Royal French palace at Versailles while the victorious German army was besieging Paris.

257. English *ever* is variously rendered in German.

(1) When referring to indefinite time, past or future, *ever* is usually je.

Will he ever come? **Wird er je kommen?**
Have you ever been in Germany? **Waren Sie je in Deutſchland?**
And wilder than ever began the dance.
Und wilder als je begann der Tanz. — Gerſtäcker.

Note. — *For ever* is (auf) ewig, less often auf immer.

Zeus's decision stands for ever.
Ewig ſteht der Schluß des Zeus. — Schiller.

(2) In expressions like *wherever*, *whatever*, and so on, *ever* is usually German auch. It follows the subject. For *whenever*, see § 84, 2, *b*.

Wherever you go, you meet friends.
Wo man auch geht, da trifft man Freunde.
Then I shall hunt up the Emperor, wherever he may be.
Dann ſuche ich den Kaiſer auf, wo er auch ſei. — Hillern.

258. English *to decide* is used with or without a direct object.

(1) When English uses *to decide* with a direct object, German uses entſcheiden (entſchied, entſchieden, aux. haben).

Will you decide this case? **Wollen Sie dieſen Fall entſcheiden?**
You come at just the right time, major, to decide our controversy.
Sie kommen eben recht, Herr Major, unſeren Streit zu entſcheiden.
—Goethe.

(2) When English uses *to decide* for *to reach a decision*, especially when followed by a prepositional phrase, German uses ſich entſchließen (entſchloß ſich, ſich entſchloſſen, aux. haben), or beſchließen (beſchloß, beſchloſſen, aux. haben). They may be used interchangeably, but entſchließen is always reflexive.

I have decided to go abroad next year.
Ich habe mich entſchloſſen (or **habe beſchloſſen**), **nächſtes Jahr auf Reiſen zu gehen.**
I have determined there to winter.
Daſelbſt habe ich beſchloſſen, den Winter zu bleiben.
—Bibel, Titus 3, 12.

259. English *after* has two German renderings.

(1) As a conjunction, *after* is German nachdem with the transposed order.

We arrived at the station after the train had left.
Wir kamen am Bahnhofe an, nachdem der Zug abgefahren war.
After the child is drowned, the well is covered.
Nachdem das Kind ertrunken iſt, deckt man den Brunnen zu.
—Sprichwort.

(2) As a preposition, *after* is German nach. (See § 97, 2.) The adverb *afterward* is nachher.

260. English *reason* is **der Grund (die Gründe)**, which rarely means *ground* except in a figurative sense.

Those are my reasons (grounds). **Das ſind meine Gründe.**
Well, haven't I reason enough to be angry!
Na, ich habe Grund genug, ärgerlich zu ſein!—Freytag.

Note. — English *ground* is usually der Boden, which also means *floor*, *bottom*, and *attic*.

The richer the ground (soil), the thicker the weeds.
Je fetter der Boden, je fetter das Unkraut. — Sprichwort.

261. English *to receive* has commonly two German renderings: **erhalten** and **empfangen.**

(1) When the object is a thing, *to receive* is usually erhalten (erhielt, erhalten, aux. haben).

I haven't received any answer. **Ich habe keine Antwort erhalten.**
Reinhardt had received no further letter from her.
Reinhardt hatte von ihr keinen Brief mehr erhalten. — Storm.

(2) When the object is a person, *to receive* is empfangen (empfing, empfangen, aux. haben). It may be used of things, but in a more formal sense than erhalten.

How did she receive you? **Wie hat sie dich empfangen?**
The cousin looks after the house, receives the guests.
Der Vetter besorgt das Hauswesen, empfängt die Gäste.
— Benedix.

262. English *of course* is usually **natürlich.**

Of course I'll go. **Natürlich gehe ich.**
Of course the affair could now no longer remain concealed.
Nun konnte die Geschichte natürlich nicht länger verborgen bleiben.
— Wildenbruch.

Exercises.

263. (*a*) 1. Make an outline table showing the different classes of *unreal* subjunctives in German. 2. Illustrate each class by a sentence. 3. Are there any cases where German use differs from English? If so, name them. (In answering these questions remember that the same form often serves as indicative or subjunctive, both in English and German.) 4. How is the German conditional formed, and how does its use differ from that of the past subjunctive?

(*b*) 1. In what cases do German conditional sentences differ from English? 2. Illustrate each case by a sentence. 3. Classify and explain the subjunctives and conditionals in § 252 and in the last example in § 49, 2, § 69, 3, § 113, 2, § 150, 3, § 222, 3.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Dem ſei, wie ihm wolle! (*Be that as it may!*) 2. Hätte ich das gewußt, ſo wäre ich früher fertig geworden. 3. Natürlich haben Sie guten Grund, das zu ſagen. 4. Haben Sie je einen ſolchen Brief erhalten? 5. Nachdem er das ſagte, hat ſie ſich entſchloßen, ihn nie wieder zu empfangen. 6. Es gibt Menſchen, die höflich empfangen werden, wo ſie auch hingehen.

264. (*a*) 1. Were he more polite, he would of course be better received. 2. After they had decided to stay, we had no reason to go. 3. If you ever receive such a letter from him, you must decide not to receive him again. 4. It would be decidedly easier to write these exercises, if you worked harder. 5. If he ever had to decide anything, of course he would do it in the easiest way. 6. Whatever we decide, you will have no reason to complain (ſich beklagen).

(*b*) 1. Of course, if I had ever received a letter from you, I should have been glad to answer it. 2. She couldn't decide to receive him after he had been so impolite. 3. After this outing the pupils will decide if they are ever going to have another. 4. Had I only worked harder, I should have passed. 5. He wouldn't do such a thing (ſo etwas) without having a good reason. 6. Were she able to decide, of course she would receive him.

(*c*) *Queen Luise.* — 1. If you asked who was the most popular queen that Prussia had ever had, you would of course receive the answer: Queen Luise. 2. And the Prussians

have good reason to say so (das). 3. Had everybody decided to work as much for Prussia as Queen Luise did [it], Prussia would have been decidedly stronger after the wars against Napoleon. 4. She went to Napoleon and he received her, but he decided not to let himself be influenced by her. 5. If he had done so, it would have been better for Prussia. 6. But Napoleon did not care about Prussia, and of course he did as he pleased.

CHAPTER XXXI.

SPECIAL SUBJUNCTIVES.

Das Frankfurter Parlament.

265. Im Jahre 1848 tagte in Frankfurt das erste vom Deutschen Volk erwählte Parlament, um die deutschen Staaten zu einem Reiche zu vereinigen. Das Parlament bestand aus vielen gelehrten Männern, denen praktische Erfahrung fehlte. Sie redeten zu viel. Sie hätten etwas leisten können, wenn sie gehandelt hätten, anstatt so viel zu sprechen. Sie bestanden immer auf ihren Ideen, während sie zuweilen hätten nachgeben sollen. Es war ein seltsames Parlament, wie man noch keins in Deutschland gesehen hatte.

45. St. Paul's Church at Frankfort, where the famous Frankfort Parliament met.

Endlich, um Deutschland zu einigen, bot man dem König von Preußen die Kaiserkrone an. Aber er wagte nicht, sie an-

zunehmen, weil er auf die Zustimmung der deutschen Fürsten nicht rechnen konnte. „Eine solche Krone möchte ich nicht tragen," sagte er. Und so ist der vom deutschen Volk gemachte Versuch, ein neues Reich zu gründen, zuerst gescheitert. Man mußte auf einen starken Führer warten.

Syntax.

266. Special Subjunctives. — Two kinds of expressions which usually make trouble for Americans are *should* (or *would*) *like*, and *ought to have*, *might have*, *could have*, and so on.

(1) The expression *should* or *would like* is always möchte, the past subjunctive of mögen, with or without gern. See § 76, 1.

Would you like to hear "Lohengrin"?
Möchten Sie (gern) „Lohengrin" hören?
He would like to very much. **Das möchte er sehr gern.**
I should like to go to Nuremberg to Dürer.
Nach Nürnberg zum Dürer möcht' ich schon. — Hillern.

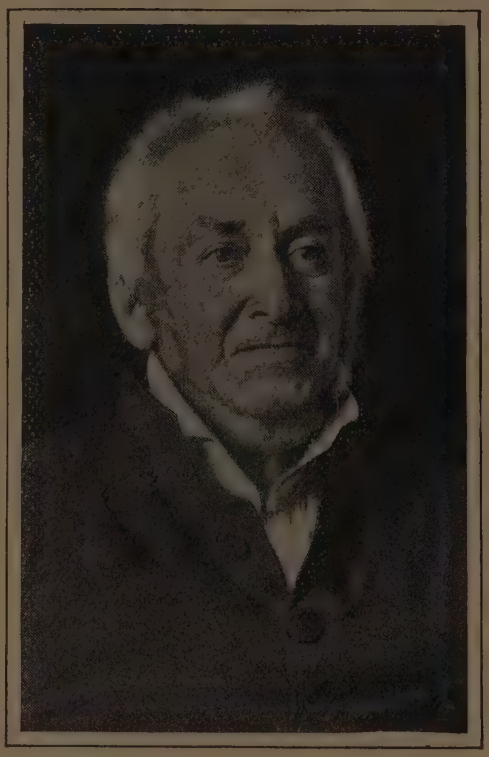
(2) The expressions *could have*, *might have*, *ought to have*, and so on are rendered in German by the pluperfect subjunctive. The expression begins with a form of hätten, then comes the main verb in the infinitive, and finally the infinitive of the modal. This order should be practised so thoroughly that the student loses all tendency to use the English order when putting his thoughts into German.

Sollen and können are commonest in this construction; dürfen is sometimes used; mögen, müssen, and wollen are rare. For the position of hätte in dependent clauses, see § 73, 2.

I could not have done it. **Ich hätte es nicht tun können.**
You ought to have seen us! **Sie hätten uns sehen sollen!**
I ought not to have accepted so quickly.
Ich hätte doch nicht so schnell annehmen sollen. — Freytag.
I could not have been born here.
Ich hätt' hier nicht geboren werden können. — Hebbel.

Notes.

267. *Historical Note.*— Frederick William III reigned thirty years after the death of his queen, Luise, and was succeeded in 1840 by his son, Frederick William IV. During all the first half of the nineteenth century, national feeling had been growing stronger throughout the many German states. But when the Frankfort Parliament met, the great question was, who should lead the new Empire, Austria or Prussia. Austria had the most prestige, but refused to join the new Empire without bringing in Hungary as well, and this the other German states did not want. They desired only Austria proper — the German part of the Austrian Empire. As Austria remained firm, the Parliament finally decided to leave her out entirely. So it was not only distrust of this parliament, but fear of a war with Austria, that led Frederick William IV to refuse the imperial crown. He also wished to consider the princes of Germany, and they were not represented at the Frankfort Parliament.



46. ERNST MORITZ ARNDT. — Poet and patriot, one of the members of the Frankfort Parliament.

268. English *first* is usually rendered in German by **erſt** or **zuerſt.**

(1) As an *adjective*, *first* is generally erſt. For erſt as an adverb see § 185, 1, *b*.

Did you guess it the first time?
Haben Sie es das erſte Mal erraten?
But many that are first shall be last, and the last shall be first.
Aber viele, die da ſind die erſten, werden die letzten, und die letzten werden die erſten ſein. — Bibel, Matt. 19, 30.

(2) As an *adverb*, *first* (*at first*) is zuerſt.

I saw it first. **Ich habe es zuerſt geſehen.**
They thought first of the old caretaker.
Man dachte zuerſt an den alten Aufwärter. — Wildenbruch.

269. German **beſtehen** (beſtand, beſtanden, aux. haben) has two very different meanings, depending upon the preposition with which it is used.

(1) When followed by aus with the dative, beſtehen means *to consist of.*

The German Empire consists of twenty-six states.
Das Deutſche Reich beſteht aus ſechsundzwanzig Staaten.
This (crowd) consists of people of all ranks.
Dieſe (Menge) beſteht aus Menſchen von allen Ständen. — Heine.

(2) When followed by auf with the dative, beſtehen means *to insist upon.*

I insist upon my rights. **Ich beſtehe auf meinen Rechten.**
But he insisted on seeing the Colonel. (§ 270, 1, Note.)
Aber er beſtand darauf, den Herrn Oberſten zu ſprechen.
— Freytag.

Note. — When followed by a direct object beſtehen means *to withstand;* of examinations, *to pass.*

He couldn't pass the examination.
Er hat die Prüfung nicht beſtehen können.
I am still alive and will withstand him.
Ich lebe noch und will ihn beſtehen. — Arndt.

270. English *to speak, to talk,* is usually **ſprechen** or **reden.** They are generally interchangeable, except as shown below.

(1) The common word for *to speak* is ſprechen (ſprach, geſprochen, aux. haben). It refers usually to short talks or to the power of speech. So it could be used of babies or parrots, where reden could not.

At the age of one year the child began to talk.
Im Alter von einem Jahre fing das Kind an zu ſprechen.
The mother speaks: To-morrow's a holiday.
Die Mutter ſpricht: Morgen iſt's Feiertag.—Schwab.

Note.— Sprechen is always used (followed by the accusative) where English uses *to see* in the sense of *visit with* or *speak to.* Where English says: *Is Mr. Brown at home? May I see him a moment?* German always says: Darf ich ihn einen Augenblick ſprechen?

(2) Usually reden (reg., aux. haben) refers to the content of a more extended talk or speech. It is a trifle more formal than ſprechen and often contains a suggestion of speechifying.

He spoke (talked) for a whole hour. **Er redete eine ganze Stunde.**
You speak with much deliberation.
Sie reden mit vieler Überlegung.—Leſſing.
I cannot speak as I should like to.
Ich kann nicht reden, wie ich möchte.—Hebbel.

Note.— *To make a speech* is eine Rede halten; *to speak to,* in the sense of *address,* is anreden with the accusative.

He made a fine speech. Er hat eine ſchöne Rede gehalten.
It is they; I will speak to them.
Sie ſind's; ich will ſie anreden.—Schiller.

271. English *strange* is generally **ſeltſam** or **fremd.**

(1) Seltſam means *strange* in the sense of *odd, queer.*

That's a strange bird. **Das iſt ein ſeltſamer Vogel.**
How strangely this sign affects me!
Wie ſeltſam wirkt dies Zeichen auf mich ein!—Goethe.

(2) Fremd means *strange* in the sense of *foreign, unacquainted, a total stranger.*

Excuse me, I am a stranger here.
Verzeihen Sie, ich bin hier fremd.
How do you feel in the strange woods?
Wie wird's euch in den fremden Wäldern? — Freiligrath.

Exercises.

272. (*a*) 1. In translating into German an English expression like *could have, should have,* and so on, with what kind of a form must we always start? 2. What is the order of the other verb forms? 3. How is *should* or *would like* always rendered in German?

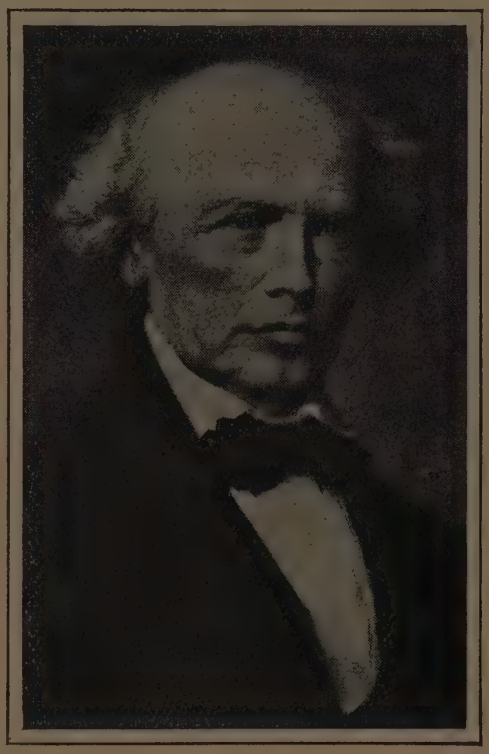
(*b*) 1. Explain the different uses of *strange* in German. 2. Write three sentences illustrating three uses of bestehen.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Wer zuerst kommt, mahlt zuerst. (*First come, first served;* i.e. *his corn is first ground.*) 2. Ich möchte ihn gern einen Augenblick sprechen. 3. Sie hätten darauf bestehen sollen. 4. Wir hätten uns nicht besser amüsieren können. 5. Es ist doch seltsam, daß Sie dieses Examen nicht bestehen konnten. 6. Der erste Schüler, der fertig ist, darf sprechen.

273. (*a*) 1. That is a strange way to pronounce that word. 2. She insists upon it that you ought to have spoken louder. 3. I should like to pronounce that word so, but it is quite strange to me. 4. Then I insist upon it that you couldn't have pronounced it right at first. 5. You ought to have punished the first one who spoke. 6. He talked a whole hour without saying anything; all his speech was only flattery.

(*b*) 1. I should like to see Mr. Brown; is he here (§ 17, 2)? 2. She insists [upon it] that we couldn't have

passed an examination that consisted of ten questions. 3. That is a strange sentence; would you like to translate it? 4. At first he insisted that he wouldn't like to speak; then he made a long speech. 5. If you would like to speak German well, you ought to talk as much as you can. 6. You ought to have had a book that consisted of [a great] many exercises.



47. LUDWIG UHLAND. — One of Germany's best-known and most loved poets, a member of the Frankfort Parliament.

(c) *The First German Parliament.* — 1. It seems strange to us that the first German Parliament took place only about sixty years ago. 2. It consisted of many learned men, who ought not to have talked so much. 3. They couldn't have accomplished (leiſten) anything without first winning [over] the princes. 4. But they insisted on holding firmly to (an) their ideas and continued making speeches. 5. It is not strange that Bismarck, who would have liked to see a united Germany, afterward made his famous remark. 6. He said the unification of Germany was not a question which could be solved with speeches, but with blood and iron.

CHAPTER XXXII.

REVIEW.

Zwar. Allerdings.

274. The English concessive phrases *it is true, to be sure,* may be rendered in German by **zwar,** or **allerdings.** These are usually interchangeable, but as an independent word, answering a question or statement, only **allerdings** can be used for *to be sure.* **Zwar** is never used alone.

Why, to be sure! **Nun, allerdings!**
It's true he was sick, but still he came.
Er war zwar (allerdings) krank, aber er ist doch gekommen.
To be sure I know her. **Allerdings kenn' ich sie.** — Freytag.
It's true I know much, but I should like to know everything.
Zwar weiß ich viel, doch möcht' ich alles wissen. — Goethe.

Exercises.

275. (*a*) 1. Make an outline table of the subjunctives treated in the last three chapters. 2. Show by translations that the use of the subjunctive is similar in both languages, except in indirect discourse. 3. Give the order of the parts of the verb in the German translation of *He could have done it.* 4. What is the order when the sentence is put into a subordinate clause?

(*b*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Nun, allerdings! 2. Zwar hätte ich es tun sollen, aber ich konnte nicht. 3. Natürlich würde ich nicht darauf bestehen, wenn ich nicht recht hätte. 4. Zwar weiß ich viel, doch möcht' ich alles wissen. 5. Es würde entschieden besser klingen, wenn

Sie lauter ſprächen. 6. Haben Sie je einen ſo ſeltſamen Brief erhalten?

276. (*a*) 1. If you had spoken like that (ſo) before, we should have thought that it was decidedly impolite. 2. I should like to see the [Mr.] professor, if he will receive me before he goes out. 3. It's true he had no reason to speak, yet he insisted on talking a whole hour. 4. After the teacher had showed us how we could have translated the sentence, we were of course ready to try the next one. 5. Wherever Mary went, the lamb went along. 6. I should like to see those newspapers you just received; please pass them to me.

(*b*) 1. After they had decided to pass the summer in Europe, they ought not to have talked about it so much. 2. I should like to follow this way along the river past the wood. 3. After he had been so well received, he ought not to have insisted on speaking first. 4. It's true the examination which we could not pass could not have consisted of harder questions. 5. He would like to hear the first way you ever pronounced that word. 6. She said that the days passed very slowly before she met those interesting strangers.

(*c*) 1. It's true she spoke as if the time passed slowly, but she had no reason to say so (das). 2. I could have passed the examination, if the teacher had not asked so many hard questions. 3. Did you ever see an exercise that consisted of such hard sentences? 4. We should like to see Miss Smith, but she may decide not to receive us till (§ 185, 1, *b*) after supper. 5. The time passed so slowly that it seemed as if he would speak forever. 6. The boy said that he hadn't translated the sentence before, because so many words were strange to him.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I–VIII.

Bismarck und das Deutsche Reich.

277. Bismarck, der in seinen Reden die Deutschen gern als Beispiel anführte, sagte einmal: „Wir Deutschen sind wie

48. Statue of Young Bismarck at the Rudelsburg.

ein Ehepaar. Wenn alles ruhig und still ist, zankt man sich wohl ein wenig; wenn aber ein Nachbar sich einmischt, fallen Mann und Frau vereint über ihn her." Noch vor der Be-

gründung des jetzigen Deutschen Reichs war Bismarck klug genug, diese Tatsache zu erkennen und zu benutzen, um die deutschen Staaten zu vereinigen.

Die große Macht, die ihm König Wilhelm gegeben hatte, gebrauchte er, um das preußische Heer zu stärken. Dann verdrängte er Österreich aus dem deutschen Bunde (1866) und im Jahre 1870 — als die Deutschen genügend gerüstet waren — trat er vor den Drohungen der Franzosen nicht zurück, so daß Frankreich den Krieg erklärte. Norddeutsche und Süddeutsche vereinten sich gegen den gemeinsamen Feind, und, nachdem sie die Franzosen besiegt hatten, vereinigten sie sich zum neuen Deutschen Reich.

Notes.

278. *Historical Note.* — In 1861 Frederick William IV died and was succeeded by his brother William. The new king tried to increase the strength and efficiency of the army, but his reforms were unpopular, the Prussian House of Representatives voting against them 308 to 11. William then made Otto von Bismarck prime minister, and together they worked grimly for the unification of Germany under Prussia's leadership. After strengthening the army — against the determined opposition of a people who hated him — Bismarck put it to excellent use against Denmark, Austria, and finally France. Bismarck came out of these successful wars the idol of the German people, the man of blood and iron who had welded Germany into an Empire, after the people themselves had failed.

Exercises.

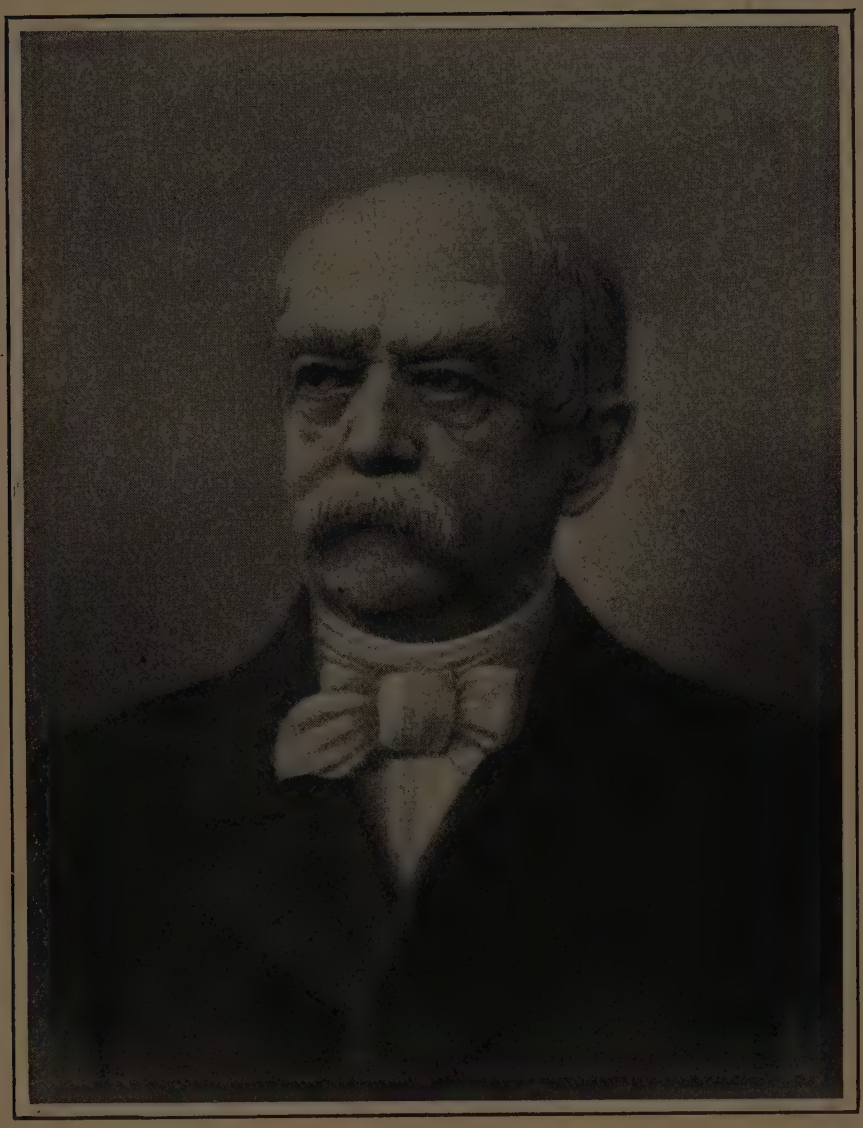
279. (*a*) 1. Apply the General Principle for Order (§ 37, Note) to the cases of word order treated in Chapters I, II, and III. 2. Do the same for Chapters V, VI, and VII. 3. Find in § 277 illustrations of inverted order, transposed order, position of nicht, and position of objects.

(*b*) 1. Put the sentence, *I told my little sister a long story several hours ago*, into the inverted order, writing it in three ways. 2. Write the same sentence twice in the normal order: (1) to emphasize what was told to the sister, and (2) to emphasize to whom the story was told. 3. Translate the sentence, *You aren't working very hard to-day*, and then put it into the proper order following, *It seems to me that.*

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Stundenlang habe ich auf dich gewartet! 2. Kein Menſch verſteht, was Sie da fragen. 3. Ja, eben; das hab' ich Ihnen geſagt. 4. Es fällt mir gar nicht ein, das Buch zu holen. 5. Wie nennen Sie dies auf deutſch? 6. Aber wie kann man das wiſſen?

280. (*a*) 1. Three weeks ago she wasn't married, so far as I know. 2. At any rate they said that her name was still Schmidt, and we all called her Miss then. 3. For years we looked for a comfortable house in which we could live in peace. 4. I asked for a gray hat, but the man didn't get me the one I wished, but a brown one. 5. Then I told him that I could not wait for him any longer, but would get the hat another time. 6. And then (§ 17, 1) the man got angry and said he couldn't help it.

(*b*) 1. What are you thinking of (§ 41, 1, Note) to ask such a question, when you ought to get a dictionary and look it up yourself! 2. One never knows how one should call people who have been married several times. 3. Sometimes I can't help wishing that we lived in a bigger house. 4. As you had such a good time, don't you want to sit down and tell us about it? 5. He can ask such strange questions that no human being can answer them. 6. That was a long time ago, and since that time I have never thought of those days.



49. BISMARCK, THE IRON CHANCELLOR.

(*c*) *A Visit.* — "Come in and sit down; I am glad that you are here again."

"Thank you! May I ask you about Mr. Müller, who lives with you?"

"Certainly, ask as many questions as you want to."

"Some time ago that man who lives here with you

asked me for my German grammar. Now I wish it again. I have asked him three times why I have to wait so long for it. Will you please look for it in his room?" ——

"No, it is not there. I'm very sorry."

"Thank you very much."

"You're very welcome."

"May I ask you what time it is?"

"Certainly, it is quarter to five. Don't you want to wait for your friend?"

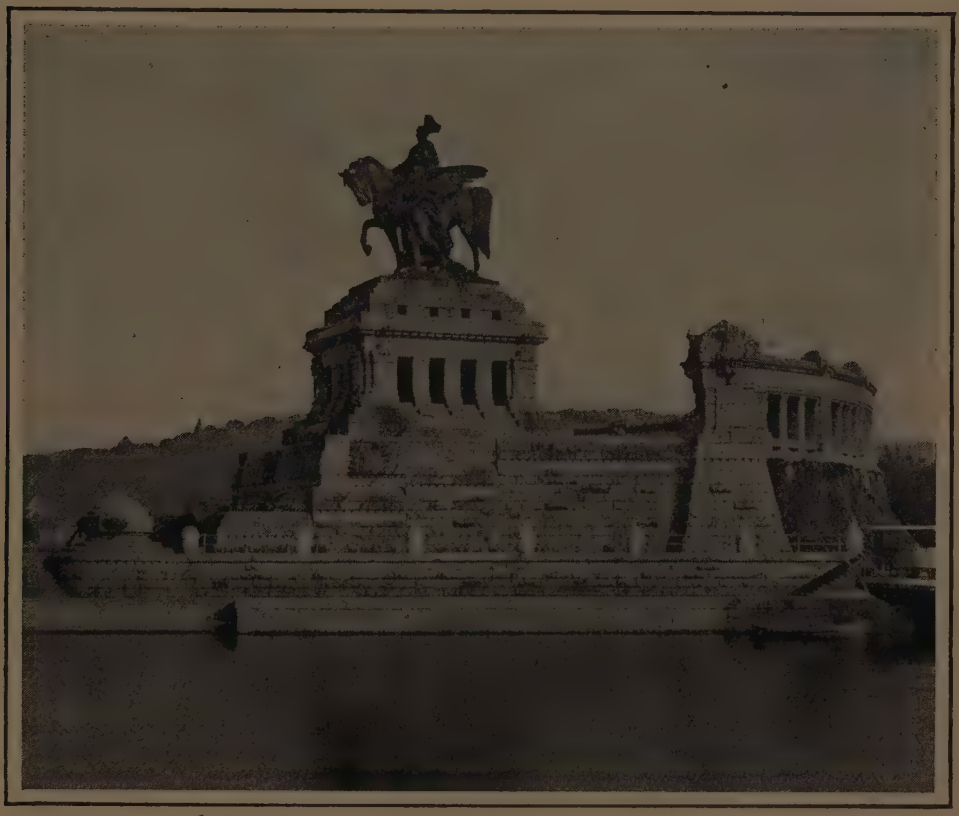
"No, thank you! I shouldn't think of (§ 41, 1, Note) waiting longer for him. I can get the grammar another time."

CHAPTER XXXIV.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS IX–XVI.

Kaiser Wilhelm der Große.

281. Als Kaiser Wilhelm der Erste im Jahre 1871 aus dem französischen Kriege zurückkehrte, stand er schon in seinem



50. Monument to Emperor William I at Coblentz. — On the point where the Moselle flows into the Rhine.

vierundsiebzigsten Lebensjahre. Da erfand für ihn das Volk den Namen „Heldengreis." Den rüstigen, kräftigen Kaiser ärgerte dies; er hat nie zugeben wollen, daß er alt sei.

„Was habe ich da erzählen hören? Was wollen denn die Leute mit ihrem Heldengreise?" fragte er. „Um Heldengreis zu sein, muß man doch vor allen Dingen ein Greis sein, und das bin ich noch lange nicht." Und daß er wirklich nicht alt war zeigt sich darin, daß er noch siebzehn Jahre lebte und regierte.

Notes.

282. *Historical Note.* — William I, though unpopular early in his reign, was, as founder of the new German Empire, much admired and loved. Memorials to him are found all over Germany, usually flanked by statues of Bismarck and Moltke. Each of these three, the king, the statesman, and the general, was indispensable in building the new empire. Later, the old Emperor used to appear every day about one o'clock at the corner window of the old palace, when the guard, die Wache, marched by. People came in crowds to see him. When he became feeble his family tried to persuade him not to stand at the window, but he insisted with characteristic energy and wit: "I must do it; it says in Baedeker [a well-known guide book] that I am to be seen here." He died March 9, in 1888, and was succeeded by his son, Kaiser Friedrich III [so called because he was King Friedrich III of Prussia, not because he was the third Emperor Friedrich.] After a brief reign of ninety-nine days, the popular Friedrich III, known to the people as „Unser Fritz," died, and the present Kaiser, Wilhelm II, came to the throne.

Exercises.

283. (*a*) 1. The auxiliary always precedes "two infinitives." Then what is the difference between the position of the auxiliary with "two infinitives" in independent sentences and in subordinate clauses? 2. Apply the General Principle for Order (§ 37, Note) to the position of prepositional phrases. Do they differ in position from adverbs? 3. Find in § 281 illustrations of modals in simple and compound tenses, of "two infinitives" with other verbs, of

prepositions with the dative, with the accusative, and with dative or accusative.

(*b*) 1. Translate the sentence, *He hasn't been able to do it to-day*, and then put it into the proper order after *I know that.* 2. What is the difference between Das Kind lief in das Zimmer, and Das Kind lief in dem Zimmer. 3. What is the difference between Gehen Sie in die Schule? and Gehen Sie zur Schule? (§ 121, Note). 4. Between Wollen Sie da sein? and Werden Sie da sein?

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Laß das sein; das darfst du nicht tun. 2. Im Sommer gehe ich gern ohne Rock aber mit dicken Stiefeln spazieren. 3. Wollen wir sehen, was es im andern Zimmer gibt? 4. Den ganzen Morgen habe ich sehen wollen, ob ich wohl unter diesen Blumen ein Veilchen finden könnte. 5. Werden wir in so kurzer Zeit eine so lange Aufgabe schreiben müssen? 6. Jetzt habe ich mir einen Anzug aus Seide machen lassen.

284. (*a*) 1. Haven't you had that new suit made yet? 2. Yes, I had it made (§ 128, 1) several weeks ago. 3. Have you met my brother? I am sure you will like him. 4. After supper we shall have to look for all the balls we lost while (§ 95, 2) playing. 5. There are more mistakes in this exercise than you have ever made before. 6. In summer when I can go to school through the wood, I like it better than in winter, when the ways are covered with snow.

(*b*) 1. May I ask you when you can do this for me? 2. When I saw him sitting by the window, I ought to have gone across the street to speak with him. 3. Beside an old tree in the valley there is a beautiful little house with many windows which look toward the east. 4. When you saw the pupils going home, why didn't you go home,

51. Count von Moltke. — The military genius who guided Emperor William's campaigns.

too? 5. There is no place where I should like to live so well as in that pretty house by the lake. 6. I am really more interested in such things than my sister, but she raves (ſchwärmen) about them more than I.

(c) *In the Garden.* — "Good morning! May I come into your garden and sit down on this bench under your shady oak tree?"

"Yes, please [do]. There is nothing that I should like better than to talk with you."

"Were you able to get everything you wished at the market in the city?"

"In this weather I did not want to go to town. I didn't like all those clouds. What did you see in town?"

"I had to stay at home, too. Two days ago my uncle came with my little cousin whom I haven't been able to visit since last summer."

"Is that the one I met (§ 171, 2, Note) two years ago, the little one with brown hair?"

"Yes, when I have nothing else to do, I am teaching him to play ball. We have a fine time together."

"I should like to see him again. Won't you bring him along next time you come?"

"Gladly! But I fear I shall have to be going now. I ought to have gone home before, but it looked so pleasant here in the garden."

"Good-by. Give your cousin my regards (grüßen Sie Ihren Vetter von mir). And come again soon."

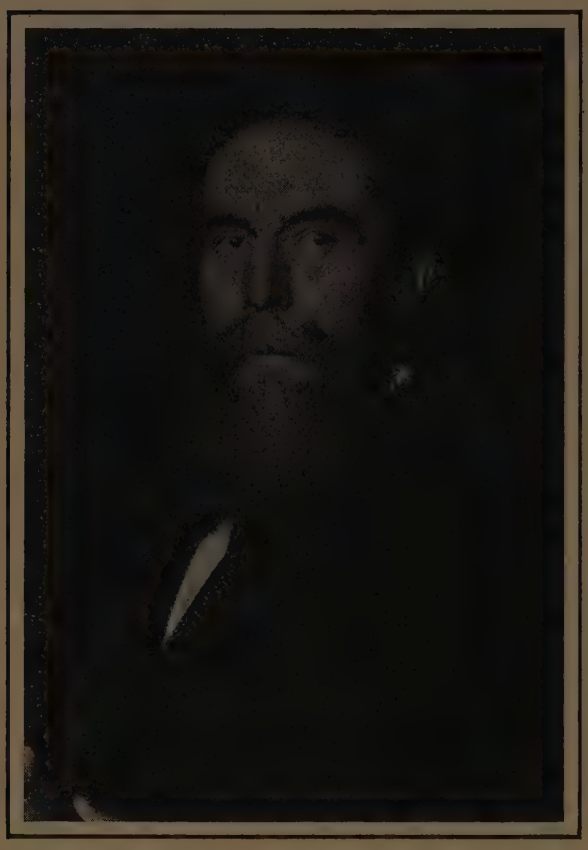
"Thank you. Auf Wiedersehen!"

CHAPTER XXXV.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XVII–XXIV.

Deutsche Wissenschaft.

285. Auf den deutschen Universitäten gibt es keinen Zwang. Anstatt daß man die Vorlesungen regelmäßig besuchen muß, studiert man so viel oder so wenig, wie man will. Es wurde einmal darüber geklagt, daß die Hälfte der Studenten nichts tauge; da hat Bismarck stolz ausgerufen: „Ja, aber es ist der andern Hälfte gelungen, die Welt zu beherrschen."



52. Roentgen. — The discoverer of the X-ray.

Natürlich darf man dies nicht zu wörtlich nehmen, aber auch ohne es ganz wörtlich zu fassen, muß man doch zugeben, daß etwas Wahres darin liegt, denn in der Wissenschaft sind die Deutschen den meisten anderen Völkern überlegen. Der Kreis der berühmten deutschen Gelehrten umfaßt Namen

wie Kant, Fichte, Hegel, Schopenhauer, Mommsen, Grimm, Helmholtz, Koch, und Röntgen.

Notes.

286. *Historical Note.* — German scholars and scientists have long been famous, and — since the establishment of the Empire, and especially since the accession of the present Emperor — scholarship and science have been applied to the industrial world with astounding results. In the realm of theoretical and applied science the Germans have become the teachers of the world, drawing to their universities students from every land.

Exercises.

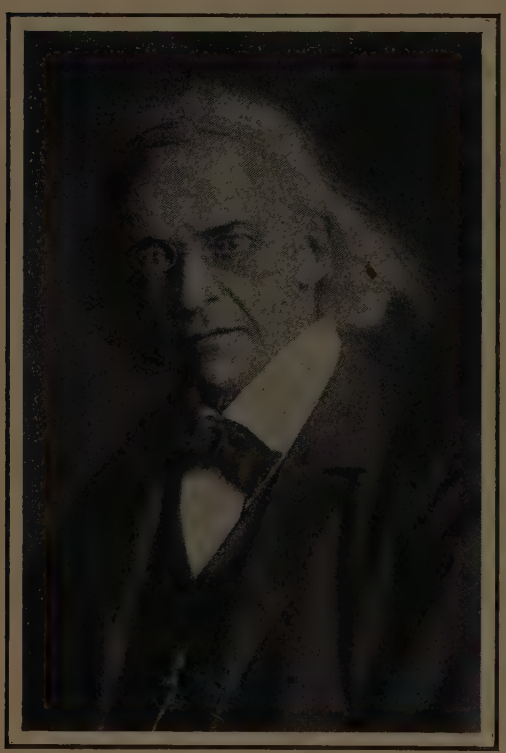
287. (*a*) 1. Give full synopses of the verbs in the following sentences: Ich übersetze das Buch, Ich setze meinen Freund über, and Ich setze meinen Freund über den Fluß. 2. Make an outline table by moods and tenses, showing all the differences between simple verbs and verbs with common prefixes. 3. Make an outline table showing the commonest German renderings of the English verbal in *ing*. 4. Find in § 285 examples of the use of separable verbs, inseparable verbs, common prefixes, haben and sein as auxiliaries, English verbals translated by infinitives and by clauses.

(*b*) 1. Translate: *He has driven to town*, and *He has driven badly*. Explain. 2. Translate Er sah mich kommen, two ways in English. Do both ways mean the same thing? 3. Translate, *He came without seeing me*, and *He came without my seeing him*. Explain the translations of the verbals.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Sie sagen, es macht nichts aus! Na, das kommt darauf an! 2. Sobald ich eingeschlafen war, wachte ich gleich wieder auf. 3. Ich bin den beiden überall gefolgt. 4. Glauben Sie, daß der

Satz richtig ist? 5. Anstatt fortzufahren zu übersetzen, hörte er auf. 6. Es ist mir gelungen, ungefähr eine halbe Seite zu übersetzen, ohne einen Fehler zu machen.

288. (*a*) 1. You might have translated the whole exercise right, if you hadn't misunderstood. 2. He looked hither and thither for his watch, but it was (§ 206, 2) under a newspaper on the table. 3. How long will it take if we take a carriage? 4. I haven't seen the boys playing football; they may have stopped playing before we arrived. 5. If you wished me to go and order dinner, instead of continuing to play [the] piano, why didn't you tell me so (es)? 6. Finding the children playing in the garden, I succeeded in making them stop without their getting angry.



53. MOMMSEN. — One of Germany's greatest historians.

(*b*) 1. I have followed you hither and thither for a whole hour, without being able to speak a word with you. 2. I think there is more (§ 30, 2) room here; you can sit down without disturbing us. 3. Seeing the boys sitting at the desk without doing anything, I told them to begin writing their exercises. 4. They continued writing for half an hour; I thought it would take longer before they were ready. 5. When we met the two brothers,

they entertained us a long time by telling all kinds of (aller-lei) funny stories. 6. Hearing the children making such a noise, instead of continuing to work without their noticing you, you ought to have ordered them to stop.

(*c*) *In the Parlor.* — "Do you know those two men I met at [the] Müllers' yesterday? Well, I think I see them coming. Will you help me entertain them?"

"Instead of receiving them like this (so), we ought to stop sewing and change our clothes. Don't you think so? We can let them wait for us."

"Oh, no! Then they will hear us running hither and thither trying to get ready. I think we shall succeed in entertaining them very well."

"May I keep on (continue) sewing? I'm about to finish this pattern, and it won't take long. Of course, if you order me to stop, I will (so tu' ich's)."

"Oh, no, only I wish you'd make a little room on the sofa. I don't like to see your things lying there, for you know it is the seat of honor."

"Of course not. You are right, as always. Well, now everything is in order, and we are ready to receive the gentlemen."

CHAPTER XXXVI.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XXV–XXXII.

Deutscher Handel.

289. Seit der Begründung des Deutschen Reiches haben die Deutschen Großes geleistet. Sie möchten den Handel und Verkehr der Welt beherrschen. Sie glauben, daß ihnen

54. The Docks at Hamburg.

dies gelingen kann, wenn sie in der Industrie verwerten, was sie auf der Universität lernen. Und sie könnten in der Tat nichts Besseres tun; man sieht in fast jedem Lande die bekannte Marke "made in Germany."

Der Palaſt des Sultans zu Konſtantinopel wird durch deutſche Elektrizität erleuchtet, und Brücken und Eiſenbahnen in Kleinaſien und Südamerika werden von deutſchen Geſellſchaften erbaut. Die Schiffe des Norddeutſchen Lloyds, und der Hamburg-Amerika-Linie, der beiden größten Dampferlinien der Welt, tragen deutſche Fabrikate in alle Weltteile. Und das alles geſchieht erſt, ſeit die deutſchen Staaten ſich zum deutſchen Reich zuſammengeſchloſſen haben.

Notes.

290. *Historical Note.* — The development of German industry and commerce is little short of marvelous. The capital, Berlin, has become the leading industrial center of Europe, while in foreign commerce — imports and exports — Germany excels the United States. The latest available figures show Germany's commerce to be worth four billions ($4,000,000,000) a year, while that of the United States is worth about three and a quarter billions ($3,250,000,000).

Exercises.

291. (*a*) 1. Write short sentences illustrating all the German equivalents for English *that*. 2. What impresses you as the most difficult peculiarity of German adjectives? Illustrate it in a sentence. 3. Outline the chief differences between German and English in their use of (1) moods and (2) tenses. 4. Find in § 289 illustrations of (1) both kinds of conjunctions, (2) different adjective peculiarities, and (3) uses of the subjunctive.

(*b*) 1. Translate, *The boy I mean is not the one you know*, and comment on the insertion of German words not needed in English. 2. Write three German sentences, seeing how many infinitive forms you can put at the end, like Sie hätten ihn nicht ſingen lernen laſſen ſollen. 3. After which of the two sentences, Heute ging ich in die Stadt and

Heute bin ich in die Stadt gegangen, do you expect me to go on and tell what I did in the city? Explain.

(*c*) *Conversational Idioms. Memorize:* 1. Das sind die schönsten Blumen, die ich je gesehen habe. 2. Je fleißiger wir arbeiten, desto mehr lernen wir; das müssen Sie zugeben. 3. Sie haben etwas Weißes in die Tasche gesteckt; reichen

55. The Suspended Tramway at Barmen-Elberfeld. — One of Germany's engineering triumphs.

Sie's mir. 4. Er hätte auf allem bestehen sollen, was er beschlossen hatte. 5. Der Lehrer sagte, er habe zuerst gedacht, daß der Satz richtig sei. 6. Nun, das hätten Sie früher tun können.

292. (*a*) 1. After he had decided to pass the summer in Berlin, he ought to have insisted on going there (§ 149, 1).

2. Did it ever occur to you that you might not pass the examination? 3. We have been here all summer; but next year we shall pass in Germany. 4. Did you ever see a girl who could speak so fast? 5. She insisted that there was no reason why she should receive her oldest friends first. 6. Well, isn't that the best way to decide it?

56. A GERMAN WARSHIP IN THE KIEL CANAL. — This canal connects the North Sea and the Baltic, making it unnecessary for German ships to sail around Denmark.

(*b*) 1. Those are not the handkerchiefs I ordered; mine were not so large as these. 2. There was something strange in the speech he made, but of course we had to agree that it was good. 3. You ought to have put your book on the table where the lamp was; then you could have continued your story. 4. He spoke as if he didn't know

a shorter way through the wood. 5. After we had all decided that there was no reason why he should speak, he insisted on making a speech. 6. It is true he was a good speaker, but his speech consisted of nothing but philosophy and we did not like it very well.

(*c*) *Before the Tennis.* — "What's the matter? I've been standing here a whole hour. Why didn't you come before?"

"I should think it would have occurred to you that I might be late. Did you ever come the long way past the old school?"

"It's true I never came that way, but that is no reason why I should have to wait for you forever. Next time I won't wait."

"Oh, yes, you will (§ 237, 1)! It seems strange to me that you should be so angry at me the first time I am late. You speak as if you had never done anything bad yourself."

"Well, I agree that I did not speak courteously at first, but I was tired, and I didn't like the way you kept me waiting (let me wait)."

"I agree with you that I ought to have come a shorter way, but half an hour passed before I noticed how late it was. Excuse me this time and I'll never do it again."

"All right! Shall we begin our game?"

PART II.

PART II.

CHAPTER I.

COMPOSITION OF LETTERS.

293. Introduction. — As to *content*, German letters are like English: one writes what one wishes to say. As to *form*, the Germans, like the Americans, break all rules for date, address, and ending, in letters to intimate friends. But when writing to acquaintances, and especially to strangers, one should follow the rules.

Below are given the commonest forms of dating, addressing, and closing. They range from the most intimate to the most formal. Illustrations of these styles may be seen in the German letters on pages 236, 238, and 241. The one on page 236 is intimate; on page 238, friendly; on page 241, business. Germans usually write the German script, although they can all read English script.

Note. — Many American students have found pleasure and profit in corresponding with German students. Those who wish to exchange letters in this way (each writing in the language of the other, or each using his native tongue) can make arrangements by having *their teachers* write to Professor Dr. Martin Hartmann, Fechnerstr. 6, Leipzig, Germany. The conditions under which the correspondence is arranged are contained in the "Rules for Scholars' International Correspondence," copies of which may be had gratis from Allyn and Bacon, Boston, New York, or Chicago.

294. The Date. — German *dates* always follow the order: day, month, year. Hannover, 14. 2. 1912; Berlin, 13. IV. 1913; Dresden, d. 18. Mai 1914; Chicago, den 17.

Hannover, 12. Mai 1912
Eichstr. 14 III

Lieber Paul!

Welch guter Einfall, Deinem Buche einige Worte über das Briefschreiben beizufügen! Betone besonders den deutschen Schluß eines Briefes. Unsere amerikanischen Schüler verschicken meistens „ihre Liebe" am Schluß ihrer Briefe; während wir Deutschen bekanntlich sparsamer damit sind und uns mit „freundlichen Grüßen" begnügen. Mit solchen bleibe ich für Deine liebe Frau und Dich selbst

Deine Freundin A. Sannemann

Jan. 1915; Boston, den 23sten Nov. 1916. Germans very rarely write the day of the week, nor do they usually spell the name of the month in full.

295. The Address. — The common *address* between friends is: Lieber Karl, Liebe Anna, more rarely, Mein lieber or Meine liebe. Then follow, increasing in formality: Lieber Herr Braun! Lieber Herr Doktor! (always address a German by his title); Sehr geehrter Herr Schmidt (geehrter alone is bad form); Sehr geehrte gnädige Frau! Sehr geehrte Frau Professor! (to the wife of a professor); Sehr geehrter Herr! (the commonest form of address); Verehrter Herr Direktor! Verehrter Herr! (very respectful).

In *business letters* it is sufficient to write the name of the person or firm, followed on the same line by in and the name of the city. Then comes the body of the letter without the equivalent of our *Dear Sir:*

München, 15. 6. 1914.

Herrn A. Wertheim in Berlin!

In Beantwortung Ihres werten Schreibens vom 12. d. M. (§ 365) teile ich Ihnen ergebenst mit, daß, etc.

Hochachtungsvoll

296. The Close. — There are many *ways of closing* a letter. For intimate friends, Dein or Deine suffices; for less intimate friends, Ihr or Ihre; for acquaintances, Hochachtungsvoll, Hochachtungsvoll und ergebenst, and Mit vorzüglicher Hochachtung form a series ranging from respectful to very respectful. No comma or other

Berlin, d. 19ten Mai 1912.

Sehr geehrter Herr Bacon!

Falls Sie einen Brief schreiben wollen, der nicht gerade an intime Freunde gerichtet ist, werden Sie stets die gute Form wahren, wenn Sie meine oben gebrauchte Anrede benutzen und den Brief mit dem Schlusse: „Hochachtungsvoll" versehen.

Mit verbindlichem Gruße
bin ich
Hedwig Klatt.

punctuation follows these words, even though the name is written on the line below.

Note. — Germans rarely *send love;* instead they prefer greetings, Grüße. In signing a letter *Your loving son*, the participle in German must have an object: Dein Dich liebender Sohn. In a letter the singular Du, Dein, Dich, and the plural Ihr, Euer, and Euch, must always be written with a capital, as well as the formal Sie and Ihr.

297. Summary. — In writing to intimate friends the form makes little difference, except that all pronouns of the second person must be capitalized. With acquaintances and strangers, when in doubt about the form, use the following:

New York, d. 10. Okt. 1917.

Sehr geehrter Herr!

Hochachtungsvoll

298. The Envelope. — On the *envelope* the word (An) Herrn, Frau, or Fräulein is usually written above and a bit to the left of the name. Always give titles, but they may be abbreviated with the exception of Herrn, Frau, and Fräulein: Herrn Prof. Dr. Friedrich Kluge, Herrn Geheimrat Prof. Dr. Erich Schmidt. Germans usually underscore the name of the city, and write the street followed by the number on the line below, instead of using the opposite English arrangement.

Herrn Geheimrat
Prof. Dr. M. Lenz,
Berlin W. 30.
Augsburger Str. 39II.

In the upper left-hand corner, or on the back of the envelope, may be put the writer's name and address preceded by the letters Abſ. for der Abſender (*sender*). In large cities the name of the subdivision and substation are usually given. Thus the address above means that Dr. Lenz lives near Substation "30" of Subdivision "West," in Berlin. Sometimes the number of the story is added as a little Roman exponent to the street number, 45^{II} and 68^{III} meaning up two and three flights respectively ("second" or "third flat").

299. The Street. — German *street names* deserve special attention, although German use is far from uniform.[1] At the corners of Lützow and Potsdamer streets in Berlin are four signs; two read Lützow Str. and two read Lützowſtr. This same condition is true on countless corners in nearly all large German cities, as the Germans seldom follow the rules consistently. The rules are as follows: (1) When the name of a street is a *single noun*, the word Straße or Platz is united with it without a hyphen: Friedrichſtraße, Wilhelmplatz. (2) When the name is a *compound noun*, its different parts are joined by hyphens and it is also joined by a hyphen to the word Straße or Platz, which is then written with a capital: Martin-Luther-Straße, Viktoria-Luiſe-Platz. (3) When the name is an *adjective*, the word Straße or Platz is written separate: Leipziger Straße, Potsdamer Platz. (4) But when the *adjective modifies a noun*, the adjective is writ-

[1] For discussions of street names, see Duden's "Orthographisches Wörterbuch," p. xi; Wustmann's "Allerhand Sprachdummheiten," pp. 176–182.

Linden-Hannover,
10. 5. 1912.

Sehr geehrter Herr Bacon!

Wie ich von meiner Kollegin, Fräulein Sannemann, höre, haben Sie eine englisch-deutsche Grammatik und ein Konversationsbuch herausgegeben.

Ich ersuche Sie höflichst, mir von jedem ein Exemplar unter Postnachnahme zuzusenden und zeichne

hochachtungsvoll

Th. Möser, Lehrer
a. d. Bürgerschule-Petristr.

ten separate, while noun and street are written as in (1): Neue Winterfeldstraße. The approved abbreviation for Straße is Str., not St., and for Platz, Pl.

CHAPTER II.

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

300. Introduction. — German is the richest of all languages in compound words. Not only does it compound many words which in English are written separate, as die Hauptſache, *the main thing*, die Luftſchifffahrtsaktiengeſellſchaft, *the airship passage stock company*, and so on, but it is particularly varied in its roots, prefixes, and suffixes.

Germans are also fond of coining words for new ideas out of German roots, prefixes, and suffixes, where English Anglicizes a foreign word. Sometimes this new coinage is accepted by the people: der Fernſprecher is as common as das Telephon, die Fahrkarte is as common as das Billet, *ticket*. Sometimes it is rejected: efforts to introduce die Tunke for die Sauce, *sauce*, and das Mundtuch for die Serviette, *napkin*, seem to have failed. When a foreign word insists on keeping its individuality, it is often Germanized by force: der Zirkus, *circus*, die Keks, *cakes*.

Roots.

301. Ablaut. — German roots often vary their vowel sounds so that it is hard to identify the original root: ſchließen, das Schloß, der Schluß; der Bund, die Binde, das Band. This altering of the root vowel, called *Ablaut*, is the most important change that can take place in a root. English has it too: *sing*, *sang*, *sung*; *swim*, *swam*, *swum*.

Note. — Besides *der Umlaut* and *der Ablaut*, German has three other convenient words, relating to the position of a vowel in a word or syllable: *der Anlaut*, the beginning sound, *der Inlaut*, the middle sound, and *der Auslaut*, the end sound, referring respectively to the beginning, middle, and end of a word or a syllable. It is much shorter to say that certain things are true of vowels "*im Anlaut*, *im Inlaut*, or *im Auslaut*," than "*at the beginning of a word or syllable*," and so on.

302. Derivation of Nouns from Verb Roots. — Nouns derived from verb roots are usually of one of three kinds: (1) an *active object*, performing the action of the verb; (2) a *passive object*, on which the action of the verb is performed; or (3) an *abstract noun*, denoting the condition or action of the verb.

(1) Das Band (binden), *something that binds.*
Der Bogen (biegen), *something that bends.*
Der Fluß (fließen), *something that flows.*

(2) Der Bruch (brechen), *something that is broken.*
Der Bund (binden), *something that is bound.*
Der Trank (trinken), *something that is drunk.*

(3) Der Flug (fliegen), *action* or *condition of flying.*
Der Gang (gehen), *action* or *condition of going.*
Der Trunk (trinken), *action* or *condition of drinking.*

303. Below are given the commonest verbal roots from which nouns are derived by root changes (Ablaut).

Biegen, *to bend;* der Bogen, *bow, arch;* die Bucht, *bay.*
Binden, *to bind;* der Band, *bound volume;* das Band, *ribbon;* die Binde, *bandage;* der Bund, *bond, union.*
Brechen, *to break;* der Bruch, *breach.*

Finden, *to find;* der Fund, *find, cache.*
Fliegen, *to fly;* der Flug, *flight;* der Flügel, *wing.*
Fließen, *to flow;* der Fluß, *river;* das Floß, *raft.*
Geben, *to give;* die Gabe, *gift;* (das Gift, *poison*).
Gehen, *to go;* der Gang, *gait, walk.*
Gießen, *to pour;* der Guß, *casting* (*of metal*).
Graben, *to dig;* das Grab, *grave;* die Grube, *grotto;* die Gruft, *vault;* der Graben, *ditch.*
Greifen, *to grasp;* der Griff; *handle.*
Klingen, *to sound;* der Klang, *sound;* die Klingel, *bell.*
Liegen, *to lie;* die Lage, *situation, the way a thing lies.*
Meſſen, *to measure;* das Maß, *measure;* die Maß, (*quart*) *measure.*
Schießen, *to shoot;* der Schuß, *shot;* der Schoß, *shoot, twig.*
Schlagen, *to strike;* der Schlag, *stroke;* die Schlacht, *battle.*
Schließen, *to shut;* das Schloß, *lock; castle;* der Schluß, *end;* der Schlüſſel, *key.*
Schneiden, *to cut;* der Schnitt, *cut;* der Schnitz, *slice.*
Sehen, *to see;* die Sicht, *sight.*
Setzen, *to set;* der Satz, *sentence.*
Singen, *to sing;* der Sang, der Geſang, *song.*
Sitzen, *to sit;* der Sitz, *seat.*
Sprechen, *to speak;* die Sprache, *language;* der Spruch, *saying;* das Geſpräch, *conversation.*
Springen, *to spring;* der Sprung, *leap.*
Stehen, *to stand;* der Stand, *standing;* die Stunde, *hour.*
Treiben, *to drive;* der Trieb, *impulse.*
Trinken, *to drink;* der Trank and der Trunk, *drink.*
Werfen, *to throw;* der Wurf, *the throw*(*ing*).
Wiegen, (1) *to weigh,* (2) *to rock;* (1) die Wage, *scale;* das Gewicht, *weight;* (2) die Wiege, *cradle;* die Woge, *wave.*

Ziehen, *to draw;* der Zug, *train; feature;* die Zucht, *breed(ing).*
Zwingen, *to compel;* der Zwang, *compulsion.*

Prefixes.

304. German *prefixes* may be divided into two classes, *verbal* and *general.* The verbal prefixes may also be classed as inseparable prefixes, which were treated in Lesson XVII (p. 106), and separable, which were treated in Lesson XVIII (p. 114). Of the general prefixes the most important are: erz-, ge-, miß-, un-, ur-. They are used chiefly with nouns.

(1) Erz- (English *arch-*) means *leader, chief;* der Erzbiſchof, *archbishop;* der Erzherzog, *archduke;* der Erzlügner, *arch-liar;* der Erzſchelm, *arrant knave.*

(2) Ge- (no English equivalent) forms (*a*) *collectives* out of noun stems, or (*b*) *verbal nouns* from verb stems.

(*a*) Das Gebirge, *mountain chain* (der Berg); die Gebrüder, *brothers* (der Bruder); das Gefieder, *plumage* (die Feder); das Gejubel, *jubilation* (der Jubel); das Gemäuer, *walls* (die Mauer); die Geſchwiſter, pl., *brothers and sisters* (die Schweſter).

(*b*) Das Gebell, *barking* (bellen); das Gebet, *prayer* (beten); der Gedanke, *thought* (denken); das Gedicht, *poem* (dichten); das Geheul, *howling* (heulen); das Geläute, *ringing* (läuten); das Geſchenk, *present* (ſchenken).

(3) Miſſ(e)- (English *mis-* or *dis-*) means *wrong.* It has been treated with verbs in § 139. It is also used regularly with nouns from which, together with their verbal roots, adjectives are sometimes formed. Thus we see also adjectives with the prefix miß.

Die Miſſetat, *misdeed* (die Tat); die Mißgunſt, *envy* (die Gunſt, *favor*); mißgünſtig, *envious*; das Mißtrauen, *distrust* (das Vertrauen); mißtrauiſch, *distrustful*; die Mißhandlung, *ill usage*; das Mißvergnügen, *displeasure* (das Vergnügen); mißvergnügt, *displeased*.

(4) Un= (English *im-* or *in-*, sometimes *mis-*) usually reverses the meaning of a word: unanſtändig, *improper* (anſtändig); unartig, *naughty* (artig); unbequem, *uncomfortable* (bequem); unbeſtimmt, *indefinite* (beſtimmt); der Undank, *ingratitude* (der Dank); unendlich, *infinite* (endlich); der Unſinn, *nonsense* (der Sinn); der Unfriede, *discord* (der Friede); die Ungeduld, *impatience* (die Geduld); das Unglück, *misfortune* (das Glück).

(5) Ur= (no English equivalent) comes from the Gothic *us*, *ur*, meaning *out*, and denotes *origin* or *source*. It may also intensify the meaning of a word: Uralt, *very old* (alt); die Urahne, *great-grandmother* (die Ahne); urkomiſch, *very funny* (komiſch); urplötzlich, *all of a sudden* (plötzlich); der Urſprung, *source* (der Sprung); das Urvolk, *original* or *primitive people* (das Volk); der Urwald, *primeval forest* (der Wald).

Suffixes.

305. A great many German words are formed by adding *suffixes* to various roots. The most important groups of words formed in this way are: (1) nouns, (2) adjectives, and (3) verbs.

Derivation of Nouns by Suffix. — Nouns formed by suffix may be divided into two classes: *concrete* and *abstract*.

306. The commonest suffixes by which *concrete nouns* are formed are: chen, lein, er, in, and ling.

(1) Chen and lein form neuter diminutives out of other nouns: das Bäumchen, *little tree* (der Baum); das Söhnchen, *little son* (der Sohn); das Mädchen, *little girl* (die Magd); das Bächlein, *brooklet* (der Bach); das Fräulein, *Miss, little woman* (die Frau); das Büchlein, *little book* (das Buch).

Note that the root vowel takes Umlaut when possible.

(2) Er forms masculine agents from

(*a*) Nouns: der Fleiſcher, *butcher* (das Fleiſch); der Gärtner, *gardener* (der Garten); der Töpfer, *potter* (der Topf).

(*b*) Verbs: der Führer, *guide* (führen); der Leſer, *reader* (leſen); der Schreiber, *clerk* (ſchreiben).

Note that the root vowel usually takes Umlaut.

(3) In forms feminines from masculines: die Königin, *queen* (der König); die Lehrerin, *lady teacher* (der Lehrer); die Löwin, *lioness* (der Löwe).

(4) Ling forms masculines with varying meaning from

(*a*) Nouns: der Günſtling, *favorite* (die Gunſt); der Sprößling, *scion* (der Sproß, *sprout*); der Däumling, *hop-o'-my-thumb* (der Daumen, *thumb*).

(*b*) Adjectives: der Fremdling, *stranger* (fremd); der Frühling, *spring* (früh); der Jüngling, *youth* (jung).

(*c*) Verbs: der Findling, *foundling* (finden); der Lehrling, *apprentice* (lehren); der Säugling, *suckling* (ſaugen).

(*d*) Numerals: der Erſtling, *first fruits* (erſt); der Zwilling, *twin* (zwei); der Drilling, *triplet* (drei).

Note that the root vowel takes Umlaut when possible.

307. The commonest suffixes by which *abstract nouns* are formed are: e, ei, heit, keit, ſchaft, and ung.

(1) E forms abstract feminines from

(*a*) Adjectives: die Härte, *hardness, cruelty* (hart); die Größe, *size* (groß); die Länge, *length* (lang).

(*b*) Verb Roots: die Bitte, *request* (bitten); die Liebe, *love* (lieben); die Lüge, *lie* (lügen).

Note that the root vowel takes Umlaut when possible.

(2) Ei forms feminines of various meanings — many have become concrete — from

(*a*) Nouns: die Bäckerei, *bakery* (der Bäcker); die Fiſcherei, *fishery* (der Fiſcher); die Sklaverei, *slavery* (der Sklave).

(*b*) Verbs: die Neckerei, *chaffing* (necken, *to tease*); die Plauderei, *chattering* (plaudern); die Schmeichelei, *flattery* (ſchmeicheln).

(3) Heit forms abstract feminines from

(*a*) Nouns: die Gottheit, *godhead* (der Gott); die Kindheit, *childhood* (das Kind); die Menſchheit, *humanity* (der Menſch).

(*b*) Adjectives: die Dummheit, *stupidity* (dumm); die Einheit, *unity* (ein); die Weisheit, *wisdom* (weiſe).

(4) Keit forms abstract feminines from adjectives which have endings like ig, lich, ſam, bar, etc.: die Dankbarkeit, *gratitude* (dankbar); die Freundlichkeit, *kindness* (freundlich); die Duldſamkeit, *patience* (duldſam).

(5) Schaft forms abstract feminines, chiefly from nouns denoting persons: die Bürgerſchaft, *citizens* (der

Bürger); die Dienerſchaft, *servants* (der Diener); die Knechtſchaft, *serfdom* (der Knecht).

(6) Ung forms abstract feminines, chiefly from verbs: die Erzählung, *story* (erzählen); die Kleidung, *clothing* (kleiden); die Zeichnung, *drawing* (zeichnen).

308. Derivation of Adjectives by Suffix. — The commonest suffixes by which adjectives are formed are: bar, en, haft, ig, iſch, lich, and ſam.

(1) Bar forms adjectives from

(*a*) Nouns: dankbar, *grateful* (der Dank); ehrbar, *honorable* (die Ehre); furchtbar, *terrible* (die Furcht).

(*b*) Verbs: brauchbar, *usable* (brauchen); eßbar, *eatable* (eſſen); lesbar, *legible* (leſen).

(2) En forms adjectives, usually of material, from nouns: eichen, *oaken* (die Eiche); golden, *golden* (das Gold); wollen, *woolen* (die Wolle).

(3) Haft forms adjectives from

(*a*) Nouns: ekelhaft, *disgusting* (der Ekel); meiſterhaft, *masterful* (der Meiſter); ſündhaft, *sinful* (die Sünde).

(*b*) Adjectives: boshaft, *malicious* (böſe, *bad*); krankhaft, *sickly* (krank); wahrhaft, *real* (wahr, *true*).

(4) Ig forms adjectives, chiefly from nouns: günſtig, *favorable* (die Gunſt); mutig, *courageous* (der Mut); ſonnig, *sunny* (die Sonne).

(5) Iſch forms adjectives, chiefly from proper nouns: amerikaniſch, *American* (der Amerikaner); franzöſiſch, *French* (der Franzoſe); homeriſch, *Homeric* (der Homer).

(6) Lich forms adjectives from

(*a*) Nouns: glücklich, *happy* (das Glück); menſchlich, *human* (der Menſch); täglich, *daily* (der Tag).

(*b*) Adjectives: fröhlich, *joyous* (froh); länglich, *lengthy* (lang); rötlich, *reddish* (rot).

(*c*) Verbs: begreiflich, *comprehensible* (begreifen): fraglich, *questionable* (fragen); häßlich, *hateful, ugly* (haſſen).

(7) Sam forms adjectives from

(*a*) Nouns: furchtſam, *timid* (die Furcht); gewaltſam, *violent* (die Gewalt); ſittſam, *modest* (die Sitte, *usage*).

(*b*) Verbs: biegſam, *pliable* (biegen); gehorſam, *obedient* (gehorchen); ſtrebſam, *assiduous* (ſtreben, *to strive*).

309. Derivation of Verbs by Suffix. — The commonest suffixes by which verbs are formed are: en, ern, ieren, and igen.

(1) En forms verbs from

(*a*) Nouns: bürſten, *to brush* (die Bürſte); fiſchen, *to fish* (der Fiſch); küſſen, *to kiss* (der Kuß).

(*b*) Adjectives: härten, *to harden* (hart); plätten, *to iron flat* (platt, *flat*); ſtärken, *to strengthen* (ſtark).

(*c*) Roots of other verbs: drängen, trans., *to crowd* (dringen, intrans., *to force one's way*); fällen, *to fell* (fallen); tränken, *to water* (trinken).

(2) Ern forms verbs chiefly from adjectives. With comparatives it may be considered as simply -n added to the comparative root. A prefix — commonly ver- — often precedes the root: verbeſſern, *to correct* (beſſer);

verlängern, *to prolong* (länger); vergrößern, *to enlarge* (groß).

(3) Ieren forms verbs, chiefly from foreign words: amüſieren, *to entertain* (French, *amuser*); deklinieren, *to decline a word* (French, *décliner*); regieren, *to rule* (Latin *regere*).

(4) Igen forms verbs from

(*a*) Nouns: huldigen, *to do homage* (die Huld, *grace*); kreuzigen, *to crucify* (das Kreuz); ſteinigen, *to stone* (der Stein).

(*b*) Adjectives (when an adjective has the ending ig, this class of verbs is not to be distinguished from that in 1): befeſtigen, *to fasten* (feſt); beſchönigen, *to beautify* (ſchön); ſättigen, *to satisfy* (ſatt).

Compound Words.

310. German compounds always consist of two main parts: (1) the modifying element and (2) the basic word. The basic word comes last: blaugrün, *bluish green;* grünblau, *greenish blue.* Either element may belong to almost any part of speech: haushalten, *to keep house;* der Nimmerſatt, *glutton.* And both elements may themselves be compounds: die Wagenbauwerkſtatt, *workshop for building wagons.*

Compounds may be any part of speech; (nouns take their gender from the last element): das Tiſchbein (noun), *table leg;* dasſelbe (pronoun), *the same;* hellblau (adjective), *light blue;* wahrſagen (verb), *to prophesy;* bergan (adverb), *uphill;* anſtatt (preposition), *instead of;* nachdem (conjunction), *after;* potztauſend (interjec-

tion) *Great Scott!* While there are compounds in all parts of speech, the most important are (1) Nouns, (2) Adjectives, and (3) Verbs.

311. Nouns. — A noun may be compounded with

(1) Nouns: das Federbett, *feather bed;* der Fingerhut, *thimble;* das Goldstück, *gold piece;* die Hauptstadt, *capital city.*

(2) Pronouns, usually selbst: der Selbstmord, *suicide;* der Selbstlaut, *vowel;* die Selbstsucht, *selfishness.*

(3) Adjectives: der Blödsinn, *nonsense;* das Deutschland, *Germany;* die Großmutter, *grandmother.*

(4) Verbs: das Fahrrad, *bicycle;* die Füllfeder, *fountain pen;* die Wanderlust, *love of travel.*

(5) Adverbs: die Außenseite, *outside;* das Ebenbild, *image;* die Jetztzeit, *the present time.*

(6) Prepositions: das Mitleid, *pity;* die Nachwelt, *posterity;* der Umweg, *roundabout way.*

312. Adjectives. — An adjective may be compounded with

(1) Nouns: bildschön, *pretty as a picture;* seekrank, *seasick;* silberhell, *clear as crystal.*

(2) Adjectives: bittersüß, *bitter sweet;* gutmütig, *good-natured;* grünblau, *greenish blue.*

(3) Verbs: bemerkenswert, *worthy of note;* lernbegierig, *eager to learn;* merkwürdig, *remarkable.*

(4) Prepositions: aufrecht, *upright;* außerordentlich, *extraordinary;* vorlaut, *forward, pert.*

313. Verbs. — A verb may be compounded with

(1) Nouns: haushalten, *to keep house;* ſtattfinden, *to take place;* teilnehmen, *to take part.*

(2) Adjectives: großtun, *to swagger;* liebäugeln, *to ogle;* vollenden, *to finish.*

(3) Adverbs: hingehen, *to go away;* wiederkommen, *to come again;* zurückkehren, *to turn back.*

(4) Prepositions: anziehen, *to put on;* mitgehen, *to go along with;* nachſitzen, *to stay after school.*

Derivations through the Latin.

314. Students of Latin may be interested in comparing certain English words, derived from Latin, with their German synonyms. For many English words derived directly, prefix and root, from the Latin, the German equivalent may be found by translating the Latin word, part by part, into German. A few illustrations are given below; students should be on the watch for others.

(1) Nouns:

Attraction, die Anziehung (ad, an + trahere, ziehen).
Benefit, die Wohltat (bene, wohl + facere, tun).
Eruption, der Ausbruch (e, aus + rumpere, brechen).
Pretence, der Vorwand (prae, vor + tendere, wenden).
Resonance, der Widerhall (re, wider + sonare, hallen).

Note. — Examples from the Greek are rare. The best one is *sympathy*, das Mitleid (σύν, mit + πάθος, das Leid).

(2) Adjectives:

Accessible, zugänglich (ad, zu + cedere, gehen).
Illicit, unerlaubt (in, un + licere, erlaubt ſein).

Immortal, unſterblich (in, un + mori, ſterben).
Retrograde, rückgängig (retro, zurück + gradi, gehen).
Subsequent, nachfolgend (sub, nach + sequi, folgen).

(3) Verbs:

Compose, zuſammenſetzen (con, zuſammen + ponere, ſetzen).
Contract, zuſammenziehen (con, zuſammen + trahere, ziehen).
Exclude, ausſchließen (ex, aus + claudere, ſchließen).
Expel, austreiben (ex, aus + pellere, treiben).
Extract, ausziehen (ex, aus + trahere, ziehen).
Import, einführen (in, ein + portare, führen).
Prescribe, vorſchrieben (prae, vor + scribere, ſchreiben).
Remit, zurückſchicken (re, zurück + mittere, ſchicken).
Retract, zurückziehen (re, zurück + trahere, ziehen).
Survive, überleben (super, über + vivere, leben).

CHAPTER III.

COMPOSITION OF SOUNDS. PRONUNCIATION AND PHONETICS.

Introduction.

315. A German Accent. — When we hear newly arrived Germans speaking English, we are often amused at what we call their "broken" speech. Do we ever stop to think that our German is just as broken and amusing to them? When we speak German readily or recite a poem glibly, it rarely occurs to us that a German would probably have difficulty in understanding us. To acquire a correct German accent, *we must study and imitate* the very peculiarities of enunciation which make a German's broken English sound so quaint to us.

The simplest way to approach a good German accent is to make believe we are telling a German dialect story, and to do this *when we read or speak German.* We must also get rid of all false modesty, for trying to mimic German sounds is not half so ridiculous as giving German letters their American sounds.

Several years ago an American student in Germany tried one day to make fun of the speech of his German fellow-students, rolling his *r*'s, hissing his *s*'s, and jerking out the separate words, instead of speaking in his former careful, easy, American way. He threw himself into the German with might and main, just to show them how queer it sounded to him. To his surprise he

was complimented upon his progress in pronunciation. The Germans had noticed, not that he was exaggerating, but that he was approaching a good German accent.

316. The Best German. — There is as much difference in the speech of natives of Berlin, Hanover, Dresden, and Munich, as in that of natives of New York, Boston, Chicago, and New Orleans. It is not desirable to imitate any one too closely. In German, as in English, those who speak best are those whose speech cannot be identified with any particular city or province. The following hints are based upon observation of various accents — especially those of North Germany. They are meant for conversational German, not for declamation.

These hints treat German "as she is spoke" by cultivated Germans to-day, not as one hears it in formal declamation. For formal German, see *Benedix*, Der mündliche Vortrag, published by Weber, Leipzig, and *Siebs*, Deutsche Bühnenaussprache, published by Ahn, Cologne. As a matter of fact, the language of the stage, even in heroic pieces, is much nearer colloquial German than Siebs' book indicates. Teachers wanting a more detailed discussion of pronunciation than that given here are referred to: *Viëtor's* Phonetik and Phonetische Studien, *Sievers'* Phonetik, *Hoffmann's* Lautwissenschaft, *Bremer's* Phonetik, *Klinghardt's* Artikulationsübungen, and the similar works of *Trautmann* and *Beyer*. Not only are these books too detailed for pupils, but they were written for Germans, not for Americans.

317. The Chief Difficulties. — As a rule, German sounds for which English has nothing to correspond — like **ch**, **ö**, and **ü** — are well mastered by American pupils. The chief difficulties are with sounds like **l**, **r**, and long **e**, because we wrongly assume that these letters represent English sounds. Pupils prepare themselves for the difficulties offered by such words as das Buch, die Mühe, or schön, and take pains in pronouncing them. The

result is that they are pronounced much nearer the true German way than words which are thought to offer no difficulty, like alle, lehren, or die Seele.

The things that are most distinctively German — neglect of which marks an American most clearly when he speaks with a German — are: (1) *pure vowel sounds*, especially ö and e, §§ 318 ff.; (2) *the diphthongs*, §§ 323–324; (3) *the glottal catch*, §§ 326 ff.; (4) *the consonants* l and r, §§ 336–337; (5) *syllable stress*, §§ 338 ff.; and (6) *the ending* en in certain special cases, § 343.

Note. — Read § 344, Conclusion. It is not intended that teachers shall present this whole chapter to their pupils. It is best to treat only such parts as teachers feel will be most readily grasped.

Vowels.

318. Quality of Sound. — German vowels are simple, pure; American vowels are usually slurred. There is almost always an *uh*-sound after an American vowel. This is caused by the moving of the tongue or the lower jaw. We pronounce *ō* as *ō-o͞o*, while a German keeps tongue, lips, and lower jaw in exactly the same position throughout the entire sound. We pronounce *art*, *school*, *rose*, *a-ert*, *schoo-ul*, *ro-ooze*, where a German makes pure, simple sounds of die Art, die Schule, die Rose. The English sounds are of course exaggerated here, the better to illustrate the tendency.

319. Position of Tongue and Lips. — In order to learn to keep tongue, lips, and lower jaw rigid during the sound of German vowels, it is important to know the exact position of these parts for the making of the various vowel sounds. Articulate carefully the vowels in

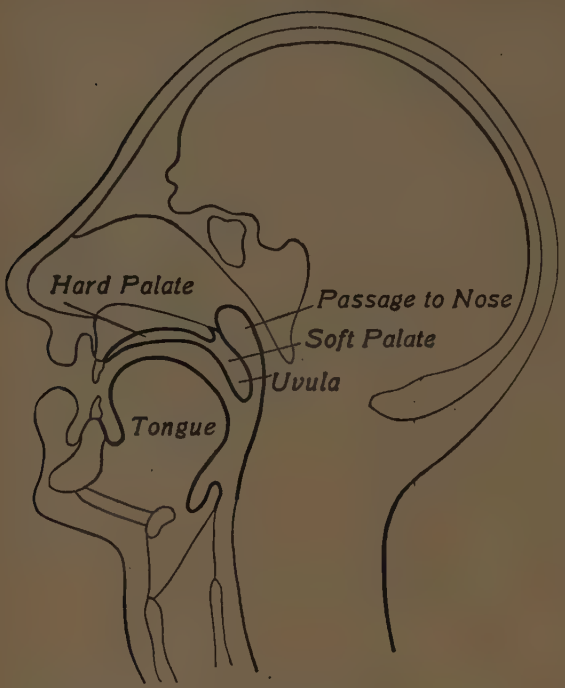


FIG. 1. — The Tongue-position for **i**.

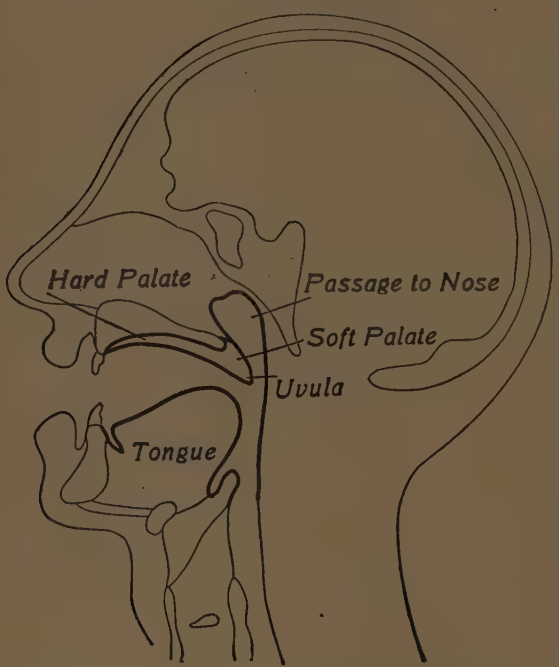


FIG. 2. — The Tongue-position for **a**.

feed, *far*, *food*. For the vowel sound in *feed* the lips are drawn back as in a smile; in *far* they are in their normal position of rest; in *food* they are (or should be) thrust forward as in a pout. And the tongue is raised and thrown forward in *feed*, is normal in *far*, and is drawn back in *food*. These positions are illustrated in Figures 1, 2, and 3.

The German vowel sounds form a sequence **i**, **e**, **a**, **o**, **u**, beginning with a sound in the front of the mouth and running to the back. Notice the position of the tongue for the series as graphically shown in Figure 4, and remember that it must not change position during each

sound. A good way to keep the tongue steady is to rest its tip consciously against the base of the lower teeth. A good way to keep the lower jaw steady is to hold a lead pencil between the teeth.

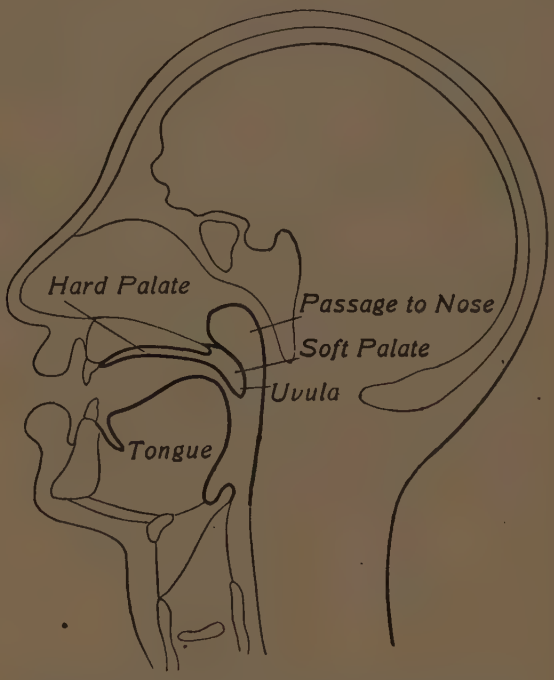


FIG. 3. — The Tongue-position for **u**.

320. Length of Sound. — Unlike English vowels, each German vowel has only one kind of sound. This sound varies in length. The five German vowels may be long or short. (1) They are usually *short* when followed by two or more consonants or a double consonant: das Waſſer, das Bett, der Fiſch, die Wolle, der Hund. (2) Otherwise they are *long*, especially when doubled or followed by h: der Vater, das Beet, ihnen, wohl, tun. (3) Some monosyllables, mostly indeclinable, have a short vowel before a single consonant: an, ab, man, in, es, ob, der, des.

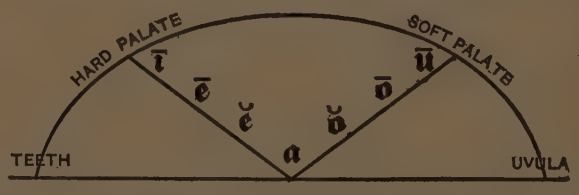


FIG. 4. — Diagram of the Tongue-positions for German vowels.

The *chief difference* between the pronunciation of long and short vowels in German is that long ones are

pronounced less vigorously than the short. The short vowels are uttered with a tenseness — they are almost *coughed* — which clips them short and carries the sound immediately to the following consonant. This will be more thoroughly treated under "syllable stress," §§ 338–340.

321. Pronunciation. — If we remember not to move tongue or lower jaw during vowel sounds, German vowels offer little difficulty, except in the case of long **e**. (1) The two sounds of **a** are like the English *a*'s in *aha* (never as in *fat* or *fate*); (2) the two **i** sounds like *i* in *pin* and *machine* (never as in *fine*); (3) the two **u** sounds like *u* in *put* and *truly* (never as in *mule* or *fun*); (4) the two **o** sounds like the two *o*'s in *oho*.

Note. — In the best German schools pupils learning to pronounce English long *o* are made to give a long *oo*-sound after the *o*-sound. They are made to say *ho-oom* (*home*), *wo-oo* (*woe*), and so on, because they naturally make a pure o-sound with no motion of tongue or jaw.

(5) German **e** has three sounds: short, obscure, and long. When short it is like *e* in *met*, when obscure like *e* in *golden*. But long **e** makes trouble, as it has no English equivalent. It is between *a* in *mate* and *ee* in *meet*. It is made with the teeth almost together, the lips drawn back as in a smile, and the tongue almost as high as in the **i** position (Fig. 1). It is a pure sound and has not the slur usually following English long *a*, as when we pronounce *name*, *nā-im*. Pronounce Ehre (not Ähre), Seele (not Säle), mehren (not Mähren), sehe (not sähe).

Note. — For the sound of **e** in the unaccented syllable **er**, see **r**, § 337, Note.

Vowels with Umlaut.

322. Umlaut. — When in Old and Middle High German (see §§ 354–355) a stem whose vowel was **a, o, u,** or **au** was followed by a suffix containing the vowel **i** (later **e**) the sound of the stem vowel[1] was modified, becoming more like the vowel in the ending; thus **a, o, u,** or **au** came to be spoken **ä, ö, ü,** or **äu** (O.H.G. fallu, fellis, fellit; M.H.G. valle, vellest, vellet; N.H.G. falle, fällſt, fällt). This change of sound was called *Umlaut* by Klopstock, and the great German philologist, Jakob Grimm, made this term current. Below are given the sounds of these Umlaut vowels:

(1) Short **ä** is like *e* in *met;* long **ä** is properly the same quality of sound, only longer. It is a pure sound, not like *a* in *late*, but more like the first *e* in *there*, or *ai* in *faith* when spoken with Irish brogue. In North Germany, however, it is coming to be spoken more and more like long **e** except to distinguish similar forms (see § 321, 5). Pronounce: die Männer, die Wälder; gähnen, wählen. Distinguish carefully: Ähre, Ehre; ſähe, ſehe.

(2) Short **ö** has the lips rounded as in short **o** and the tongue in the position for short **e** (*e* in *met*); long **ö** has the lips rounded in the position for long **o** (whistling position) and the tongue in the position for long **e** (Mehl). Pronounce: die Hölle, öffnen, die Höhle, die Öfen. Distinguish carefully: Hölle, helle; können, kennen; Höhlen, hehlen.

[1] The best English illustration of Umlaut is the difference we make in pronouncing the *o* in *woman*, when we speak the plural form, *women*. The change in the last vowel affects the sound of the first.

(3) Short **ü** has the lips rounded as in short **u** and the tongue in the position for short **i** (*i* in *pin*); long **ü** has the lips rounded as in long **u** (whistling position) and the tongue in the position for long **i** (*i* in *machine*). Pronounce: die Hütte, füllen, die Hüte, fühlen. Distinguish carefully: Küſſen, Kiſſen; Küſte, Kiſte; müſſen, miſſen.

(4) The diphthong **äu** is pronounced just like **eu**. See § 323, 3.

(5) Notice that in every case an Umlaut-vowel has the same lip position as the corresponding non-umlauted vowel, but the tongue is raised nearer the position for **i** (Fig. 1). As this **i** was originally the sound of the following syllable, we may say that the tongue began to prepare for the ending while pronouncing the vowel of the stem. Thus Umlaut may be called an assimilation of the stem vowel to the vowel of the ending.

Diphthongs.

323. Nature of the Diphthongs. — A diphthong is — properly speaking — a double sound. But we often speak of two vowels, when written together, as a diphthong, even when they are spoken as a single sound: *each*, *heart*, *heard*. Below are treated the three genuine diphthong sounds: **ai** (**ei**), **au**, and **eu** (**äu**).

German diphthongs differ from English chiefly in having the main emphasis on the second sound where English has it on the first. But there are also differences in the quality of the sounds.

(1) The diphthongs **ei** and **ai** are historically the same sound and are pronounced exactly alike in Ger-

man. Their sound is nearly like that of English *i* in *mine*, but English long *i* is a long *ah*-sound followed by a short *ee*-sound (*ä'-ee*), while German **ai** (**ei**) is a short **a**-sound followed by a longer **e**-sound (**a=ee'**). In German, after the short **a**-sound, the tongue does not bother to climb clear to the **i**-position (Fig. 1), but stays for the longer part of the diphthong in the **e**-position (Fig. 4): Das Ei, mein, der Hain, die Saite.

(2) The diphthong **au** is nearly like English *ow* in *how*, but English *ow* is a long *ah*-sound followed by a short *u*-sound (*ä'-o͝o*), while German **au** is a short **a**-sound followed by a longer **o**-sound (**a=oo'**). In German, after the short **a**-sound, the tongue does not bother to go way back into the **u**-position (Fig. 3), but stays for the longer part of the diphthong in the **o**-position (Fig. 4): Das Haus, der Raub, das Maul, aus.

(3) The diphthongs **eu** and **äu** are historically the same sound and are pronounced exactly alike in German. Their sound is nearly like that of English *oy* in *boy*, but English *oy* is a short *aw*-sound followed by a shorter *ĭ*-sound (*aw-ĭ*). German **eu** (**äu**) is a short **o**-sound followed by a longer **ö**-sound (**o=ö'**). In German, after the short **o**-sound, the lips keep the same rounded position and the tongue does not bother to climb clear to the **i**-position (Fig. 1), but stays for the longer part of the diphthong in the **e**-position (Fig. 4): Die Leute, heute, die Häute, die Säule.

324. Summary of the Differences. — Thus we see not only that German diphthong-sounds have the emphasis on the second part, where English emphasizes the first element, but that the second (longer) element of the

German diphthong is not so different from the first (short) element as in English. In other words, both the lip- and the tongue-positions for the second element of the German diphthong are nearer those of the first element, than in English. German diphthongs are also of shorter duration than English. They are not so long as a long vowel.

If we want to emphasize a claim to something we say: "That's mine" (*määää'een*), where a German says: „Das iſt mein" (măēēn'). When we are hurt, we say: "Ow" (*ääää'o͝o*), but a German says: „Au" (ăo͝o'). We also call: "Ship ahoy" (*a͞w'ĭ*), but a German in calling out the word for *hay*, says: „das Heu" (ŏö͞ö'). The best way to say this right is to think mainly of the second sound; the first will take care of itself.

Digraphs.

325. In English we have many double vowels for single sounds, as in the words, *each*, *heart*, *heard*, *believe*, *receive*, and so on. German has but few of these digraphs. They are **ie**, pronounced like long **i**; **aa**, pronounced like long **a**; **ee**, pronounced like long **e**; **oo**, pronounced like long **o**. All these digraphs are used merely to show by the spelling that a sound is long. They are employed usually where a simple vowel would naturally be short. Sie, viel, die Saat, der Saal, das Beet, das Meer, das Boot.

The Glottal Catch.

326. The "Catch" Proper. — Most Germans speak with the muscles of the chest and diaphragm tense. They seem to be holding their breath, as it were; there

is always pressure upon the bellows which furnishes the motive-power for speech. This tenseness or pressure accounts not only for the staccato effect and the impression of vigor and speed given by most spoken German, but also for the greater explosiveness of many German sounds. It is also the foundation of what is called the *glottal catch.*

When we say, "pooh!" the breath bursts through our lips in a little explosion. If we close our vocal chords, as we do our lips in "pooh," and then let the breath pop through them, we have what is known as a "glottal catch." There is nothing like it in English; the nearest approach is when we whisper "uh-uh" for "no." It is a little, jerky cough.

327. After a Consonant. — When we hear a German learning English the most striking thing about it is the choppy way he bites off the various syllables, especially those beginning with a vowel. In English conversation we carry over a consonant to a following vowel, even when they are in separate words: *not at all, odd or even.* A German comes to a full stop — closing his vocal chords — before words or syllables beginning with a vowel. The sound of the vowel is then preceded by the little jerky cough — the "glottal catch" — caused by the sudden bursting open of the vocal chords: *odd | or | even, not | at | all.*

Pronounce the following words, making a complete closure of the vocal chords after the prefix, and beginning the basic word with a glottal catch: ent|ehren, er|innern, miß|achten, ver|einen, ur|alt. Also: Es | iſt | ein | außer|ordentlich | un|artiges Kind.

328. After a Vowel. — When in English a vowel sound precedes an initial vowel — whether this begins a word or a syllable — we join the two by the sound of *w* (after *o* or *u*) or of *y* (after *e* or *i*). In rapid speech, *through-out*, *see it*, *I am* are pronounced *through-wout*, *see yit*, *I yam*. But a German comes to a full stop before the initial vowel sound, which he pronounces with a glottal catch: *through|out*, *see|it*, *I|am*.

Pronounce the following words, making a complete closure of the vocal chords after the prefix and beginning the basic word with a glottal catch: be|ob|achten, be|achten, ge|endet, ge|arbeitet. Also: Ich habe | eine | un|=angenehme | Antwort | erhalten.

329. Rule for the Glottal Catch. — It is hard to lay down an absolute rule for the glottal catch, as much depends upon individuals. In very rapid speech, especially in unaccented words and syllables, the glottal catch is sometimes omitted. But as such fluency is not acquired till after years of practice, it is best to follow the rule. *Except after the particles mentioned below, a glottal catch should precede every word or root syllable beginning with a vowel.*

When a German speaks English with a glottal catch it sounds queer to us, but no queerer than it sounds to a German when we say: *be-yo-bachten*, *be-yachten*, *ge-yendet*, and *ge-yarbeitet* instead of be|ob|achten, be|achten, ge|endet, and ge|arbeitet. Much of the difficulty Germans have in understanding our pronunciation of their language is due to our omission of the glottal catch. An illustration of this is the fact that an American was once obliged to pronounce the word „erinnern" five

times before her German teacher could tell what word she was trying to say. The difficulty lay partly in the drawling of the American *r*, partly in the omission of the glottal catch after the first **er**. The American said *e-rinnurn* instead of er|innern.

330. Omission of the Glottal Catch. — In the case of words compounded with the particles hier, hin, her, dar, war, wor, vor, wieder, and after ll, there is no glottal catch. Thus hinaus, herein, darunter; warum, woran, vorüber, wiederum, vollenden, are easy for Americans, as they are pronounced without the glottal catch.

Consonants.

331. Identical Consonants. — The German consonants f, h, k, m, n, and x are pronounced as in English.

(1) German ſ, s has three pronunciations just like the three of English *s*. When at the end or next to the end of a syllable it is like *s* in *see:* es, was, biſt, haſt. When at the beginning of a syllable it is like *s* in *rose:* ſehen, der Saal, die Roſe, der Unſinn. When ſ begins an accented syllable whose second letter is t or p, it is like *s* in *sugar:* ſtehen, ſprechen are pronounced as if spelled ſchtehen, ſchprechen.

Note. — It is almost as hard for Americans to give *initial* ſ a *z*-sound as for Germans to give our *final s* a *z*-sound. We think it sounds funny to hear a German say, "It iss hiss turn," but it sounds just as funny to a North German when we say, „Sie überſetzte ſechs Seiten," giving the initial ſ's the sound of *s* in *hiss*, as it is our natural tendency to do.

(2) The consonants p, t, b, d are uttered with greater explosiveness than in English, owing to the greater lung-pressure in German (§ 326). In d and t the tip

of the tongue should be against the upper teeth at the beginning of the sound. At the end of a syllable **b** and **d** are pronounced like *p* and *t*: Tod like tot, Abſicht like Apſicht, ſüdlich like ſütlich, ob like op.

332. Equivalent Consonants. — The consonants **c, j, q, v, w, z,** have equivalent sounds in English, but these are not represented by the corresponding English letters.[1] **C** occurs mostly in **ck**, pronounced like **k**, and in **ch** (§ 334). **J** is like *y* in *year* (in North Germany it tends towards **ch**, § 334, 2); **qu** like *kv*; **v** like *f*; **w** like *v*; **z** like *tz*.

333. Dissimilar Consonants. — The consonants which have sounds not found in English are **ch, g, l,** and **r**. Naturally they make the most trouble for Americans.

334. The Sound ch. — (1) In pronouncing **ch** after **a, o, u,** or **au,** the back of the tongue is raised and drawn back toward the soft palate so that a scraping sound is made as the breath is forced through. It is like the Scotch *ch* in *loch*. The nearest equivalent English sound is the rasping we sometimes make at the end of a long yawn or the sound some people utter when breathing on their eye-glasses before cleaning them. Pronounce: ach, das Buch, das Loch, auch.

(2) After all other sounds — that is, after consonants or **e, i, eu,** or the umlauted vowels — **ch** has a sound resembling the noise made by a spitting cat. Raise the

[1] For foreign words a pronouncing dictionary must be consulted. Some French words are pronounced as in French, as Penſion, Journaliſt; some are half Germanized: Sauce, pronounced Sōße.

tongue to the position for long i (Fig. 1) and holding it there, stop the vowel sound and breathe out. Pronounce: das Pech, das Licht, euch, die Töchter, die Dächer, die Tücher, die Schläuche, welch, manch.

It is plain that the guttural ch-sound, made in the back of the mouth, goes naturally with the vowels a, o, and u, which are formed in the middle or back of the mouth (see Fig. 4). The palatal ch-sound, made against the front part of the palate, goes naturally with the vowels formed in the front of the mouth (Fig. 4) or with l or n, both of which are articulated with the tongue against the front of the palate (Fig. 5).

(3) At the beginning of a syllable, ch is pronounced as in (2) before e and i: Chemie, China. Before other vowels or consonants it is pronounced like k: Chor, Christ, Charakter, Fuchs, wachsen.

335. The Sounds of g. — (1) German g at the beginning of a word or syllable is like English *g* in *go*. (2) At the end of a syllable it is like *k* except (3) in the ending ig, when it is like ch in ich.

Thus ch and g in richtig are pronounced alike. But as soon as inflectional endings are added to final g, so that g becomes the first letter in the following syllable, g is pronounced like *g* in *go*. Pronounce: (1) gut, grün; (2) der Tag, der Sieg; (3) ruhig, richtig; but (1) die Tage, die Siege, ruhiger, richtiger.

Note. — There is less uniformity in Germany for the pronunciation of g than for any other letter. Probably half the people in Germany pronounce final g like final ch, as in § 334, 1 or 2. But the best authorities are now agreed upon the pronunciation as given above. See *Viëtor's* Die Aussprache des Schriftdeutschen, 7th edition, O. R. Riesland, Leipzig; also *Siebs'* Deutsche Bühnenaussprache, Ahn, Köln. See § 316.

336. The Sound of l. — German l is pronounced with the tongue pressed against the front of the palate, like *lli* in *million* (Fig. 5). The sound of *y* in *year* seems interwoven with the l, which is made in the very front of the mouth, not at the back as English *l*. One might say that German l has an *ee*-shade (Fig. 1), while English *l* has an *oo*-shade (Fig. 3). Pronounce: Lilli Lehmann, alles, Ulk.

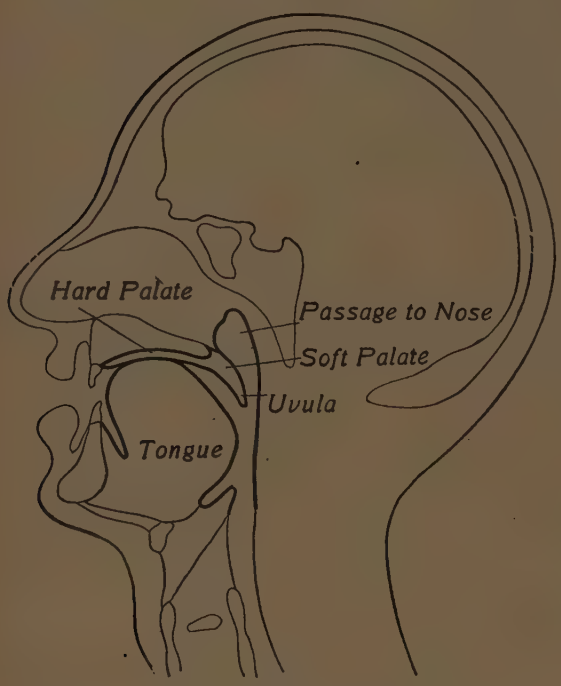


Fig. 5. — The Tongue-position for l.

337. The German r. — There are two distinct German r's; the tongue-tip (trilled) r, and the uvula (rolled) r. Both differ from the American slurred *r* of the East and South, and from the drawled *r* of the West.

(1) In the trilled r (Fig. 6), the tongue-tip is vibrated against the palate just behind the front teeth. This is not only the easier of the two, but it is the one approved on the stage.

(2) The uvula or throat r (Fig. 7) is made by the vibrations of the uvula upon the back of the tongue. It is more distinctively German, but is usually difficult for Americans to acquire. In a way it resembles a gargle and it may best be developed from the guttural

ch, § 334, 1. In fact, many Germans pronounce r as ch when speaking rapidly; they give Martha and Magda almost the same sound. The physiological explanation of this is that in very rapid speech the uvula fails to vibrate when the breath is forced out, thus making only the scraping sound of ch, § 334, 1. For this uvula r the front of the tongue must never be raised as in the drawled *r* of the West. The back of the tongue is raised so that the uvula is forced to vibrate when we breathe out (see Fig. 7).

Note. — In conversation the r in the *unaccented* syllable er is not rolled. The uvula touches the tongue just once, but does not vibrate. This makes a very short *aw*-sound, akin

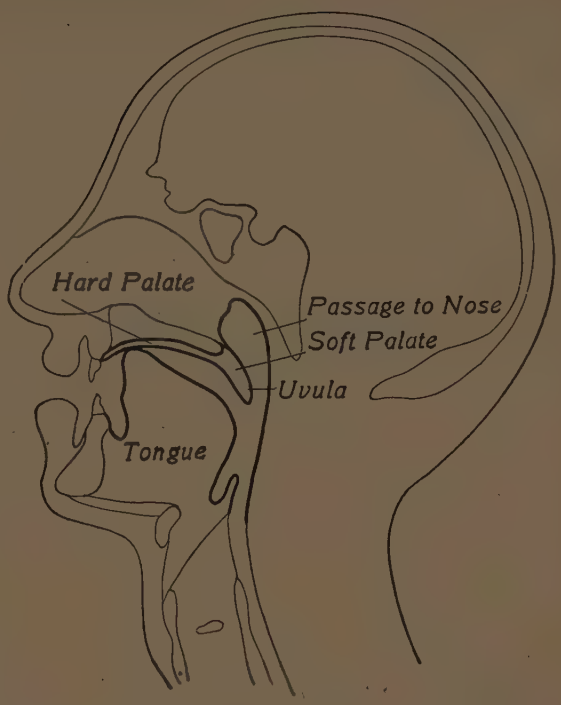


FIG. 6. — The Tongue-position for trilled r.

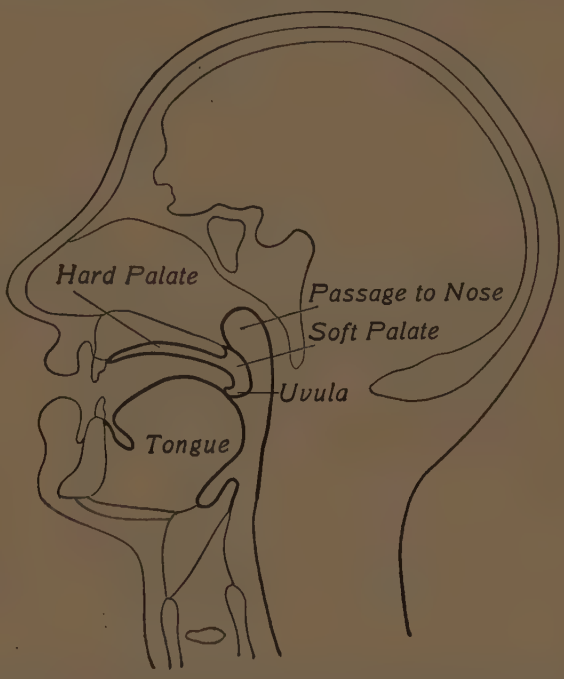


FIG. 7. — The Tongue-position for uvula r.

to *o* in *short*. Thus Der Vater hat es vergeſſen is spoken almost like *Daw fahtaw hat es fawgessen*. The sound here represented by *aw* is as short as it can possibly be. It is not at all like the *aw* in "*See, saw, Marjorie Daw*," but on the contrary so brief as to be practically only a grace note.

Syllable Stress.

338. Syllable Bearers. — In English the vowels are the important parts of the syllables. They may be called the "syllable-bearers." A short vowel like *a* in *hand* may receive as much emphasis as long *a* in *tame*. In German this is strikingly different. Long vowels are longer than in English, and short ones shorter. After a short vowel in German the following consonant bears a large part of the burden of the syllable. A consonant following a short vowel in German is much longer than the same consonant when following a long vowel.

339. Long and Short Consonants. — Thus German has long and short consonants as well as long and short vowels. A short vowel is so short that it is almost coughed out; the sound springs from it *immediately* to the following consonant, which is held much longer than the vowel. Graphically the difference between the English and German way of saying *hand* may be represented:

die Hannd

A long vowel followed by a short consonant offers no difficulty, as that is a frequent combination in English. But care must be taken to prolong a consonant following a short vowel. Remember to hold tongue and jaw still during a German vowel-sound, and to jump without

any slur from a vowel to the following consonant, especially when the vowel is short. Compare der König and können. Pronounce Kö ö ö ö nig and kön n n n nen. In the same way pronounce die Schule and die Schuld (Schu u u u le and Schulllld). Also der Ofen and offen (O o o o fen and offffen). Be careful always to jump without any slur from the vowel to the consonant. Do not say Kö|*uh*|nig, kö|*uh*|nnen, Schu|*uh*|le, Schu|*uh*|ld, O|*uh*|fen, o|*uh*|ffen.

340. Practice Pairs. — This is one of the most characteristic features of German and one of the easiest to learn. Just remember to put on extra lung-pressure for short vowels and then to hold the following consonant. If we admire something very much, we say it is "*wo o o nderful*"; a German says „wunnndervoll." The best English illustration of this is the way *ng* is prolonged in the American slang expression: "Stung!" This length of consonants is especially easy to get with **l, m,** and **n.** Try these first.

A few good pairs with which to practise these short vowels followed by long consonants and to compare them with similar long vowels followed by short consonants are: dem Sohne, die Sonne; fühlen, füllen; komisch, kommen; der Stahl, der Stall; wohlwollen; der Ballsaal; Halle an der Saale; den Schafen, schaffen; kam, der Kamm; lahm, das Lamm.

341. Change of Pitch. — In English words the vowel carries the changes in pitch. When we say "Oh, come on" in a pleading tone, the *o* in *on* slides several notes down the scale. If German were to use the same ex-

pression „Komm an" in the same tone, the n in an would carry this change in pitch. Graphically this may be represented by English "Come on"; German „Komm an." In German any change in pitch is carried by the long element in the syllable, whether vowel or consonant. Of course, to carry change in pitch a consonant must be *voiced*, that is, the vocal chords must vibrate when it is pronounced. Thus change of pitch cannot be carried by *mutes* like p, b, t.

342. Sentence Accent. — In general, German sentence accent follows the same rules as the English, but it is more emphatic. The two may be compared to German and English script; the one goes straight and is sharp; the other glides and curves; one is angular, the other round. And so with the sentence accent: in English it slurs, in German it jumps. The extent of this change (greater than in English), coupled with the greater lung-pressure in German and the glottal catch (§ 326), give spoken German a much more vigorous and staccato effect than English.

Aside from these considerations the chief difference between English and German sentence accent is in complex sentences. In German complex sentences — those with a main and a subordinate clause — the tone begins at normal and rises till it comes to the junction of the two clauses; then it declines. This is the case whether the main clause or the subordinate comes first.

Assimilation.

343. The Ending en. — The Germans speak not only with more vigor than we Americans, but with more

speed. Much of this speed is due to their clipping the ending **en**. An enormous number of German words end in **en**, the sound of which is shortened in various ways. In conversation the **e** in **en** is always silent. The **n** then undergoes various changes, called *assimilation*, depending upon the preceding or following consonant. Chief of these are: (1) next to **b** or **p**; (2) after **g**; and (3) after **n** or **ng**.

(1) When the ending **en** comes just after or just before a **b** or a **p** sound, it is pronounced like **m**. The sentence Wir haben eben sieben Knaben gesehen is pronounced, Wir habm ebm siebm Knabm gesehn. Eschenbach and Wolfenbüttel are pronounced Eschmbach and Wolfmbüttel.[1]

[1] This statement and several of the following are at variance with *Siebs* and with German pronunciation as formally taught, but they are consistent with the practice, even of teachers. The author once heard a professor in the University of Berlin — a man well known in America — say in a lecture: Die Endung ‚en' muß immer volln Ton habm! Advocates of stage German insist that en should have its regular sound, but even on the stage b and p usually attract n to m. For instance, Piepenbrink (in *Freytag's* „Journalisten") is never pronounced according to the stage rules. Actors always say Piepmbrink. This is a practically universal law, which the Greeks and Romans embodied in their written language: ἐν + βάλλω — ἐμβάλλω (en + ballo — emballo); con + prehendo — comprehendo. In speaking hurriedly we say "Opm the door," for "Open the door."

Professor Viëtor of Marburg, who has written more extensively on Phonetics than any one else, does not assimilate the ending en after b, p, and so on, and he combats such assimilation in his writings. But in conversation with the author he admitted the tendency (which he said came from Prussia) and confessed that his youngest son assimilated en, while the other members of the family did not. On the other hand, the most able and scholarly phoneticist in Germany, Professor Sievers of Leipsic, advocates the teaching of assimilation from the beginning. He told the author not only that en should be assimilated

If we notice carefully how b and p come to attract n to m, we shall see that it is all done by the soft palate. For the sounds b and p the lips are closed and the soft palate cuts off the nasal passage. For the following n-sound it is much easier to keep the lips closed and simply to let the soft palate down, thus opening the nasal passage, than it is to open the lips and raise the tongue to the n-position. This opening of the nasal passage gives a nasal sound, and the only nasal sound possible with the lips closed is m.

(2) A similar process to that just described takes place when en follows g. In the sound of g in gehen (§ 335, 1) the nasal passage is closed by the soft palate and it is easier to lower the soft palate than to raise the tongue to the n-position. The result is that the following n-sound becomes nasal (like *ng* in *sing*). Wir tragen hohe Kragen is pronounced Wir tragng hohe Kragng.

(3) When the ending en follows n or ng it is indicated simply by a change of pitch. The change may be up or down. In other words the tongue remains in the n-position while the vocal cords alter the pitch. This may be graphically indicated thus: Wir können einen ſchönen Spaziergang machen — wir könn$_{n}$ ein$_{n}$ ſchön$_{n}$ Spaziergang machn, or wir könn^{n} ein^{n} ſchön^{n} Spaziergang machn. Sie ſingen an, zu ſingen — ſie ſing^{ng} an, zu ſing^{ng} or ſie ſing$_{ng}$ an, zu ſing$_{ng}$.

in the cases mentioned in the text, but that in a sentence like Wir kommen nicht, the m attracts the en to m even when the next word begins with n. It is not the aim of this book to go into so much detail, but this statement is interesting, coming from Germany's leading authority.

Conclusion.

344. The previous rules and suggestions are meant to explain in some measure the greatest difficulties that confront an American trying to speak German. Teaching pronunciation from a book is a thankless job, but even from a book some hints may be gleaned. If teacher or pupil can get from this chapter some helpful hint or inspiration, it will have amply served its purpose.

CHAPTER IV.

COMPOSITION OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

An Outline Sketch.

345. Introduction. Indo-European.—The English word *night* is in German die Nacht, in Latin, *nox*, *noctis*, and in Greek *νύξ*, *νυκτός* (nux, nuktos). In studying the roots of these words (*night*, *Nacht*, *nokt*, *nukt*) and others, scholars were long ago struck by their similarity. They seemed to be in some way related, probably to have a common origin.

Indo-European is the name generally given to those languages of Europe and Western Asia which have certain roots in common. They are supposed to come from a parent language, which is also called Indo-European. The original form of this language is unknown, as is the home of the people who spoke it. But we suppose they spread throughout Europe and Asia, and as they scattered, the parent language changed. Out of it developed most of the languages of Europe.

Note. — The Indo-European languages may be classified roughly as follows:

I. *Asiatic Languages.*

1. *Indic*, including (*a*) the language of the Vedas, (*b*) Sanskrit, (*c*) Modern Indian, and (*d*) the language of the Gypsies.
2. *Iranic*, including (*a*) Old Persian, (*b*) Modern Persian, (*c*) Old Baktrian, and (*d*) Afghan.
3. *Tocharic*, a language in Central Asia, recently discovered to be Indo-European.
4. *Phrygian-Armenian.*

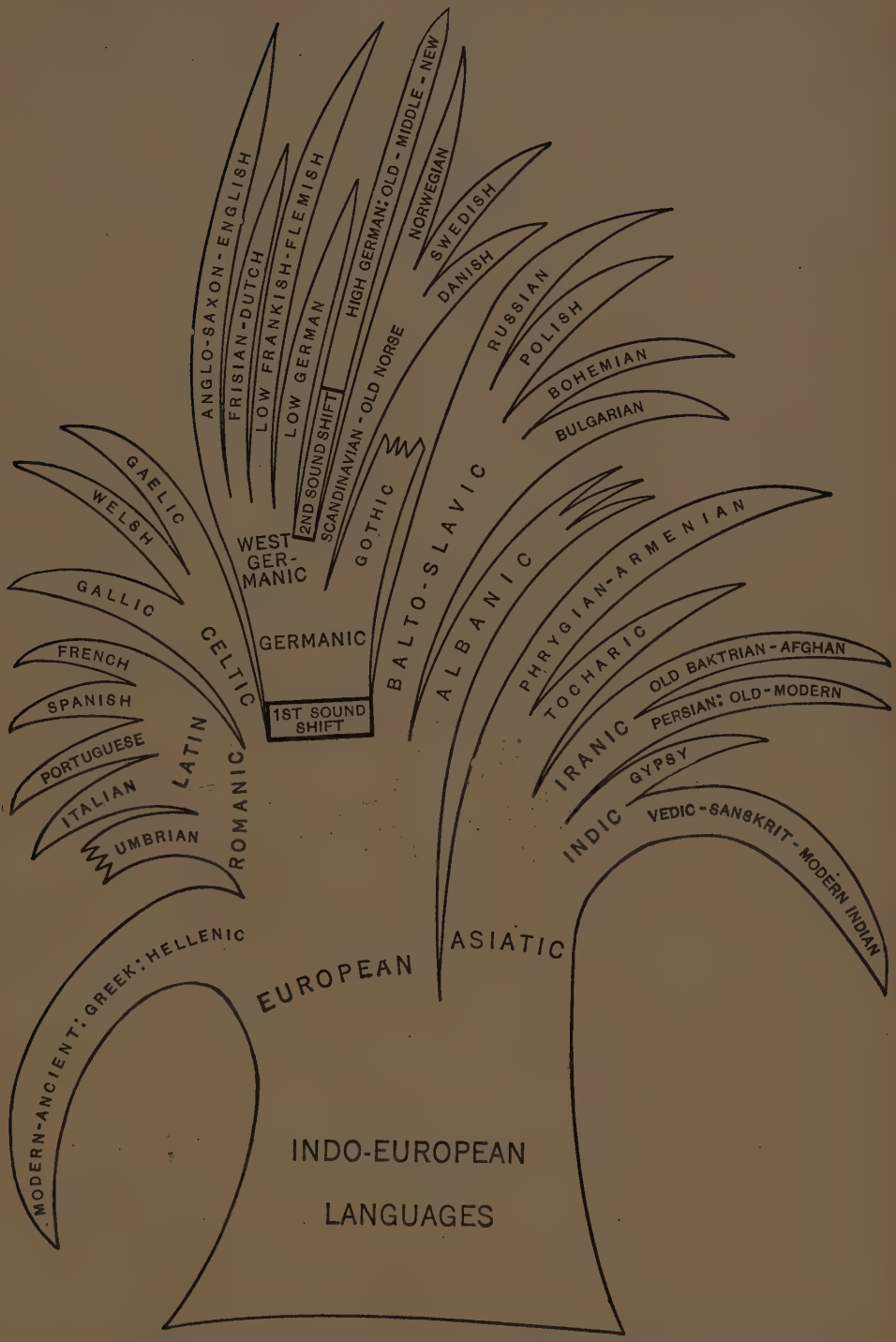


FIG. 8. — Diagram illustrating the Development of the Indo-European Languages.

II. *European Languages.*

1. *Albanic*, including the languages of the Balkan States.
2. *Balto-Slavic*, including (*a*) Russian, (*b*) Polish, (*c*) Bohemian, and (*d*) Bulgarian.
3. *Germanic*, including (*a*) Gothic, (*b*) Anglo-Saxon, (*c*) German, (*d*) English, (*e*) Dutch, and (*f*) the Scandinavian tongues.
4. *Celtic*, including (*a*) Gaelic, (*b*) Gallic, and (*c*) Welsh.
5. *Romanic*, including (*a*) Latin, (*b*) Italian, (*c*) French, (*d*) Spanish, and (*e*) Portuguese.
6. *Hellenic*, including (*a*) Ancient and (*b*) Modern Greek.

No two classifications of the Indo-European languages agree. See the Encyclopædia Britannica or Schrader's "Die Indo-Germanen."

346. The First Sound-Shift. Grimm's Law. — These languages all branched off or grew out of the original Indo-European by the changing or shifting of certain sounds. In the case of the Germanic languages, this is called *the first sound-shift* (die erſte Lautverſchiebung). The change took place during a long period of years and according to certain fixed principles. These principles were first worked out by the great philologist *Jakob Grimm*, and are known as *Grimm's Law*.

347. Greek and Latin as illustrating Indo-European. — As the parent language has disappeared, we can illustrate Grimm's Law only by comparing the Germanic languages with Indo-European languages which did not take part in the first sound-shift. Of these, Latin and Greek are the best known, just as Gothic is the best known early Germanic language. So we usually compare Latin or Greek words with Gothic to illustrate Grimm's Law of the First Sound-Shift.

348. Statement and Illustration of the Law. — In its simplest form the law of the first sound-shift is that:

(1) *b*, *d*, *g*, become respectively *p*, *t*, *k*; (2) *p*, *t*, *k*, become respectively *f*, *th*, *h*; and (3) *f*, *th*, *h*, become respectively *b*, *d*, *g*.

	(1) $d \rightarrow t$	(2) $p \rightarrow f$	(3) $f \rightarrow b$
Greek	*Deka* (δέκα)	*Pous* (πούς)	*Frater* (φρατήρ)
Latin	*Decem*	*Pes*	*Frater*
Gothic	*Taihun*	*Fotus*	*Brothar*
English	*Ten*	*Foot*	*Brother*

Thus approximately the same sounds continued in the language in spite of the shifting. For while *b*, *d*, and *g* were shifting to *p*, *t*, and *k*, these three were shifting to *f*, *th*, and *h*, which in turn were shifting to *b*, *d*, and *g*. This may be shown graphically in Figure 9.

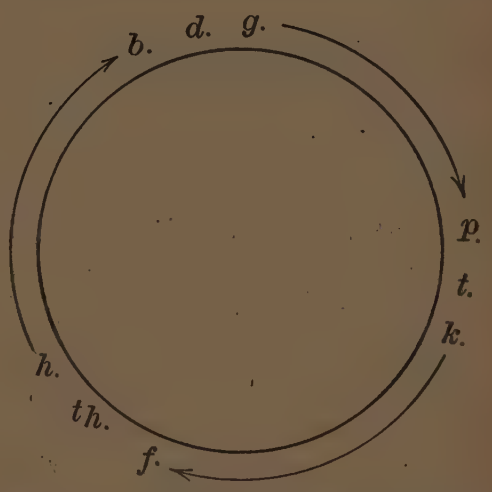


FIG. 9. — Illustration of the way the same sounds continued in the language in spite of the sound-shifts shown in Grimm's Law.

Note. — The details of Grimm's Law, many of which have been worked out since his death (1863), are much too complex for any but advanced students. The present treatment touches only a few phases which may help students to understand the history of the German language and the relation of many English words to the German.

349. Gothic. — As Germanic branched off from Indo-European through the first sound-shift, this shift may be said to have made the various Germanic languages. Of these the oldest that is known is the Gothic, which

died out about the seventh century A.D. It has been preserved for us chiefly through the Gothic Bible of *Ulfilas*, a bishop of the West Goths (Visigoths) in the fourth century A.D. On page 287 will be found the Lord's Prayer in Gothic, so that those who are interested can compare it with later German.

350. The Second Sound-Shift. — Just as the Germanic languages branched off from the Indo-European through the first sound-shift, so High German branched off from the other Germanic tongues (Low German, English, and so on) through the *second sound-shift*. This shifting took place in Southern Germany from the sixth to the eighth centuries. It worked its way gradually northward, stopping short of the low, northern part of Germany. Thus, because it took place in Upper Germany (see Map), the second sound-shift is also called the *High-German Sound-Shift*.

Note. — High German is so called because it developed in the high land of Upper Germany. There is a common misapprehension that it was spoken by the upper classes, while Low German was spoken by the lower classes. This is not the case. High German was spoken by all classes in Upper Germany, Low German by all classes in Lower Germany. (See Map.)

Low German, commonly called Platt-Deutſch (from platt, *flat*, referring to the nature of the country where it is spoken), did not take part in the High-German Sound-Shift, and so has remained in some regards nearer than High German to the original Germanic. English (Anglo-Saxon) was also unaffected by the High-German Sound-Shift, so in many respects Low German resembles English more than it does High German. Below are a few illustrations:

High German	als	iſt	tief	Herz	daß	hatte	Himmel	zwanzig
Low German	as	is	deep	Hart	dat	hadd	Heben	twentig
English	*as*	*is*	*deep*	*heart*	*that*	*had*	*heaven*	*twenty*

NORTH SEA
DENMARK
Kiel
Hamburg
Elbe
Bremen
Weser
Aller
Hannover
Magdeburg
Ems
LOWER SAXONY
Amsterdam
Rotterdam
Lek
HOLLAND
Maas
Rhine
Essen
Dortmund
Barmen-Elberfeld
Göttingen
Nordhausen
Cassel
Thuringia
Erfurt
Werra
Fulda
Cologne
Aachen
Hessian
Giessen
Lahn
Rhine-Franconian
Coblentz
Frankfurt
MIDDLE
Mayence
Main
Mosel
Trier
Luxemburg
Neckar
East Franconia
Bamberg
Nurem
Karlsruhe
Stuttgart
Danube
Swabian
Strassburg
Ulm
Augsburg
UPPER GERMANY
Lech
Mülhausen
Basel
Zurich
Innsbruck
Bern
Chur
SWITZERLAND
Airolo
Etsch
Geneva
Rhone
Isere
Lyons
Clermont
Allier
Loire
Saone
Doubs
Dijon
Orleans
Paris
Seine
Oise
Marne
Reims
Amiens
Somme
Dover
Calais
Dunkirk
Antwerp
BELGIUM
Brussels
ENGLAND
FRANCE
Nancy
Metz
Grenoble
Turin
Po
Milan
Ticino
Adda
Oglio
Verona
Trient
ITALY
Longitude
East
L.L. POATES ENG. CO., N.Y.

14
16
18
20
22
SWEDEN
B A L T I C S E A
Memel
Tilsit
Pregel
Königsberg
Danzig
Marienburg
Osterode
G E R M A N
East Lower German
Stettin
Oder
Weichsel
Narew
Bug
Berlin
Spree
Frankfurt
Warthe
Posen
Warsaw
P O L A N D
Kalisch
Pilica
Glogau
Oder
Silesian
Breslau
Warthe
Bautzen
Dresden
Oppeln
Glatz
Neisse
Krakau
Weichsel
San
Eger
Saaz
Elbe
Prag
Ratibor
Troppau
O H E M I A
Pilsen
Tschech
Olmütz
Moldau
Budweis
Waag
Slovak
Grau
Danube
Vienna
Salzburg
Enns
Mur
Graz
Budapest
Magyar
GERMAN DIALECTS
Drau
Mur
Slovene
Drau
Save
Danube
Triest
Kroatian
Save
ATIC
EA
54
52
50
48
46
14
Greenwich
16
18
20

351. Gothic, English, and High German. — The changes made by the second sound-shift are best illustrated by comparing Gothic, English, and High German. Thus we see in the Gothic the condition of certain consonants in an *old* Germanic language *before* the second sound-shift. In the English we see these consonants in a *new* Germanic language, but in one *not affected* by the second sound-shift. And finally in High German we see these consonants in a new Germanic language which *has been affected* by the second sound-shift.

352. Statement and Illustration of the Law. — The law for the second sound-shift, also worked out by Jakob Grimm, is less regular than the first (see § 348, Note). In general its simplest form is: *p* becomes *f* or *pf*; *t* becomes *s*, *z*, or *ss*; *d* becomes *t*.

Gothic	*Pund*	*Taihun*	*Dags*
English	*Pound*	*Ten*	*Day*
High German	Pfund	Zehn	Tag

353. High German. — Ever since the second sound-shift, High German has been the literary language of Germany. From the second sound-shift till about 1100 A.D. it is called *Old High German*, from 1100 till about 1350 *Middle High German*. Then came a period of transition till the Reformation (1517), when the spread of Luther's writings made his language (that of the Saxon Chancery) the standard for Germany. This is called *New High German*. When we speak of *German*, we usually refer to New High German, as that is the language written and spoken by most Germans to-day. The next paragraphs trace its development.

354. Old High German.— The period of Old High German extends roughly from 750 to 1100.[1] This was the time of the Carolingian (768–911), Saxon (919–1024), and Frankish (1024–1125) Emperors. Latin was in the main the written language; the people spoke Old High German. The chief Manuscripts that have come down to us are the *Hildebrandtslied*, the *Wessobrunner Gebet*, the *Evangelienbuch* of *Otfrid von Weissenburg*, the *Heliand*, and the *Muspilli* (End of the World). On page 287 is the Lord's Prayer in Old High German as it was written at the end of the eighth century A.D. and again as at the end of the tenth. It is interesting to compare these with the Gothic.

It was during this period (in the reign of Charlemagne) that the word came into existence from which the present word deutſch was derived. The Old High German word *diot* means *people*. To this was added the ending *isc* (German iſch, English *ish*). The word then developed: *diutisc*, *diutsk*, *tiutsch*, *teutsch*. This latter form was current in High German as late as the eighteenth century. At first it was used only of the language spoken by the people, but later it came to be applied to the people themselves.

[1] Dates referring to general language changes, just as the boundary lines between different dialects (see Map, p. 282), must not be interpreted too exactly. The Germans did not go to bed New Year's Eve, 1100, speaking Old High German, and wake up the next morning speaking Middle High German, any more than a High German who moved across the line into Lower Germany would immediately begin to speak Low German. So, too, during the different periods changes were constantly going on, just as they are in the language to-day. Dates and boundary lines are necessary for a clear understanding, but in the case of linguistic movements they are flexible and must be understood as such.

355. Middle High German. — Gradually Old High German changed into what we call Middle High German. An idea of the amount of the change can be had by looking at the Middle High German Lord's Prayer, page 288, and by comparing it with the Old High German. Middle High German coincides with the rule of the Hohenstaufen Emperors (1138–1254) and the next hundred years, when the Emperors were chosen from various families (till 1350).

The first well-known works in Middle High German were *Heroic Poems* by unknown writers, the Nibelungenlied, Gudrun, the poems of the Dietrichsage, and others. The Court Epics, Rolandslied and Alexanderlied, were both written by priests. The Eneit (Æneid) was written by *Heinrich von Veldeke*, Parzival, by *Wolfram von Eschenbach*, Triſtan und Iſolt, by *Gottfried von Strassburg*, Der Arme Heinrich, by *Hartmann von Aue*. Most of these *Minnesingers* also wrote lyrics, though the chief lyric poet was *Walther von der Vogelweide*.

Middle High German was at its best about 1200. For the next century and a half it declined, and then for nearly two centuries (1350–1534) till the completion of Luther's translation of the Bible came the period of transition to New High German. This transition is shown in the official documents of the different governments (chanceries) in Germany, those of the cities, of the bishops, of the Emperor.

As long ago as in the time of *Rudolph of Habsburg* (1273–1291) official decrees began to be made in German rather than in Latin. These decrees were issued by the *chancellors*, hence we hear of the *language of the chancery* (Kanzleiſprache). The different chanceries

wished to be understood as widely as possible, so they adopted the language of the people. Out of the decrees of the different chanceries — those of the cities, dukes, bishops, and so on — developed an official language which was understood by all. But it was not as yet widespread among the common people. This was to be accomplished by Martin Luther.

356. New High German. — Long before Luther, there existed the language he used, just as there were German translations of the Bible before his. Luther's great service to the German language lies not in his invention of something new, but in his spreading and popularizing what was already at hand. (See § 155.) An idea of the impetus which he gave to reading may be secured from the following figures. For the ten years preceding the Reformation (1517), the yearly output of German books had averaged about 110. The numbers for the next six years were roughly: 1518 — 150; 1519 — 260; 1520 — 570; 1521 — 620; 1522 — 935.

Luther's language is shown in the Lord's Prayer given on page 288, which it is interesting to compare with those of other periods. Since Luther's time German has been constantly developing. Goethe and Schiller wrote meyn, ſeyn, and so on, as well as mein and ſein. This absence of uniformity has caused a certain official orthography to be adopted in the schools of Germany. But many learned men, including some college professors, are out of sympathy with the new rules, which are, it must be confessed, peculiar and inconsistent. The leading authority on this subject is the Orthographiſches Wörterbuch of *Konrad Duden*, Leipzig.

The Lord's Prayer.

357. Gothic, from the Bible of Ulfilas (fourth century A.D.). — The character þ is pronounced like English *th*; jah means *and*.

Atta unsar þu in himinam, weihnai namo þein; quimai þiudinassus þeins; wairþai wilja þeins, swe in himina jah ana airþai; hlaif unsarana þana sinteinan gif uns himma daga; jah aflet uns þatei skulans sijaima, swaswe jah weis afletam þaim skulam unsaraim jah ni briggais uns in fraistubnjai, ak lausei uns af þamma ubilin; (unte þeina ist þiudangardi jah mahts jah wulþus in aiwins). amen.

358. Old High German (eighth century). — Notice the double *u* for *w*.

Fater unsêr, thû in himilom bist, giuuîhit sî namo thîn. queme rîchi thîn. uuerdhe uuilleo thîn, sama sô in himile endi in erthu. Broot unseraz emezzîgaz gib uns hiutu. endi farlâz uns sculdhi unsero, sama sô uuir farlâzzêm scolôm unserêm. endi ni gileidi unsih in costunga. auh arlôsi unsih fona ubile.

359. Old High German (tenth century). —

Fáter unser dû in himele bist. Dîn námo uuérde gehéiligôt. Dîn rîche chome. Dîn uuíllo gescéhe in erdo, álsô in hímele. Unser tágelîcha brôt kib uns híuto. Unde únsere scúlde belâz úns, álsô óuh uuir belâzen unserên scúldîgên. Unde in chórunga ne léitêst dû únsih. Núbe lôse únsih fóne úbele.

360. Middle High German (thirteenth century). —

Vatir unsir der da bist in den himelen. Geheiliget werde dîn name. Zů kůme dîn rîche. Dîn wille der werde alse in dem himele und in der erden. Unsir tegelîche brôt gip uns hûte. Und vorgip uns unsir schulde, alse ouch wir vorgebin unseren schuldigêren. Und în leite uns nicht in bekorunge. Sundern lôse uns von ubele. âmen.

361. New High German. Luther's Translation (1522). —

Unſer vater ynn dem hymel. Deyn name ſey heylig. Deyn reych kome. Deyn wille geſchehe auff erden wie ym hymel. Unſer teglich brod gib uns heut, und vergib uns unſere ſchulde, wie wir unſern ſchuldigern vergeben, und fure uns nicht ynn verſuchung, ſondern erlöſe uns von dem ubel. (Denn deyn iſt das reych, und die krafft, und die herlickeyt yn ewigkeyt.) Amen.

362. New High German. Modern Version. —

Vater unſer, der du biſt in dem Himmel! Geheiliget werde dein Name; dein Reich komme; dein Wille geſchehe, wie im Himmel, alſo auch auf Erden; unſer täglich Brot gib uns heute; und vergib uns unſere Schulden, wie wir vergeben unſern Schuldigern; und führe uns nicht in Verſuchung; ſondern erlöſe uns von dem Übel; denn dein iſt das Reich und die Kraft und die Herrlichkeit in Ewigkeit. Amen.

CHAPTER V.

MISCELLANEOUS.

363. There are three things, not usually treated in textbooks, which often make trouble for Americans. They are (1) words whose form is almost the same in both languages, but whose meanings differ; (2) abbreviations, of which the Germans are very fond; and (3) expressions not found in the best literature, but common in everyday speech.

364. Similar Words. — Many of these similar words have been treated in Part I. A few of the commonest not there treated are given below.

Alſo (*therefore*) does not mean *also* (auch).
Das Beet (*flowerbed*) does not mean *beet* (die Rübe).
Das Boot (*boat*) does not mean *boot* (der Stiefel).
Brav (*good, well-behaved*) does not mean *brave* (tapfer).
Bekommen (*get*) does not mean *become* (werden).
Faſt (*almost*) does not mean *fast* (ſchnell).
Das Gymnaſium (*high school*) does not mean *gymnasium* (die Turnhalle).
Halten (*hold*) does not mean *halt* (anhalten).
Der Kohl (*cabbage*) does not mean *coal* (die Kohle).
Der Miniſter (*minister* of war) does not mean *minister* (*preacher*, der Prediger).
Die Hochſchule (*college*) does not mean *high school* (das Gymnaſium).

Der Photograph (*photographer*) does not mean *photograph* (die Photographie).
Der Platz (*seat*) does not mean *place* (der Ort).
Der Rektor (*principal*) does not mean *rector* (der Pfarrer).
Der Sinn (*sense*) does not mean *sin* (die Sünde).
Stehen (*stand*) does not mean *stay* (bleiben).
Der Stuhl (*chair*) does not mean *stool* (der Schemel).
Vor (*in front of*) does not mean *for* (für).

365. Abbreviations. — Germans are very partial to abbreviations. We find them not only on signs and notices, but in books as well. And they always obscure the sense unless we know what words they stand for. Except in the case of weights and measurements, a German abbreviation should always be followed by a period.

Some abbreviations are common to both languages: p.p.c. (pour prendre congé, *to take leave*), cf. (confer, *compare*), etc. (et cætera, *and so forth*), i.e. (id est, *that is*), N.B. (nota bene, *note carefully*), sc. (scilicet, *namely*), and so on. But in most cases German prefers abbreviations of its own words, and uses for the first four above: U.A.z.n. (Um Abschied zu nehmen), vgl. (vergleiche), usw. (und so weiter), d.h. (das heißt). Below are given some of the commonest abbreviations with their full meaning in German and in English.

Bd., Band, *volume*, *vol.*
bzw., beziehungsweise, *or* (literally, *respectively*).
dgl., dergleichen, *of the same kind.*
d.h., das heißt, *that is*, *i.e.*
d. J., dieses Jahres, *of this year.*
d. M., dieses Monats, *of this month*, *inst.*
Ew. Exz., Euer Exzellenz, *your excellency.*

geb., geboren, *born*, (*).
geſt., geſtorben, *died*, (†).
G. m. b. H., Geſellſchaft mit beſchränkter Haftung, *Company with limited liability, Ltd.*
M, Mark, *quarter*, about twenty-four cents.
m, Meter, *meter*, a measure of length.
n. Chr. G., nach Chriſti Geburt, *after the birth of Christ, A.D.*
Kap., Kapitel, *chapter, Chap.*
K. K., Königlich Kaiſerlich, *Royal Imperial;* Kgl., Königlich, *Royal.*
reſp. (reſpective), bezüglicherweiſe, *with regard* or *reference to.*
ſ., ſiehe, *see, vid.*
ſog., ſogenannt, *so-called.*
u., und, *and*, &.
U. A. w. g., Um Antwort wird gebeten, *an answer is requested, please reply, r.s.v.p.* (répondez s'il vous plaît).
uſw., ꝛc., und ſo weiter, *and so forth, etc.*
v. Chr. G., vor Chriſti Geburt, *before the birth of Christ, B.C.*
vgl., vergleiche, *compare, cf.*
v. J., verfloſſenen Jahres, *last year.*
v. M., vergangenen Monats, *last month, ult.*
z. B., zum Beiſpiel, *for instance, e.g.* (exempli gratia).

366. Colloquial German. — There are many expressions in German which seldom find their way into books, but which are very common in everyday speech. Some of them are perfectly good German, while others border on slang. They need not be learned, but people who visit Germany will hear them often and will feel more at home for having seen them in print.

Below are given about a hundred of the commonest of these expressions. It is impossible to translate most of them, but an effort has been made to give as nearly as possible their American equivalent, even when they are slang.

Abwärts! *Going down!* (of an elevator).
Ich habe keine blasse Ahnung, keinen Schimmer. *I haven't the dimmest idea, not an inkling.*
Die Tinte ist alle. *The ink is gone (used up).*
Die Angströhre, *stove-pipe hat* ("*tile*").
Ätsch! (or etsch!) *I told you so! What did I tell you! Serves you right!*
Aufwärts! *Going up!* (of an elevator).
Der Backfisch, *young girl.*
Büffeln, ochsen, *to grind, to* "*bone*" (of students).
Bockig, *pigheaded.*
Bummeln, *to loaf, to gad about.*
Das Dings, *what-do-you-call-it* (used when one cannot think of the name of something).
Famos'! *fine* ("*great*").
Fidel', kreuzfidel, *cheerful, a* "*good fellow.*"
Fix und fertig, *all ready;* flink, *quick.*
Flöten gehen, *to disappear, get lost.*
Frank und frei, *free as air.*
Der Fuchs, *freshman (student).*
Futsch, *gone, disappeared.*
Gang und gäbe, *customary, the regular thing.*
Die Geschichte, *thing, business.* Jetzt ist die ganze Geschichte kaput'! *Now the whole thing (business) is busted!*
Das Gigerl, *fop, dude.*

Der Glimmſtengel, *cigar* ("*weed*").
Der Groſchen, *nickel* (*a ten Pfennig piece*).
Halt, *just*. Man nennt ſie halt nur Schwabenſtreiche. *We just call them "Swabian strokes."* —Uhland.
Handel und Wandel, *trade*.
Er hat Geld wie Heu (*hay*). *He's got money to burn.*
Hinſetzen! *Down in front!* (in a grandstand).
In Hülle und Fülle, *in abundance*.
J, wo! (ei was!) *Well, well!* or *What do you think of that!* Also, *Not by a long shot!* The meaning varies with the intonation.
Das iſt jammerſchade! *That's a burning shame!*
Wir wollen ihn kalt ſtellen. *We'll put him on the shelf.*
Er iſt ein Kameel'! *He's an ass!*
Kaput', *smashed* ("*busted*").
Kiek 'mal or guck' mal! *Just look!* ("*pipe*").
Mit Kind und Kegel, *with bag and baggage*.
Klipp und klar, *clear as day*.
Knall und Fall, *suddenly, slam-bang!*
Die Kneipe, *café* or *meeting place*, or *meeting* "*joint*" (student).
Knipſen, *to photograph, to* "*snap*."
Koloſſal' or rieſig, *huge*, "*great*." Unheimlich is used mostly with viel, *an awful lot*.
Können vor Lachen! *Yes, if—! Like ducks!*
Er hat einen Korb (*basket*) bekommen! *He got the mitten!*
Der Köter, *dog, cur*.
Kriegen, *to get*. Warte nur, ich krieg' ihn ſchon! *Just wait, I'll get him!*—Goethe.
Die Landratte, *landlubber;* die Waſſerratte, *sailor*, "*tar*."
Ledern, *dry, wooden* (of stories).
Leider Gottes! *More's the pity!*

Nun, man los! *Well, go ahead!*
Mieze, Mieze! *Kitty, kitty!*
Das ist ja Mumpitz! or Quatsch! also, Papperlapapp! *Stuff and nonsense! Tommy rot!* Rede kein Blech! *Don't talk nonsense!*
Nanu'! *Well, what's up!*
Nee, *no* ("*nit*"). Nix (for nichts), *nothing.*
Der Pechvogel, *poor devil!* Sie armer Pechvogel, *hard luck, old man!* The opposite of der Glückspilz, *lucky dog.*
Der Philister, any one *not a student.*
Pumpen, *to borrow* or *lend.* Pump' mir 'ne Mark! *Lend me a mark!*
Der Radau', *racket, noise.*
Rauf, raus, rein, rum, runter (for herauf, etc.), *up, out, in, around, under.*
Die alte Schachtel, *old maid.*
Schlecht und recht, *simple and straightforward.*
Wie ein Schloßhund heulen, *to yell like fury.*
Halt den Schnabel! Halt's Maul! *Shut up!*
Schneiden, *to cut* (*an acquaintance*).
Schwänzen, *to cut* (*a lecture* or *lesson*).
Das ist mir ganz Schnuppe! *I don't care a hang!*
Der Schwips, *jag.*
Wollen wir was steigen lassen? *Shall we start something?*
Über Stock und Stein, *off the beaten path, up hill and down dale.*
Der Ulk, *joke;* ulkig, *funny;* verulken, *to make ridiculous.*
Unheimlich, *uncomfortable, gloomy,* used chiefly with viel, *an awful lot.*
Un'solid, *sporty, fast, leading a gay life.* Der Schwips, *jag.*

Verbummeln, *to blow in, to squander.*

Verduften, *to sneak off, disappear.*

Er iſt in ſie vernarrt! *He's dippy about (in love with) her.*

Verſohlen, *to thrash, "lick."* Also durchhauen, durchprügeln, and durchholzen.

Der Wolkenkratzer, *skyscraper.*

Wurſt wider Wurſt! *Tit for tat.* Das iſt mir Wurſt! *That's all the same to me! I don't care a rap!*

Das Zeug, *stuff (contemptuous);* dummes Zeug! *Stuff and nonsense!*

Die Zwiebel, *watch ("turnip").* Zwiebeln, *to plague, bother.*

GERMAN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY AND INDEX.

A

Aachen, das, Aachen, Aix-la-Chapelle, *the capital of Charlemagne's Empire.*

abbringen, brachte ab, abgebracht (haben), to dissuade.

Abend, der, die –e, evening; *written without a capital with adverbs:* gestern abend.

aber, but, § 43, 1.

abgenommen, *see* abnehmen.

Ablaut, der, die –e, ablaut, *change in the root vowel of a word.*

abnehmen, nahm ab, abgenommen (haben), er nimmt ab, to take off.

abreisen, *reg., sep.* (sein), to go away, depart.

absehen, sah ab, abgesehen (haben), er sieht ab, to look aside; abgesehen von, aside from.

abziehen, zog ab, abgezogen (haben), to go off *or* away.

abzubringen, *see* abbringen.

abzureisen, *see* abreisen.

ach, oh, ah.

acht, eight; morgen über — Tage, a week from to-morrow.

Agent', der, des –en, die –en, agent.

Albrecht, der, Albert; Albrecht Dürer, *Germany's great artist,* § 116 and § 144.

all, all, § 113, 2; alle beide, both, § 170, 2, Note *b.*

allein', alone.

allerdings', to be sure; it is true, § 274.

als, when, § 84, 1; as, § 83, 2; *correlative,* than, as, § 83, 1.

also, so, then, § 26, 2; *sometimes omitted in translating.*

alt, älter, ältest, old, older, oldest.

am, *see* an dem; *with superl.,* § 119, 3, Note, *and* § 218, 1.

Amerika, das, America.

Amerika'ner, der, die —, American.

amüsie'ren sich, amüsierte, amüsiert' (haben), to have a good time, § 50, 5.

an, *prep.,* at, to, in, on, § 119, 1; of (denken an), to (gewöhnt an), § 119, 2; *with adjs.,* § 119, 3; *special uses,* § 119, 3, Note; — etwas vorbei, past; *sep. prefix, as in* anbieten, angreifen, 2c.

anbieten, bot an, angeboten (haben), to offer.

ander, other, § 30, 1.

anfangen, fing an, angefangen (haben), er fängt an, to begin, § 180, 2.

anführen, *reg., sep.* (haben), to bring in, use as an illustration.

angehen, ging an, angegangen (ha-

ben), *with acc.*, to be to, § 206, 2, Note.

angelacht (anlachen), smiled at.

angenehm, agreeable, § 171, 2, Note.

angesehen (ansehen), respected.

angreifen, griff an, angegriffen (haben), to attack.

ankommen, kam an, angekommen (sein), to arrive; das kommt darauf an, that depends.

anlachen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), to smile at.

Anlaut, der, die –e, anlaut, *the beginning sound of a word or syllable*.

annehmen, nahm an, angenommen (haben), er nimmt an, to accept.

Anrede, die, die –en, address.

ansehen, sah an, angesehen (haben), er sieht an, to look at; angesehen, looked up to, respected.

anstatt, instead of; *with* zu, § 181; *with* daß, § 190.

Anton, der, Anton, Antony.

Antwort, die, die –en, answer, reply.

antworten, *reg.* (haben), to answer, reply, to, auf *with acc.*

anzubieten, *see* anbieten.

anzufangen, *see* anfangen.

Anzug, der, die Anzüge, suit.

anzunehmen, *see* annehmen.

anzusehen, *see* ansehen.

Arbeit, die, die –en, work, labor.

arbeiten, *reg.* (haben), to work.

ärgern, *reg.* (haben), to anger, irritate.

arm, poor; Sie Ärmste(r), you poor thing!

Arminius, der, Armin *or* Hermann, *the German leader (chief of the Cherusker) who won the battle of the Teutoburg Forest*, § 1.

auch, also, too, § 100, 4, Note; ever, 257, 2.

auf, *prep.*, on, upon, § 120, 1; at, to, § 120, 3, Note *a*; for, § 8; *with verbs*, § 120, 2; *with adjs.*, § 120, 3; *in idioms*, § 120, 3, Note *b*; — dem Markte, in the market(place); — deutsch, — englisch, in German, in English; — dem Vogelfang, fowling ("bird-shooting"); — diese Weise, in this way; aufs –ste (*superl.*), in the –est way, § 218, 2; *sep. prefix*, as in aufhören, aufwachsen, etc.

Aufgabe, die, die –n, exercise.

aufgehört, *see* aufhören.

aufgenommen, *see* aufnehmen.

aufhören, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), to stop, § 180, 2.

aufnehmen, nahm auf, aufgenommen (haben), er nimmt auf, to take up, receive.

auftreten, trat auf, aufgetreten (sein), er tritt auf, to step up, appear (*on the stage*).

aufwachen, *reg.*, *sep.* (sein), to wake up.

aufzuhören, *see* aufhören.

Augenblick, der, die –e, moment.

Augustus, der, Augustus, *Roman Emperor*.

aus, *prep.*, out of, from, § 94, 1;

of, § 94, 2; — diesem Grunde, for this reason; von wo aus, (from) where, § 46; *sep. prefix, as in* ausbrechen, ausrufen, etc.

ausbrechen, brach aus, ausgebrochen (sein), er bricht aus, to break out.

ausgerufen, *see* ausrufen.

ausgezeichnet (auszeichnen), distinguished.

Auslaut, der, die -e, auslaut, *the end sound of a word or syllable.*

ausmachen, *reg., sep.* (haben), to make a difference.

ausplündern, *reg., sep.* (haben), to rob, pillage.

ausrufen, rief aus, ausgerufen (haben), to call out, cry out.

ausruhen sich, *refl., reg., sep.* (haben), to rest.

aussehen, sah aus, ausgesehen (haben), to look, appear.

auswandern, *reg., sep.* (sein), to emigrate, go to.

auszeichnen sich, *refl., reg., sep.* (haben), to distinguish oneself; ausgezeichnet, distinguished.

auszuplündern, *see* ausplündern.

B

baden, *reg.* (haben), to bathe.

bald, soon.

Band, das, die ¨er, ribbon, band.

bat, *see* bitten.

bauen, *reg.* (haben).

Bauer, der, des -s *or* -n, die -n, peasant.

Bauerfrau, die, die -en, peasant woman.

Baute, die, die -n, building.

Beantwortung, die, die -en, answer (to), reply (to).

bebauen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to till (*the soil*).

bedenken, bedachte, bedacht (haben), to consider; to remember.

bedeuten, *reg., insep.* (haben), to mean; bedeutend, important, prominent.

Bedeutung, die, die -en, importance; meaning.

Bedienung, die, die -en, service.

Beethoven, der, Beethoven, *one of Germany's greatest musicians,* § 240 *and* § 245.

befand, *see* befinden.

befehlen, befahl, befohlen (haben), er befiehlt, *with dat.*, to command, order, § 197, 2.

befinden sich, *refl.*, befand, befunden (haben), to find oneself, to be, to do, § 206, 1; Wie befinden Sie sich? How do you do?

befreien, *reg., insep.* (haben), to free, set free.

begann, *see* beginnen.

begegnen, *reg., insep.* (sein), *with dat.*, to meet, come upon, § 166, Note, *and* § 171, 2.

beginnen, begann, begonnen (haben), to begin, § 146.

begnügen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to satisfy; sich —, *reflex.*, to content oneself, to be content.

begraben, begrub, begraben (haben), er begräbt, to bury, inter.

Begriff, der, die -e, idea; im — sein, to be about to, § 193, 3.

Begründung, die, die –en, establishing, establishment.

begrüßen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to greet.

behalten, behielt, behalten (haben), er behält, to keep, retain; to remember.

behandeln, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to treat, to use.

behaupten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to maintain; ſich —, *reflex.*, to maintain oneself.

beherrſchen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to rule, be ruler of.

bei, *prep.*, near, by, beside, § 95, 1; with, § 95, 3; *to denote circumstances*, § 95, 2; *sep. prefix as in* beifügen.

beide, both, 170, 1; *neuter*, § 170, 2; die –n, the two, § 170, 2, Note *a*; alle —, § 170, 2, Note *b*.

beifügen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), to include in, add to.

beim, *see* bei dem.

beinahe, almost.

Beiſpiel, das, die –e, example; zum —, for instance.

beizufügen, *see* beifügen.

bekannt, well-known.

bekanntlich, *adv.*, as is well known, you know.

bekommen, bekam, bekommen (haben), to get, secure, procure, § 42, 1.

belagern, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to besiege.

Belagerung, die, die –en, siege.

beliebt, beliebteſt, popular, most popular (*not* beloved, geliebt).

bemerken, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to notice.

benutzen *or* benützen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to use, make use of.

bereichern, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to enrich.

bereit, ready, § 195, 1.

Berg, der, die –e, mountain.

Berliner, *adj.* (of) Berlin.

Bern, das, Verona (*when used with Dietrich, not modern* Bern).

Beruf, der, die –e, calling, trade.

berühmt, famous.

beſaß, *see* beſitzen.

beſchäftigen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to employ; ſich — mit, *reflex.*, to busy oneself with.

Beſchäftigung, die, die –en, business, occupation.

beſchließen, beſchloß, beſchloſſen (haben), to decide, § 258, 2.

beſchloſſen, *see* beſchließen.

beſiegen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to conquer, *with obj.*, § 135, 3; der Beſiegte, des –n, die –n, the conquered one, the vanquished.

beſitzen, beſaß, beſeſſen (haben), to possess.

Beſitzer, der, die —, owner, possessor.

beſonder, *adj.*, especial, particular.

beſonders, *adv.*, especially.

beſprechen, beſprach, beſprochen (haben), er beſpricht, to talk over.

beſprochen, *see* beſprechen.

beſſer, better, *compar. of* gut, good.

beſt, best, am beſten, *superl. of* gut, good.

beſtand, *see* beſtehen.

beſtehen, beſtand, beſtanden (haben), to consist, of, aus, § 269, 1; to insist, on, auf, § 269, 2; to pass (*an examination*), § 269, 2, Note.

beſtellen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to order, § 197, 1.

beſuchen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to visit; to attend.

betonen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to emphasize.

Bevölkerung, die, die –en, population.

bevor, *conj.*, before.

bewundern, *reg., insep.* (haben), to admire.

bezahlen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to pay.

Bibel, die, die –n, Bible.

bieten, bot, geboten (haben), to offer, *see also* anbieten.

bin, am, *see* ſein.

Binde, die, die –n, bandage.

bis, *conj.*, till, until; *prep.*, till, § 107, 1; as far as, § 107, 2.

bisher', previously, up till now, *or* then.

Bismarck, der, Bismarck, *the "Iron Chancellor" of William I*, §§ 277 and 278.

bitte, please; you're welcome, § 15, 1, Note, *see* bitten.

bitten, bat, gebeten (haben), to ask, § 15, 1.

bleiben, blieb, geblieben (ſein), to stay, remain, § 180, 1.

bloß, *adv.*, just, only.

blühen, *reg.* (haben), to bloom, blossom.

Blume, die, die –n, flower.

Boden, der, die ¨— *and* ¨, bottom; floor; ground, § 260, Note.

Bogen, der, die ¨—, sheet (*of paper*); arch (*of building*); bow (*in archery*).

böſe, angry, at, auf *with acc.*

Boston, das, Boston.

bot, *see* bieten.

Bote, der, des –n, die –n, messenger.

Botſchaft, die, die –en, message; embassy.

brach, *see* brechen.

brachte, *see* bringen.

Brandenburg, das, Brandenburg, *the province from which the modern kingdom of Prussia has developed.*

Bratwurſtglöcklein, das, the Bratwurstglöcklein, *a famous little eating place in Nuremberg, lit.*, roast sausage little bell.

brauchen, *reg.* (haben), to need.

braun, brown.

Braut, die, die Bräute, fiancée (*not* bride).

brechen, brach, gebrochen (haben), er bricht, to break, *see also* ausbrechen, to break out.

Bremen, das, Bremen, *a North German city.*

Brief, der, die –e, letter.

Briefſchreiben, das, des –s, letter writing, correspondence.

bringen, brachte, gebracht (haben), to bring, *see also* un'terbringen, to shelter.

Bruch, der, die ¨e, breach.
Brücke, die, die –n, bridge.
Bruder, der, die ¨, brother.
Bruſt, die, die ¨e, breast.
Buch, das, die ¨er, book.
Buchdrucker, der, die —, printer.
Buchdruckerkunſt, die, der —, art of printing.
Buchhandel, der, des –s, book business, book trade.
Buchſtabe, der, des –n, *or* –ns, die –n, letter (*of the alphabet*).
bücken, *reg.* (haben), to bend, bow.
Bund, der, die ¨e, alliance.
Bundesgenoſſe, der, die –n, ally.
Burg, die, die –en, fortress, stronghold, castle.
Bürger, der, die —, citizen, burgher.
Bürgerkrieg, der, die –e, civil war.
Bürgerſchule, die, die –n, public school.

C

Charak'ter, der, die Charakte're, character.
Chriſtenheit, die, der —, (the people of) Christianity.
Chriſtus, der, (des) Chriſti, Christ.

D

da, *conj.*, as, § 17, 3; *adv.*, there, § 16, 2; and then, § 17, 1 *and* § 59, 3; here, § 17, 2.
dachte, *see* denken.
dafür, for it; in it (*with* to be interested); help it, § 39, 2.
dagegen, against it; etwas — haben, to have any objections.
daher, along, § 247, 1.
dahergekommen, *see* daherkommen.
daherkommen, kam daher, dahergekommen (ſein), to come along.
dahin, along, thither.
dahinfließen, floß dahin, dahingefloſſen (ſein), to flow along.
damals, at that time, then, § 59, 2.
Dampferli'nie, die, die –n, steamship line.
Dankbarkeit, die, der —, gratitude.
danken, *reg.* (haben), *with dat.*, to thank.
dann, then, next, § 59, 1.
daran', of it.
darauf', upon it; of it (ſtolz); to it (antworten); das kommt — an, that depends.
daraus', out of that, from that, *or* it.
darf, darfſt, may, *see* dürfen.
dargeſtellt, *see* darſtellen.
darin', therein, in the fact that.
darſtellen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), to represent.
darüber, about it.
das, the, that, which, *see* der.
daß, *conj.*, that, § 211, 1.
dauern, *reg.* (haben), to take, to last, § 183, 1.
davon', of it, from it, from there; away.
davonkommen, kam davon, davongekommen (ſein), to get away, escape.
dein, your (du).
dem, *dat.*, *see* der.
den, *acc.*, *see* der.
denen, *dat. pl.*, *see* der.

denken, dachte, gedacht (haben), to think, of, an, § 41, 1, von, § 41, 2.

Denkmal, das, die ¨er *and* –e, monument.

denn, *conj.*, for *with the normal order; particle to be omitted in translating*, § 33; *not* then, § 59.

der, die, das, *article*, the, § 223; *demonstrative*, that, *gen.*, deſſen, deren, deſſen, § 211, 3 *a*; *relative*, who, which, that, *gen.*, deſſen, deren, deſſen, § 208.

des, *gen.*, *see* der.

deshalb, therefore, for that reason.

deſſen, *gen. of* der, *or* welcher, whose, of which.

deſto, *correl. of* je, the, § 223.

deuteln, *reg.* (haben), to explain away, quibble over.

deutſch, German; auf —, in German; der Deutſche, des –n, die –n, the German (citizen); das Deutſch(e), des –n, German (language); er ſpricht Deutſch, he speaks German; ins Deutſche, into German; im Deutſchen, in German, § 156; origin, § 354.

Deutſchland, das, Germany.

dich, you, yourself (*familiar*), *see* du.

Dichter, der, die —, poet.

Dichtkunſt, die, die ¨e, poetry, art of making verse.

dick, thick.

die, *see* der.

dieſer, dieſe, dieſes, *or* dies, this; *pl.*, these.

Dietrich, der, Dietrich, Theodoric.

Ding, das, die –e, thing; vor allen –en, above all.

dir, you, to you, *dat.*, *see* du.

Direk'tor, der, die Direktor'en, director, principal.

doch, yet, but, after all; yes, § 237, 1; pray, *with the imperative*, § 237, 2; is it, *etc.*, § 237, 2, Note.

Dolmetſcher, der, die —, interpreter.

dort, there, yonder, over there, § 16, 1.

Dr., *abbrev. for* Doktor, Dr.

Drache, der, des –n, die –n, dragon.

Drachenblut, das, des –es, dragon's blood.

Drang, der, des –es, impulse.

drehen, *reg.* (haben), to twist.

drei, three.

dreißig, thirty.

dreißigjährig, lasting 30 years; der –e Krieg, the Thirty Years' War.

dritt, third.

Drohung, die, die –en, threat.

drucken, *reg.* (haben), to print.

Druckerei, die, die –en, printing, printing office.

du, you, thou; *used with intimate friends.*

durch, through, § 108; by.

durch'führen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), to put through, carry out.

durch'kommen, kam durch, durchgekommen (ſein), to come through, get through, pass.

durchnäſ'ſen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to soak through, wet through.

durchrei'ſen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to travel through, to "do."
Dürer, der, Albrecht Dürer, *Germany's leading artist in the sixteenth century*, § 116 *and* § 144.
dürfen, durfte, gedurft (haben), er darf, may, to be permitted, § 75, 1.
durfte, *see* dürfen.

E

eben, so, § 26, 2, Note; just, § 196, 2, Note.
ebenſo, just so.
edel, edler, noble, nobler.
ehe, before, § 248, 1.
Ehepaar, das, die -e, married couple.
Ehre, die, die -n, honor.
ehren, *reg.* (haben), to honor.
Eichſtr. *for* Eichſtraße, Oak St.
Eiferſucht, die, der —, jealousy.
eifrig, eager(ly).
eigen, (one's) own.
eigentlich, really, § 33.
eilen, *reg.* (haben), to hasten.
ein, a, an; one; der eine, the one, § 29, 2; *sep. prefix as in* einfallen, *etc.*
einander, each other, one another; *combines with prepositions as one word:* miteinander, *etc.*
eindringen, drang ein, eingedrungen (haben), to press into; to invade.
einfach, simple, simply.
Einfall, der, die ¨-e, idea.
einfallen, fiel ein, eingefallen (ſein), to occur to, *with dat.*, § 231, 2; I shouldn't think of, es fällt mir nicht ein, § 41, 1, Note.
einfiel, *see* einfallen.
eingefallen, *see* einfallen.
eingeſchlafen, *see* einſchlafen.
einig, *pron.*, some; vor einiger Zeit, some time ago; *adj.*, united.
einigen, *reg.*, (haben), to make one, unite.
einmal, once, once upon a time.
ein'miſchen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), to mix in; ſich —, *reflex.*, to "butt in."
einſchlafen, ſchlief ein, eingeſchlafen (ſein), er ſchläft ein, to go to sleep, fall asleep.
einſt, once (upon a time).
eintraf, *see* eintreffen.
eintreffen, traf ein, eingetroffen (ſein), to arrive.
einzig, single, § 9; only, § 185, 2.
einzudringen, *see* eindringen.
Eiſenbahn, die, die -en, railroad.
Elektrizität', die, die -en, electricity.
Elend, das, des -s, misery.
elf, eleven.
empfahl, *see* empfehlen.
empfand, *see* empfinden.
empfangen, empfing, empfangen (haben), er empfängt, to receive, § 261, 2.
empfehlen, empfahl, empfohlen (haben), er empfiehlt, to recommend.
empfinden, empfand, empfunden (haben), to feel, experience.
empor, up, aloft.

empor'ragen, *reg., sep.* (haben), to loom up, to jut out.
Ende, das, die –n, end.
endlich, finally.
Engländer, der, die —, Englishman.
engliſch, English; auf —, in English.
enter'ben, *reg., insep.* (haben), to disinherit.
entlang', along, § 247, 1.
entſcheiden, entſchied, entſchieden (haben), to decide, § 258, 1; entſchieden, *adv.*, decidedly.
entſchließen ſich, *refl.*, entſchloß, entſchloſſen (haben), to decide, § 258, 2.
entſchloß, *see* entſchließen.
entſtand, *see* entſtehen.
entſtehen, entſtand, entſtanden (ſein), to arise, have its start; to begin.
er, ſie, es, he, she, it, § 207, Note.
erbauen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to erect, build.
erblaſſen, *reg., insep.* (ſein), to grow pale, *fig.*, to die.
Erfahrung, die, die –en, experience.
erfand, *see* erfinden.
erfinden, erfand, erfunden (haben), to invent.
ergangen, *see* ergehen.
ergeben ſich, *refl.*, ergab, ergeben (haben), er ergibt ſich, to surrender; *adj.*, respectful; ergebenſt, very respectfully.
ergehen, erging, ergangen (ſein), *impers. with dat.*, to go, to fare; ebenſo iſt es ihm mit ſeinem Reiche ergangen, just so he fared in regard to his realm.
erhalten, erhielt, erhalten (haben), er erhält, to keep; to receive, § 261, 1; ſich —, *reflex.*, to maintain oneself.
erhielt, *see* erhalten.
erholen ſich, *reflex., reg., insep.* (haben), to recover.
erinnern, *reg., insep.* (haben), to remind; ſich —, *reflex., with gen. or* an *and acc.*, to remember.
erkennen, erkannte, erkannt (haben), to recognize.
erklären, *reg., insep.* (haben), to explain; Krieg —, to declare war.
erlauben, *reg., insep.* (haben), *with dat.*, to allow.
erleuchten, *reg., insep.* (haben), to light, illumine.
erobern, *reg., insep.* (haben), to conquer.
errichten, *reg., insep.* (haben), to erect, put up.
erſcheinen, erſchien, erſchienen (ſein), to appear.
erſchien, *see* erſcheinen.
erſchlagen, erſchlug, erſchlagen (haben), er erſchlägt, to kill.
erſchlug, *see* erſchlagen.
erſter –e –es, *adj.*, first, § 268, 1; *adv.*, for the first time; only, just, not till, § 185, 1, *b*.
erſuchen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to request, beg.
ertrank, *see* ertrinken.
ertrinken, ertrank, ertrunken (ſein), to drown, be drowned.

erwachen, *reg.*, *insep.* (ſein), to awake.
erwählen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to choose.
erzählen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to tell, relate, § 28, 1.
Erz'herzog, der, die –e *and* ¨e, archduke.
es, it; there (*or omit*), § 85, 1, 2 *and* Note; *with* ſein *and plural attribute*, they, those, § 211, 3, *b*, Note.
etwa, about, § 193, 2.
etwas, something, anything; *a following adjective is written with a capital:* etwas Gutes, § 217.
euch, *dat. and acc. of* ihr, you.
euer, your.
Europa, das, Europe.
Examen, das, die Examina, examination.
Exemplar', das, die –e, copy, sample.

F

Fabrikat', das, die –e, manufacture.
fahren, fuhr, gefahren (ſein *or* haben, § 167), er fährt, to drive, ride, go (*by train*); *see also* fortfahren, to continue.
Fall, der, die ¨e, case; auf keinen —, by no means, under no circumstances; auf alle Fälle, at any rate, anyway.
fallen, fiel, gefallen (ſein), er fällt, to fall; *see also* einfallen, herfallen, zuſammenfallen.
falls, *conjunc.*, in case.
fällt, *see* fallen.
falſch, wrong; false.
Familie, die, die –n (*four syllables*), family.
Fang, der, die ¨e, catch.
fangen, fing, gefangen (haben), er fängt, to catch; *see also* anfangen, to begin.
faſſen, *reg.* (haben), to take; to interpret.
faſt, almost.
Fechten, das, des –s, fencing, sword play.
Feder, die, die –n, pen.
fehlen, *reg.* (haben), *with dat.*, to lack; denen praktiſche Erfahrung fehlte, who lacked practical experience.
Fehler, der, die —, mistake.
Feiertag, der, die –e, holiday.
fein, delicate, fine.
Feind, der, die –e, enemy, foe.
Feldherr, der, des –n, die –en, general.
Feldzug, der, die ¨e, campaign.
Ferdinand, der, Ferdinand.
Fernſprecher, der, die —, telephone.
fertig, ready; through, finished, § 195, 2.
feſt, firm(ly), thoroughly.
Feſt, das, die –e, celebration, festival.
Feſtungsgraben, der, die Feſtungsgräben, moat.
Feſtungsmauer, die, die –n, fortified wall.
Fichte, der, Fichte, *the great German philosopher.*
fiel, *see* fallen.

finden, fand, gefunden (haben), to find, § 180, 1.
fingen, *see* fangen.
Fleck, der, die –e, spot (*of ink or dirt, etc.*).
fleißig, industrious(ly); hard, § 173, 3; am –ſten, 218, 1; aufs –ſte, § 218, 2.
fliehen, floh, geflohen (ſein), to flee.
fließen, floß, gefloſſen (ſein), to flow.
floh, *see* fliehen.
Flug, der, die ¨e, flying, flight.
Fluß, der, die ¨e, river.
flüſtern, *reg.* (haben), to whisper.
Folge, die, die –n, consequence.
folgen, *reg.* (ſein), *with dat.*, to follow, § 166, Note; folgend, following.
Form, die, die –en, form.
fort, *adv. and sep. prefix*, away.
fort'fahren, fuhr fort, fortgefahren (haben), to continue, § 233, 1 *and* § 180, 2.
fort'gehen, ging fort, fortgegangen (ſein), to go away.
fort'ſetzen, *reg., sep.* (haben), to continue, § 233, 2.
fortzufahren, *see* fortfahren.
Frage, die, die –n, question.
fragen, *reg.* (haben), to ask, § 15, 2.
Frankfurt, das, Frankfort (on the Main).
Frankfurter, *prop. adj.* (of) Frankfort.
Frankreich, das, des –s, France.
Franzoſe, der, des –n, die –n, Frenchman.
franzöſiſch, French.
Frau, die, die –en, woman; wife; Mrs.
Fräulein, das, die —, lady; Miss.
Freiheit, die, die –en, freedom.
fremd, strange, § 271, 2; der Fremde, des –n, die –n, stranger.
Freund, der, die –e, friend.
Freundin, die, die –nen, friend (woman).
freundlich, friendly; kind.
Freundſchaft, die, die –en, friendship.
Friedrich, der, Frederick.
Friſche, die, der —, freshness, vigor.
früh, early, soon; früher, sooner, before, § 248, 2, *b*.
Frühlingsblume, die, die –n, spring flower.
fuhren, *see* fahren.
führen, *reg.* (haben), to lead; *of arms* (Waffen), to bear, wield; *of war* (Krieg), to wage; *see also* durchführen, to put through, carry out.
Führer, der, die —, leader.
fünf, five; fünft, fifth.
für, for, § 109, 1; by, *etc.*, § 109, 2.
furchtbar, fearful(ly), terribly.
fürchten, *reg.* (haben), to fear; ſich —, *reflex.*, to be afraid, of, vor *with dat.*
fürchterlichſt, most terrible.
Fürſt, der, des –en, die –en, prince (*appointive, as distinguished from* der Prinz, the son of a king).
Fürſtlichkeit, die, die –en, prince, royalty.

Fuß, der, die ¨e, foot; zu —, on foot, afoot.

G

gab, *see* geben.
Galerie', die, die –n, gallery.
Gang, der, die ¨e, gait, pace, rate.
ganz, all, whole, entire, § 113, 1.
gar, at all; in fact.
Garten, der, die ¨, garden.
Gaſtfreiheit, die, der —, hospitality.
gearbeitet, *see* arbeiten.
gebadet, *see* baden.
Gebäude, das, die —, building.
geben, gab, gegeben (haben), er gibt, to give; es gibt, there is, § 85, 1; was gibt's, what's up; *see also* zugeben.
gebracht, *see* bringen.
gebrauchen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to use, make use of.
Gebüſch, das, die –e, bushes.
gedacht, *see* denken.
Gedanke, der, des –ns, die –n, thought, idea.
gedauert, *see* dauern.
Gedicht, das, die –e, poem.
gedruckt, *see* drucken.
geehrt, honored, *see* ehren.
gefallen, gefiel, gefallen (haben), es gefällt, *with dat.*, to please; to like, § 76, 3.
gefiel, *see* gefallen.
gefolgt, *see* folgen.
gefragt, *see* fragen.
gegangen, *see* gehen.
gegeben, *see* geben.
gegen, against, § 110, 1; to, toward, § 110, 2.
Gegenſatz, der, die ¨e, contrast.
geglaubt, *see* glauben.
gegründet, *see* gründen.
gehandelt, *see* handeln.
Geheimrat, der, die ¨e, secret councillor, *a common German title.*
gehen, ging, gegangen (ſein), to go; es geht, to be, § 206, 1; *see also* angehen, § 206, 2, Note *and* vorbeigehen, § 246, 4; das Gehen, going, gait; zum gleichen richtigen Gehen zu bringen, to get them to keep together correctly.
gehören, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), *with dat.*, to belong to.
gehört, *see* hören *and* gehören.
geklagt, *see* klagen.
gekommen, *see* kommen.
gekonnt, *see* können.
gelangen, *reg.*, *insep.* (ſein), to arrive, come.
gelaſſen, *see* laſſen.
Geld, das, die –er, money.
gelebt, *see* leben.
gelehrt, learned, *see* lehren; der Gelehrte, des –n, die –n, learned man.
geleiſtet, *see* leiſten.
gelernt, *see* lernen.
geliebt, *see* lieben.
gelingen, gelang, gelungen (ſein), *impers. with dat.*, to succeed, § 180, 2.
gelobt, *see* loben.
gelten, galt, gegolten (haben), es gilt, *usually impers.*, to be a question of.
gelungen, *see* gelingen.

gemacht, *see* machen.
Gemälde, das, die —, painting.
gemeinſam, common.
genannt, *see* nennen.
General', der, die -e, *or* ¨e, general.
genug, enough.
genügen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to suffice; genügend, sufficient(ly).
George, der, George (in German usually Georg').
gerade, *adj.*, straight; *adv.*, just, exactly.
geraten, geriet, geraten (ſein), to get; in Zorn —, to get angry.
Gerechtigkeit, die, der —, justice.
gerettet, *see* retten.
Gericht, das, die -e, court (of judgment).
gerichtet, *see* richten, to direct.
geriet, *see* geraten.
gern, lieber, am liebſten, gladly, to like to, § 76, 2 *and* 1.
gerüſtet, *see* rüſten.
geſagt, *see* ſagen.
Geſandte, der, des -n, die -n, envoy, ambassador.
geſchaffen, *see* ſchaffen.
geſchehen, geſchah, geſchehen (ſein), es geſchieht, *with dat.*, to happen; es geſchieht ihm recht, it serves him right.
geſcheitert, *see* ſcheitern.
geſchenkt, *see* ſchenken.
Geſchichte, die, die -n, story; history.
geſchlagen, *see* ſchlagen.
Geſchlecht, das, die -er, race, generation.
geſehen, *see* ſehen.
Geſelle, der, des -n, die -n, journeyman, companion.
Geſellſchaft, die, die -en, company.
Geſetz, das, die -e, law.
geſiegt, *see* ſiegen.
geſpielt, *see* ſpielen.
geſteckt, *see* ſtecken.
geſtern, yesterday; *a following noun is written as an adverb without a capital:* geſtern abend, geſtern nachmittag.
geſtorben, *see* ſterben.
geſucht, *see* ſuchen.
geſungen, *see* ſingen.
getan, *see* tun.
getrieben, *see* treiben.
gewaltig, mighty.
gewartet, *see* warten.
gewöhnen ſich, *reflex.*, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to get used, to, an *with acc.*; gewöhnt, accustomed, to, an *with acc.*
gewohnt, *see* wohnen.
geworden, *see* werden.
gewußt, *see* wiſſen.
gib, *2d sing. imperative*, *see* geben.
gibt, es —, there is, § 85, 1; *see* geben.
gilt, *see* gelten.
ging, gingen, *see* gehen.
glänzend, glänzendſt, brilliant, most brilliant.
glauben, *reg.* (haben), to believe, think, § 157, 1 *and* Note; to believe in, an *with acc.*, § 157, 1, Note c.
gleich, *adj.*, alike, equal, the same; zu -er Zeit, at one and the same time; *adv.*, at once.

gleichen, glich, geglichen (haben), *with dat.*, to resemble, § 76, 3, Note.

glücklich, happy, fortunate.

gnädig, gracious; *common term of address to ladies:* gnädige Frau, gnädiges Fräulein.

Goethe, der, Goethe, *Germany's greatest genius.*

golden, golden.

Gott, der, die ¨er, God, god.

Gramma'tik, die, die –en, grammar.

grau, gray.

greifen, griff, gegriffen (haben), to grasp; *see also* angreifen, to attack.

Greis, der, des –es *or* –en, die –e *or* –en, the old man, gray-beard.

Griechisch(e), das, des –en, Greek.

griff, *see* greifen.

Grimm, der, *prop. name*, Jakob Grimm, *probably the greatest philologist Germany ever produced.*

groß, größer, größt, large, big, great, greater, greatest; *as noun*, Großes, great things.

Gruft, die, die ¨e (burial) vault.

Grund, der, die ¨e, reason, § 260.

gründen, *reg.* (haben), to establish, found.

Gruß, der, die ¨e, greeting.

grüßen, *reg.* (haben), to greet, send regards to, *with acc.*

Gut, das, die ¨er, property; estate.

gut, *adj.*, good; *adv.*, well, § 234, 1.

Gutenberg, der, Gutenberg, *the inventor of printing*, § 131.

gut'mütig, good-natured.

H

haben, hatte, gehabt (haben), er hat, to have; *often translated by English past when used as auxiliary; see* §§ 164, 165, *and* 167.

halb, half, § 184, 2.

Hälfte, die, die –n, half, § 184, 1.

halten, hielt, gehalten (haben), er hält, to hold, to keep; sich —, *reflex.*, to keep oneself; — für, to consider, take for, § 157, 3 *and* § 183, 4; to take (*a newspaper*), § 183, 4.

Hamburg, das, Hamburg, *the second largest city in Germany.*

Hamburg-Amerika-Linie, die, the Hamburg-America Line, *the world's largest steamship company.*

Hand, die, die ¨e, hand.

Handel, der, des –s, trade.

handeln, *reg.* (haben), to act.

Hans, der, John; Hans Sachs, *Germany's greatest master-singer*, § 116.

hart, hard, § 173, 1.

hartnäckig, obstinate.

hassen, *reg.* (haben), to hate.

hat, *see* haben.

hatte, hätten, *see* haben (past subj.).

häufig, frequent(ly).

Haus, das, die Häuser, house; zu –e, at home; nach –e, (to) home.

Hedwig, die, Hedwig.
Heer, das, die -e, army.
Heerführer, der, die —, leader, general.
heftig, severe(ly), heavy.
Hegel, der, Hegel, *one of Germany's greatest philosophers.*
heilig, holy.
Heimat, die, die -en, home.
heimlich, secret(ly).
Heinrich, der, Henry.
heiraten, *reg.* (haben), to marry, § 51, 2.
heißen, hieß, geheißen (haben), to be called, § 49, 2; to be (*translated*), § 49, 2, Note.
heiter, cheerful(ly).
Held, der, des -en, die -en, hero.
Heldengreis, der, des -es *or* -en, die -e *or* -en, heroic old man, old hero.
helfen, half, geholfen (haben), er hilft, *with dat.*, to help, § 39, 1.
Helmholtz, der, Helmholtz, *one of Germany's great physicists.*
her, hither; *denoting motion toward the speaker, not translated,* § 149, 1 *and* § 149, 2, Note; *following an acc.*, ago, § 4, Note; hin und —, hither and thither, to and fro; *see also* herfallen.
herangewachsen, *see* heranwachsen.
heranwachsen, wuchs heran, herangewachsen (sein), er wächst heran, to grow up.
herausgeben, gab heraus, herausgegeben (haben), er gibt heraus, to publish.
herausgegeben, *see* herausgeben.
herein, in (*toward the speaker*); —! come in! (*in answer to a knock at the door*).
hereinkommen, kam herein, hereingekommen (sein), to come in.
herfallen, fiel her, hergefallen (sein), er fällt her, to fall; über jemand herfallen, to come down hard upon, to attack severely.
Hermann, der, Hermann, Arminius.
Hermannsschlacht, die, Hermann's Battle, *name given to the fight in the Teutoburg Forest, where Hermann defeated the Romans in 9 A.D.*
Herr, der, des -n, die -en, gentleman; sir; Mr.; — Gott, Lord God, the Lord.
herrschen, *reg.* (haben), to rule, reign.
heruntergezogen, *see* herunterziehen.
herunterziehen, zog herunter, heruntergezogen (haben), to pull down.
Herzog, der, die -e *and* ¨e, duke.
heute, to-day; *a following noun is written as an adverb without a capital:* heute abend, heute morgen.
hielt, *see* halten.
hier, here; *compare* da, § 16, 2.
hieß, *see* heißen.
Hildegund, die, Hildegund.
hilf, *pres. imperative from* helfen.
hin, *denoting motion away from the speaker,* § 149, 1 *and* § 149, 2, Note, *usually not translated,*

— und her, to and fro, hither and thither, § 149, 2.

hinab'ſchauen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), to look down.

hinab'ſteigen, ſtieg hinab, hinabgeſtiegen (ſein), to go down, descend.

hinein, in.

hineintun, tat hinein, hineingetan (haben), to put in.

hingehen, ging hin, hingegangen (ſein), to go (away) *from the speaker*.

hinſpritzen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben *or* ſein), to spatter.

hinten, at the back *or* rear, behind.

hinter, *prep. with dat. or acc.*, behind.

hinun'terblicken, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), to look down.

Hiſtoriker, der, die —, historian.

hoch, (*declined*, hoher), höher, am höchſten, high, higher, highest.

Hochachtung, die, der —, esteem.

hochachtungsvoll, with great esteem.

hoffen, *reg.* (haben), to hope, for, auf *with acc.*

höflich, höflichſt, polite(ly), most politely.

Hoheit, die, der —, highness; Kaiſerliche —, Imperial Highness.

holen, *reg.* (haben), to get, fetch, § 42, 2; *see also* nachholen, to make up.

Holzſchnitt, der, die -e, woodcut.

hören, *reg.* (haben), to hear, § 180, 1; *see also* aufhören, to stop.

Hoſentaſche, die, die —, trousers pocket.

Hotel', das, die -s, hotel.

hundert, hundred.

Hut, der, die ¨-e, hat.

I

ich, I.

Idee, die, die -n, idea.

ihm, to him *or* it, *dat. of* er *or* es.

ihn, him, it (Namen). *acc. of* er.

Ihnen, you, *dat. of* Sie.

ihnen, to them, *dat. of* ſie.

Ihr, your.

ihr, her, their; to her, *dat. of* ſie, she; you, *pron. of 2d pers. plu.*

im, *see* in dem.

immer, always.

in, in, into, to, § 121.

indem, while; for English verbal, § 189, 1.

Induſtrie', die, die -n, industry.

Inlaut, der, die -e, inlaut, *the middle sound, that is, not at either end, of a word or syllable.*

ins, *see* in das.

Inſchrift, die, die -en, inscription.

intereſſant', interesting.

Intereſ'ſe, das, die -n, interest, in, für *with acc.*

intereſſie'ren ſich, *reflex.*, intereſſier'te, intereſſiert' (haben), to be interested, in, für *with acc.*

intim', intimate, friendly.

iſt, *see* ſein.

Italien, das, Italy.

J

ja, yes; by all means, § 200, 1; why, you know, § 200, 2.
Jahr, das, die –e, year.
Jahrhun'dert, das, die –e, century.
je, ever, § 257, 1; *correl.*, je — deſto, the — the.
jeder, jede, jedes, every, each.
jedoch, yet, but, nevertheless.
Jena, das, Jena.
jener, jene, jenes, that, § 211, 3, *b*.
jetzig, *adj.*, of now, of to-day, present.
jetzt, now.
Johann, der, John.
Jugend, die, der —, youth.
jung, young.
Jüngling, der, die –e, young man, youth.

K

Kaiſer, der, die —, emperor, kaiser.
Kaiſerkrone, die, die –n, imperial crown.
kaiſerlich, imperial.
kalt, cold.
kam, kamen, *see* kommen.
Kampf, der, die ¨e, combat, fight.
kämpfen, *reg.* (haben), to fight.
Kampfſpiel, das, die –e, combat, gladiatorial games.
kann, can, *see* können.
kannte, *see* kennen.
Kant, der, Kant, *one of Germany's greatest philosophers.*
Karl, der, Charles; — der Große, Charlemagne.
Karlſtraße, die, der —, Charles St.
kaufen, *reg.* (haben), to buy.
kaum, hardly.
kehrte, *see* zurückkehren.
kein, not a, not any, no, none, § 9.
kennen, kannte, gekannt (haben), to be acquainted with, know, § 58, 2; to get acquainted with, meet, § 171, 2, Note.
Kind, das, die –er, child.
Kirche, die, die –n, church.
klagen, *reg.* (haben), to complain.
Klaſſe, die, die –n, class.
Klatt, *prop. name*, Klatt.
klein, small, little, § 194, 1.
Kleinaſien, das, des –s, Asia Minor.
klingen, klang, geklungen (haben), to sound.
Kloſter, das, die ¨, convent.
klug, clever.
Knabe, der, des –n, die –n, boy.
Koberger, der, Anton Koberger, *a printer of Nuremberg.*
Koch, der, Koch, *the great German scientist.*
Kolle'gin, die, die –nen, colleague (*lady*).
Koloſſeum, das, des –s, colosseum, *the huge amphitheatre in Rome, where the games and gladiatorial combats were held.*
kommen, kam, gekommen (ſein), *imperative*, komm, to come; to be (ſpät, late), § 219, 2; *see also* ankommen, to arrive, vorkommen, to occur.
Komponiſt', der, des –en, die –en, composer (*of music*).
König, der, die –e, king.

Königin, die, die –nen, queen.

Königsberg, das, Königsberg, *a city in northeast Germany.*

können, konnte, gekonnt (haben), er kann, to be able, can, § 75, 2; to know (how to do), § 58, 3.

konnte, könnte, could, *see* können.

Konrad, der, Konrad *or* Conrad, *name of* (1) *the Franconian, the predecessor of Henry the Fowler,* § 54, *and* (2) *of the Hohenstaufen king who took Weinsberg,* § 91.

Konstantino'pel, das, Constantinople.

Konversations'buch, das, die ¨er, conversational manual.

Kopf, der, die ¨e, head.

Kornblume, der, die –n, cornflower, *the national flower of Germany; a conventionalized form of it is the cover design of this book.*

Kornfeld, das, die –er, cornfield, field of grain. (*Corn, that is, Indian corn, is little known in Germany.*)

kosten, *reg.* (haben), to cost; to be, § 206, 2, Note.

kräftig, strong.

Kreis, der, die –e, circle.

Kreuz, das, die –e, cross.

Kreuzzug, der, die Kreuzzüge, crusade.

Krieg, der, die –e, war; — führen, to wage war; — erklären, to declare war.

kriegsbereit, ready for war.

Kriegskunst, die, die ¨e, strategy.

Kriegsschauplatz, der, die ¨e, scene of war.

Kriemhilde, die, Kriemhilde.

Krone, die, die –n, crown.

kümmern, *reg.* (haben), to bother; sich —, *reflex.*, to care, about, um *with acc.*; Was kümmert mich die Ruhe der Toten? What do I care about the peace of the dead?

Kunst, die, die ¨e, art.

Künstler, der, die —, artist.

künstlerisch, artistic.

Kunstsinn, der, des –s, artistic sense.

Kupferstich, der, die –e, etching.

Kurfürst, der, des –en, die –en, elector, § 192.

kurz, short(ly).

Kyffhäuser, der, Kyffhäuser, *mountain in Thuringia, where Barbarossa is said to be sleeping and where Germany has erected a huge monument to Emperor William I, who restored the German Empire.*

L

laden, lud, geladen (haben), er ladet *or* lädt, to load.

Land, das, die ¨er, land, country; auf dem –e, in the country.

Landgraf, der, des –en, die –en, count.

lang, *adj.*, länger, long, longer; for, § 5; längere Zeit, rather long, quite a while.

lange, *adv.*, a long time, long, § 50, 2, Note.

lassen, ließ, gelassen (haben), er

läßt, *imperative*, laß, to let; to have (made *or* done), § 68, 4.
laufen, lief, gelaufen (ſein), er läuft, to run.
laut, lauter, loud, louder.
leben, *reg.* (haben), to live, exist, § 6, 2.
Leben, das, die —, life.
Lebensjahr, das, die -e, year of (his) age.
lebhaft, lively.
legen, *reg.* (haben), to lay; to put, § 222, 2.
Legion', die, die -en, legion, *a Roman regiment.*
Lehrer, der, die —, teacher.
Leiche, die, die -n, corpse, (dead) body.
leicht, light, easy.
leid, es tut mir leid, I am sorry; tät' mir leide, I should be sorry for.
leiden, litt, gelitten (haben), to suffer; to stand, § 221, 2.
leiſten, *reg.* (haben), to accomplish; Widerſtand —, to offer resistance.
lernen, *reg.* (haben), to learn, § 81; to study (*except in advanced work, when* ſtudieren *is used*).
leſen, las, geleſen (haben), er lieſt, to read.
letzt, last.
Leute, die (*pl.*), people.
lieb, dear.
lieben, *reg.* (haben), to love.
lieber, rather, *see* gern.
Lieblingsblume, die, die -n, favorite flower.
liebten, *see* lieben.
Lied, das, die -er, song.
lief, *see* laufen.
liegen, lag, gelegen (haben), to lie; to be, § 206, 2.
ließ, *see* laſſen.
Linden, das, Linden, *a city near Hannover.*
Linie, die (*three syllables*), line.
Liſt, die, die -en, trick, subterfuge.
litt, *see* leiden.
Lloyd, der, Lloyd, North German Lloyd, *name of a large German steamship company with headquarters in Bremen.*
loben, *reg.* (haben), to praise.
luden, *see* laden.
Luiſe, die, Luise, Louise.
Luther, der, Luther, *pronounced with short* u *in German.*

M

machen, *reg.* (haben), to make; to do, § 77, 1; to take, § 183, 3; *see also* ausmachen.
Macht, die, die ¨-e, power.
Mädchen, das, die —, girl.
mag, *see* mögen.
mahlen, mahlte, gemahlen (haben), to grind (*of corn*).
Mal, das, die -e, (point of) time, § 50, 3.
malen, *reg.* (haben), to paint.
Maler, der, die —, painter.
Malerei', die, die -en, (the art of) painting.
man, one, they, you, we, § 57.
Mann, der, die ¨-er, man, husband, § 19, 2.

Marcus, der, Mark.
Marke, die, die –n, sign, trademark.
Markt, der, die ¨e, market (place).
Marktplatz, der, die Marktplätze, marketplace.
Martin, der, Martin.
Maß, das, die –e, measure.
Matt., for Matthäus, der, des Matthäi, Matthew.
Maximilian, der, Maximilian.
mehr, more; rather, § 218, 3.
mein, my, mine; — Herr, sir.
meinen, *reg.* (haben), to mean (*of persons*); to think, § 157, 1.
Meinung, die, die –en, opinion; meiner — nach, in my opinion.
meist, most(ly); am meisten, most(ly).
meistens, mostly, usually.
Meistersänger, der, die —, mastersinger.
Mensch, der, des –en, die –en, man, § 19, 1.
mich, me, *see* ich.
Minnesänger, der, die —, minnesinger, troubador.
Minute, die, die –n, minute.
mir, to me, *see* ich.
mißverstanden, *see* mißverstehen.
mißverstehen, mißverstand, mißverstanden (haben), to misunderstand.
mit, *prep.*, with, § 96; *adv.*, along; § 247, 2; *sep. prefix as in* mitgehen, mitteilen.
miteinan'der, with one another *or* each other.
mitgehen, ging mit, mitgegangen (sein), to go, to go along *or* with.
mitnehmen, nahm mit, mitgenommen (haben), er nimmt mit, to take along.
mitteilen, *reg., sep.* (haben), *with dat.*, to inform; to share with.
Mittelalter, das, des –s, the Middle Ages.
mitten, *adv.*, in the middle; right (into, *etc.*).
mitzunehmen, *see* mitnehmen.
möchte, should *or* would like, § 266, 1, *see* mögen.
mögen, mochte, gemocht (haben), er mag, may, § 75, 2; to like, § 76, 1.
möglich, possible.
Mommsen, der, Mommsen, *one of Germany's greatest historians.*
Monat, der, die –e, month.
Morgen, der, die —, morning; *written as adverb without a capital after* gestern, heute, *etc.*
morgen, *adv.*, to-morrow; auf —, for to-morrow.
Mose, der, Moses; 1 Mose, Genesis; 2 Mose, Exodus; 3 Mose, Leviticus; 4 Mose, Numbers; 5 Mose, Deuteronomy.
Möser, der, *prop. name*, Möser.
Mühle, die, die –n, mill.
Müller, der, die —, miller; *prop. name*, Miller.
müssen, mußte, gemußt (haben), er muß, to have to, must, § 68, 3.
mußte, *see* müssen.
Mutter, die, die ¨, mother.

N

na, *excl.*, well.
nach, *prep.*, after, § 97, 2 *and* § 259, 2; to (*of places*), § 97, 1; according to, by, § 97, 3; *sep. prefix*, nachholen, to make up.
Nachbar, der, des –s *and* –n, die –n, neighbor.
nachdem, *conj.*, after, § 259, 1.
nachgeben, gab nach, nachgegeben (haben), er gibt nach, to give in, yield.
nachholen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), to make up (*work*, *etc.*).
Nachricht, die, die –en, news, report.
Nächste, der, des –n, die –n, neighbor, *superl. of* nah, near.
nach'ſchlagen, ſchlug nach, nachgeſchlagen (haben), er ſchlägt nach, to look up (*in a book*, *etc.*).
Nacht, die, die ¨e, night.
Nachtigall, die, die –en, nightingale.
Nachwelt, die, der —, posterity.
nachzuholen, *see* nachholen.
nähern ſich, *reflex.*, *reg.* (haben), *with dat.*, to approach.
Name, der, des –ns, die –n, name.
Nation', die, die –en, nation.
National'blume, die, die –n, national flower.
natür'lich, of course.
Natur'treue, die, der —, naturalness; exactness.
neben, by, beside, § 122.
Neffe, der, des –n, die –n, nephew.
nehmen, nahm, genommen (haben), er nimmt, to take, § 183 *and* 2, from, *dat.*
nein, no.
nennen, nannte, genannt (haben), to call, to name, § 49, 1.
neu, new, anew.
nicht, not; *position of*, § 37.
nichts, nothing; *a following adjective is written with a capital:* nichts Schlechtes, § 217.
nie, never.
nieder, *adv. and sep. prefix*, down.
nie'derbücken ſich, *reflex.*, *reg. sep.* (haben), to bend down.
nie'derknien, *reg.*, *sep.* (ſein), to kneel down.
niederſank, *see* niederſinken.
niederſinken, ſank nieder, niedergeſunken (ſein), to sink down.
niemals, never.
noch, yet, still, as yet; more, another, § 30, 2; — vor, even before; *sometimes not translated*, § 62; before, § 248, 2, *a.*
Nonne, die, die –n, nun.
norddeutſch, *adj.*, North German; der Norddeutſche, des –n, die –n, North German (man).
nun, well, § 234, 2; now, § 234, 2, Note.
nur, only, § 185, 1, *a.*
Nürnberg, das, Nuremberg.

O

ob, if, whether.
oben, above; upstairs.
obwohl, although.
oder, or.
öffnen, *reg.* (haben), to open.
oft, often.
ohne, without; *with infin.*, § 181; *with clause*, § 190.

ohn'mächtig, fainting, unconscious.
Ohr, das, die –en, ear.
Ort, der, die –e *or* ¨er, place, § 150, 1.
Österreich, das, Austria.
Otto, der, Otto.

P

Palaſt', der, die Paläſte, palace.
Papier', das, die –e, paper.
Park, der, die –e, park.
Parlament', das, die –e, parliament, congress.
Paul, der, Paul.
Pegnitz, die, Pegnitz, *the river on which Nuremberg lies.*
Petriſtr., Petriſtraße, die, Petri St.
pflücken, *reg.* (haben), to pluck, pick.
Philipp', der, Philip.
Plan, der, die ¨e, plan.
Platz, der, die ¨, square, § 150, 2, *a*; room, § 150, 2, *b*; seat, § 150, 2, *c*.
plündern, *reg.* (haben), to plunder, pillage.
poli'tiſch, political.
Poſtnachnahme, unter —, to be collected by the post office, "C. O. D."
Potsdam, das, Potsdam.
prachtvoll, splendid(ly), magnificent(ly).
praktiſch, practical.
Prediger, der, die —, preacher; — Salomonis, (*Bible*), Ecclesiastes.
Preis, der, die –e, price; prize.
Preſſe, die, die –n (printing) press.
Preußen, das, Prussia.
preußiſch, Prussian.
Prinz, der, des –en, die –en, prince.
Profeſ'ſor, der, des –s, die Profeſſo'ren, professor.

Q

Quelle, die, die –n, spring (*of water*).

R

Rat, der, die ¨e, advice.
Rathaus, das, die ¨er, city hall.
Räuber, der, die —, robber.
rechnen, *reg.* (haben), to count, on, auf *with acc.*
Recht, das, die –e, right, privilege.
recht, right (*morally*), § 172, 1; recht haben, to be right, § 172, 1, *b*.
Rede, die, die –n, speech; Rede halten, to make a speech.
reden, *reg.* (haben), to talk, speak, § 270, 2.
Regel, die, die –n, rule.
regelmäßig, regular.
regie'ren, regier'te, regiert' (haben), to rule, reign.
Regierung, die, die –en, government.
Reich, das, die –e, empire.
reichen, *reg.* (haben), to pass, to hand to, § 246, 1.
Reichtum, der, die ¨er, wealth, richness.
Reihe, die, die –n, row; line; turn; an wem iſt die Reihe, whose turn is it?
Reiſe, die, die –n, trip, journey.
reißen, riß, geriſſen (haben), to snatch, tear.

Reiten, das, des –s, riding.
Religion', die, die –en, religion.
Reſt, der, die –e, rest, remainder.
retten, *reg.* (haben), to rescue, save.
richten, *reg.* (haben), to direct.
richtig, right, correct, § 172, 2.
rief, *see* rufen.
Rieſe, der, des –n, giant.
Rieſenſtandbild, die –er, gigantic *or* colossal statue.
rieſig, gigantic.
Ritter, der, die —, knight.
Rock, der, die ¨e, coat.
Roland, der, Roland, *nephew of Charlemagne;* Roland column, *emblem of civic liberty,* § 72.
Rolandſäule, die, die –n, Roland column, § 72.
Rolandsbogen, der, des –s, Roland's arch, *a ruin on the Rhine.*
Rom, das, Rome.
Römer, der, die —, Roman.
römiſch, Roman.
Röntgen, der, Röntgen, *one of Germany's great scientists, discoverer of the X-ray.*
rot, red.
Rotbart, der, Redbeard, Barbarossa.
Rücken, der, die —, back.
Rückkehr, die, der —, return.
Rudolf, der, Rudolph.
rufen, rief, gerufen (haben), to call, cry out; *see also* ausrufen, to cry out, call out.
Ruhe, die, der —, rest, peace.
ruhen, *reg.* (haben), to rest.
ruhig, calm(ly), quiet(ly).
rüſten, *reg.* (haben), to prepare for war.
rüſtig, hearty, hale.

S

Sache, die, die –n, affair; *pl.* things.
Sachs, der, Hans Sachs.
Sachſen, das, Saxony.
Sage, die, die –n, saga, saying, myth, tale.
ſagen, *reg.* (haben), to say; to tell.
ſah, ſahen, *see* ſehen.
Salomo, der, Solomon; Prediger –nis, Ecclesiastes.
ſandte, *see* ſenden.
ſangen, *see* ſingen.
Sänger, der, die —, singer.
Sängerkrieg, der, die –e, singer's contest.
Sannemann, *prop. name,* Sannemann.
ſaß, ſaſſen, *see* ſitzen.
Satz, der, die ¨e, sentence.
ſchaffen, ſchuf, geſchaffen (haben), to accomplish; to create.
Schatten, der, die —, shadow.
ſchätzen, *reg.* (haben), to esteem, to rate.
ſcheitern, *reg.* (haben *and* ſein), to shipwreck, to founder.
ſchenken, *reg.* (haben), to give, to present.
ſcherzen, *reg.* (haben), to joke; ſcherzend, joking(ly).
ſcheuchen, *reg.* (haben), to frighten away, scare.
Schiff, das, die –e, ship.
Schiller, der, Schiller, *one of Ger-*

many's greatest poets and dramatists.

Schlacht, die, die –en, battle.

Schlaf, der, des –es, sleep.

ſchlafen, ſchlief, geſchlafen (haben), er ſchläft, *past subj.*, ſchliefe, to sleep.

ſchlagen, ſchlug, geſchlagen (haben), er ſchlägt, to beat, defeat; to strike, hit; *see also* nachſchlagen, to look up (*in a book*).

ſchlank, slender.

ſchlecht, bad(ly).

ſchliefe, *see* ſchlafen.

ſchließen, ſchloß, geſchloſſen (haben), to shut.

ſchließlich, finally.

Schloß, das, die ¨er, castle; lock.

ſchlug, *see* ſchlagen.

Schluß, der, die ¨e, end, close.

ſchmachten, *reg.* (haben), to pine, for, nach *with dat.*

ſchnell, fast, swift(ly), quick(ly).

ſchön, ſchönſt, beautiful, most beautiful.

ſchon, already; all right, never fear, § 128, 2; *sign of continued action*, § 228, 2 *and* Note; *sometimes omitted in translation*, § 128, 1.

Schopenhauer, der, Schopenhauer, *one of Germany's great philosophers.*

ſchöpfen, *reg.* (haben), to drink, quaff; Verdacht ſchöpfen, to entertain suspicion.

ſchreiben, ſchrieb, geſchrieben (haben), to write; das Schreiben, des –s, writing (*of a letter, etc.*).

ſchrieb, *see* ſchreiben.

Schrift, die, die –en, (hand)writing, script.

Schuh, der, die –e, shoe.

Schule, die, die –n, school.

Schüler, der, die —, pupil.

ſchwärmen, *reg.* (haben), to be enthusiastic, to be wild, about, für.

ſchwarz, black.

ſchwer, heavy; *of work*, hard, § 173, 2.

Schwert, das, die –er, sword.

ſchwor, *see* ſchwören.

ſchwören, ſchwor, geſchworen (haben), to swear, to take oath.

ſechzig, sixty.

ſehen, ſah, geſehen (haben), er ſieht, to see, § 180, 1; zu ſehen, to be seen, § 204, 2, Note.

ſehnen ſich, *reflex.*, *reg.* (haben), to long, for, nach *with dat.*

ſehr, very, much; ſo ſehr, so much.

ſei, ſeien, *pres. subj. of* ſein; ſeid, *imperative second plural of* ſein.

Seide, die, die –n, silk.

ſein, war, geweſen (ſein), ich bin, to be; *as aux.*, to have, §§ 164, 166, *and* 167; es iſt, there is, § 85, 2.

ſein, his, its.

ſeit, *prep.*, since, § 98, 1; for, in, § 98, 2; *conj.*, since.

ſeitdem, *adv.*, since (then).

Seite, die, die –n, side; zur Seite, by, at one's side, aside; page (*of a book*).

ſelber, self, selves, § 196, 2.

ſelbſt, *intensive pron.*, self, selves,

§ 196, 2; *adv.*, even, § 196, 2, Note.

ſelten, seldom.

ſeltſam, strange, § 271, 1.

Sena'tor, der, die Senato'ren, senator.

ſenden, ſandte, geſandt (haben), to send; *it is a bit more formal than* ſchicken.

ſetzen, *reg.* (haben), to set; to put, § 222, 3; ſich —, *reflex.*, to sit down, § 18, 2; *see also* fortſetzen, to continue, § 233, 2.

ſeufzen, *reg.* (haben), to sigh.

ſich, *reflex. pron. dat. or acc.*, self, selves, § 196, 1; *sometimes omitted in translation*, § 12, line 4.

ſie, she; they.

Sie, you.

ſieben, seven.

ſiebzehn, seventeen.

Sieg, der, die -e, victory.

ſiegen, *reg.* (haben), to conquer, *intrans.*

Siegfried, der, Siegfried, *the young hero of German myth.*

ſiegreich, rich in victories, victorious.

ſieht, *see* ſehen.

ſind, *see* ſein.

ſingen, ſang, geſungen (haben), to sing.

Sinn, der, die -e, sense; thought, idea.

Sinnbild, das, die -er, emblem, token.

ſitzen, ſaß, geſeſſen (haben), to sit, § 18, 1.

ſo, so, then, § 26, 1; *omitted in translation when at the beginning of a conclusion*, § 255.

ſobald', *conj.*, as soon as.

Sockel, der, die —, base, pedestal.

ſogar', in fact.

ſogleich', at once.

Sohn, der, die ¨e, son.

ſolch, such; so.

Soldat', der, des -en, die -en, soldier.

ſollen, *reg.* (haben), ich ſoll, ought to; shall, should, § 69, 2; to be (about) to; Was ſoll denn das? What do you mean by that?

Sommer, der, die —, summer.

ſondern, but (rather), § 43, 2.

ſonſt, else, besides, § 30, 1, Note.

ſorgen, *reg.* (haben), to care, for, für.

Spanien, das, Spain.

ſparſamer, more saving.

ſpät, ſpäter, late, later, § 219, 2.

ſpazieren gehen, to go walking; ſpazieren fahren, to go driving, § 180, 1.

Spiel, das, die -e, play.

ſpielen, *reg.* (haben), to play; to play the part of.

Spitze, die, die -n, point; an der —, at the head.

Sprache, die, die -n, language.

ſprächen, *past subj. of* ſprechen.

ſprechen, ſprach, geſprochen (haben), er ſpricht, to speak, talk, § 270, 1; to see, § 270, 1, Note.

Staat, der, die -en, state.

Stadt, die, die ¨e, city; in die —, to town.

ſtand, *see* ſtehen.

Standbild, das, die -er, statue.
ſtarb, *see* ſterben.
ſtark, *adj.*, strong; *adv.*, hard, § 173, 4.
ſtärken, *reg.* (haben), to strengthen.
Stätte, die, die -n, locality.
ſtecken, *reg.* (haben), to put, stick, § 222, 4.
ſtehen, ſtand, geſtanden (haben), to stand, § 221, 1; to be, § 206, 2.
Stelle, die, die -n, place, passage, § 150, 3.
ſtellen, *reg.* (haben), to put (*upright*), stand, § 222, 1; to ask (*questions*), § 15, 2, Note; to set (*clocks*), § 222, 1, Note; to place, rank, § 214, line 4.
Stellung, die, die -en, place, position, § 150, 4.
ſterben, ſtarb, geſtorben (ſein), er ſtirbt, to die.
ſtets, always.
Stich, der, die -e, sting, prick; im Stich(e) laſſen, ließ, gelaſſen (haben), er läßt, to leave in the lurch.
Stiefel, der, die —, boot; shoe.
ſtill, still, quiet.
ſtimmen, *reg.* (haben), to be in tune; das ſtimmt, that's right, § 172, 2, Note.
ſtolz, proud, of, auf *with acc.*
Straße, die, die -n, street; *see* § 299.
ſtreiten, ſtritt, geſtritten (haben), to quarrel.
Strohwitwe, die, die -n, grass widow.
Student', der, des -en, die -en, student, *at a college or university.*
ſtudie'ren, ſtudier'te, ſtudiert' (haben), to be a student, to study (*advanced work*); *compare* lernen.
Stunde, die, die -n, hour; lesson, § 169, 2, Note.
ſtundenlang, for hours.
ſuchen, *reg.* (haben), to seek, to look for, § 7; to try.
Südamerika, das, South America.
ſüddeutſch, South German; der Süddeutſche, des -n, die -n, the South German (citizen).
Sultan, der, die -e (*both syllables accented equally*), sultan.

T

Tacitus, der, Tacitus, *a Roman historian, who wrote a work,* Germania, *on the Germans of his time.*
Tag, der, die -e, day; über acht -e, a week from.
tagen, *reg.* (haben), to meet in council; *compare* der Reichstag, *meeting of the council of the realm,* parliament, congress.
Tannhäuſer, der, Tannhäuser, *an opera by Wagner.*
tapfer, brave, bold.
Taſche, die, die -n, pocket.
Tat, die, die -en, deed; in der —, in fact.
taten, täte, *past ind. and subj. of* tun.
tatenlos, without deeds, impractical; der Tatenloſe, visionary, dreamer.

tatenreich, rich in deeds; der Tatenreiche, des -n, die -n, man who has accomplished much.
Tatſache, die, die -n, fact.
taugen, *reg.* (haben), to amount to.
teilen, *see* mitteilen.
teilnahm, *see* teilnehmen.
teilnehmen, nahm teil, teilgenommen (haben), er nimmt teil, to take part, in, an *with dat.*
Telephon, das, die -e, telephone.
Teſtament, das, die -e; das Neue —, the New Testament.
teuer, teuerſte, precious, valuable; most precious.
Teufel, der, die —, devil.
Teutoburger, *adj.*, (of) Teutoburg.
Th., *abbreviation for* Thomas *or* Theodor.
Theater, das, die —, theater.
Thron, der, die -e, throne.
Thüringen, das, Thuringia, *a group of small states in the most picturesque part of central Germany.*
tiefbewegt, deeply moved.
Tinte, die, die -n, ink.
Tintenfaß, das, die ¨er, inkstand, inkwell.
Tiſch, der, die -e, table.
Titel, der, die —, title.
Tod, der, die -e *or* Todesfälle, death.
tot, dead; die Toten, the dead.
töten, *reg.* (haben), to kill.
tragen, trug, getragen (haben), er trägt, to bear, carry; to wear.
Trank, der, die ¨e, potion, drink.
trat, *see* treten.
traurig, sad(ly).
treffen, traf, getroffen (haben), er trifft, to meet, § 171, 1; to hit.
treiben, trieb, getrieben (haben), to drive; to work at, study.
trennen, *reg.* (haben), to separate, divide.
Trenton, das, Trenton.
treten, trat, getreten (ſein), er tritt, to go; to step; *see also* auftreten, to step up, to appear (*on the stage*); zurücktreten, to step back.
treu, faithful.
Treue, die, fidelity.
trocken, dry.
trug, *see* tragen.
Trugbild, das, die -er, illusion, phantasy.
Trunk, der, die ¨e, drinking.
Trupp, der, die -s, troop (*of soldiers*).
Tuch, das, die ¨er, cloth.
tun, tat, getan (haben), to do, § 77, 2; to put, § 222, 5; leid tun, *with dat.*, to hurt; tät' mir leide, I'd be sorry for.

U

üben, *reg.* (haben), to practise.
über, over, above, § 123, 1; about, § 123, 2 *and* § 193, 1; by way of, § 123, 2, Note; from (*today, etc.*), § 123, 2, Note.
überall', everywhere, all over.
überar'beiten ſich, *reg., insep.* (haben), to overwork.
Überbringer, der, die —, bearer.
überein'ſtimmen, *reg., sep.* (ha-

ben), to agree, with, mit, § 232, 1.

übergab', *see* übergeben.

Ü'bergabe, die, die –n, surrender.

überge'ben, übergab', überge'ben (haben), er übergibt', to give over, intrust.

überhaupt', at all, anyway, § 160.

überle'gen, *adj.*, superior, to, *dat.*

überſet'zen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to translate, § 154, 2, Note.

ü'berſetzen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), to ferry over, put across, § 154, 2, Note.

Überſet'zung, die, die –en, translation.

übertref'fen, übertraf', übertrof'fen (haben), er übertrifft', to surpass, excel.

übertrifft', *see* übertref'fen.

überzeu'gen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to convince.

Ufer, das, die —, shore.

Uhr, die, die –en, watch, clock, § 169, 1; time, § 50, 4 *and* § 169, 2; o'clock, § 50, 4 *and* § 169, 2.

um, around, about, § 111, 1 *and* § 193, 1; for, § 111, 2; at, § 111, 3; *with infin. and* zu, in order to, § 197, 2, Note.

umfaſ'ſen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to include.

umge'ben, umgab', umge'ben (haben), er umgibt, to surround.

umſtrick'en, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to insnare.

Umlaut, der, die –e, umlaut, *assimilation of a vowel to* i, § 322; *usually represented by* ü.

um'ziehen ſich, zog ſich um, ſich umgezogen (haben), to change one's clothes.

unbeſiegt, unconquered.

und, and.

ungefähr, about, § 193, 2.

ungeſtraft, unpunished.

Univerſität', die, die –en, university; auf der —, at, *of students*; an der —, at, *of professors*.

unmög'lich, impossible.

uns, us, *see* wir.

unſer, our.

unter, under, among, § 124.

un'terbringen, brachte unter, untergebracht (haben), to shelter, protect.

unterneh'men, unternahm', unternom'men (haben), er unternimmt, to undertake.

unterſtüt'zen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to support, help.

unterwer'fen, unterwarf', unterwor'fen (haben), er unterwirft', to subjugate, subdue, conquer.

unverwund'bar, invulnerable.

unwiderſteh'lich, irresistible.

V

Varus, der, Varus, *a Roman general under Augustus*.

Vaſe, die, die –n, vase.

Vaterland, das, die Vaterländer, fatherland, native land.

Veilchen, das, die —, violet.

veran'ſtalten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), to get up, plan, arrange, § 103.

verbindlich, obliging, courteous.

verbrachte, *see* verbringen.

verbreiten sich, *reflex., reg., insep.* (haben), to spread.

verbrin'gen, verbrach'te, verbracht' (haben), to pass (*time*), § 246, 3.

Verdacht, der, des –s, suspicion; — schöpfen, to entertain suspicion.

verderben, verdarb, verdorben (haben), er verdirbt, to spoil.

verdrängen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to crowd out.

verehren, *reg., insep.* (haben), to honor exceedingly; verehrt, most honored, revered.

vereinen sich, *reg., insep.* (haben), to unite; vereint, united.

vereinigen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to unite, join together; sich —, *reflex.*, to join hands, unite.

verfolgen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to persecute.

vergäße, *past subj. of* vergessen.

vergebens, in vain.

vergehen, verging, vergangen (sein), to pass (*of time*), § 246, 2; sich —, *reflex.*, to go astray; sich — gegen, to insult.

vergessen, vergaß, vergessen (haben), er vergißt, to forget.

verging, *see* vergehen.

Vergnügen, das, die —, pleasure.

verheiraten, *reg., insep.* (haben), to marry, give in marriage, § 51, 1; sich —, to get married.

verjagen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to drive out, expel, repel.

verkaufen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to sell.

Verkehr, der, des –s, traffic.

verlassen, verließ, verlassen (haben), er verläßt, to leave (*active*); sich —, *reflex.*, to rely, upon, auf *with acc.*

Verlegenheit, die, der —, embarrassment.

verleihen, verlieh, verliehen (haben), to bestow.

Verleumder, der, die —, calumniator.

verlie'ren, verlor', verlo'ren (haben), to lose.

Verlobte, der, des –n, die –n, fiancé.

verlockend, enticing.

verlor, *see* verlieren.

vernichten, *reg., insep.* (haben), to destroy, wipe out.

verschicken, *reg., insep.* (haben), to send (away).

verschwand, *see* verschwinden.

verschwinden, verschwand, verschwunden (sein), to disappear.

versehen, versah, versehen (haben), er versieht, to supply.

versprechen, versprach, versprochen (haben), er verspricht, to promise; sich —, *reflex.*, to misspeak.

verstehen, verstand, verstanden (haben), to understand.

Versuch', der, die –e, attempt.

versuchen, *reg., insep.* (haben), to try, attempt.

verwerten, *reg., insep.* (haben), to apply, put to use.

verwüsten, *reg., insep.* (haben), to lay waste, devastate.

verzeihen, verzieh, verziehen (haben), *with dat.*, to pardon, forgive.

verzweifelt, in despair, desperate(ly).
viel, much; *pl.*, many.
vielleicht', perhaps; may, § 75, 3.
Viertel, das, die —, quarter; drei Viertel eins, quarter to one.
vierundſiebzigſt, seventy-fourth.
vierundzwanzig, twenty-four.
Vogel, der, die ¨, bird.
Vogelfang, der, die Vogelfänge, bird snaring; auf dem —, fowling.
Vogelweide, die, *prop. noun*, Vogelweide, Walter von der.
Vogler, der, die —, fowler; Heinrich der —, Henry the Fowler.
Volk, das, die ¨er, folk, people, nation.
vom, *see* von dem.
von, from, § 99, 1; of, § 99, 3; by, *with passive*, § 99, 2; *omitted*, § 99, 3, Note *a*.
vor, before, in front of, § 125, 1; § 248, 3; ago, § 4; of, § 25; *with states of mind*, § 125, 2.
vorbei, *adv. and sep. prefix*, past, § 246, 4.
vorbeigegangen, *see* vorbeigehen.
vorbei'gehen, ging vorbei, vorbeigegangen (ſein), *with* an *and dat.*, to go past, to pass, § 246, 4.
vorher, *adv.*, before, § 248, 2, *b*.
vorkommen, kam vor, vorgekommen (ſein), to occur, § 231, 1.
Vorleſung, die, die –en, lecture.
Vorliebe, die, der —, preference, fondness.
vorſtellen, *reg., sep.* (haben), to introduce, present'; ſich —, *reflex.*, to imagine.
vorzüglich, excellent; especial (Hochachtung).

W

wachen, *reg.* (haben), to watch, lie awake; *see also* aufwachen, to wake up.
Waffe, die, die –n, weapon, arm.
waffnen, *reg.* (haben), to arm; ſich —, *reflex.*, to arm oneself, take up arms.
wagen, *reg.* (haben), to dare.
Wahl, die, die –en, choice, election.
wahr, true; nicht —? isn't that so?
wahren, *reg.* (haben), to observe, keep.
während, *conj.*, while; *prep. with gen.*, during.
Wald, der, die ¨er, forest, wood.
Waldweg, der, die –e, wood path, forest path.
wallen, *reg.* (ſein), to journey (as a pilgrim).
Walther, der, Walter.
Wand, die, die ¨e, wall (of a room); *compare* die Mauer, wall of a garden *or* city.
wandern, *reg.* (ſein), to wander; *see also* auswandern, to emigrate, go to.
wann, when, § 84, 3.
war, wäre, *see* ſein.
Ware, die, die –n, ware.
warf, *see* werfen.
warm, warm.
Wartburg, die, Wartburg, *the most interesting castle in Germany, situated at Eisenach in Thuringia.*

warten, *reg.* (haben), to wait, for, auf *with acc.*, § 8.

was, *interrog. and compound rel.*, what, § 210; *rel. after neuter*, which, § 211, 2, Note.

Waſhington, der, George Washington.

Weg, der, die –e, way, path, § 249, 1.

weg, *adv. and sep. prefix*, away.

wegen, *prep. with gen.*, because of, on account of.

wegſcheuchen, *reg., sep.* (haben), to scare, frighten away.

Weib, das, die –er, woman (*poetic*).

Weibertreue, die, fidelity of women; Weibertreu, *name given the fortress near Weinsberg.*

weil, because.

Weile, die, die –n, while, time.

weilen, *reg.* (haben), to stay, while away time.

Weinsberg, das, Weinsberg, *a city in Württemberg*, § 91.

Weiſe, die, die –n, way, manner, § 249, 2; auf dieſe —, in this way.

weiß, white; *also pres. of* wiſſen.

weit, far (*not* wide, breit).

weiter, *sep. prefix and adv.*, further.

weitergehen, ging weiter, weitergegangen (ſein), to go on, pass along, move on.

welch, *rel. and interrog.*, which, § 209; what, § 210; that, § 211, 2.

Welle, die, die –n, wave.

Welt, die, die –en, world.

Weltgeſchichte, die, der —, world's history.

Weltteil, der, die –e, part of the world, quarter of the globe.

wem, *dat. of* wer, to whom.

wenden, wandte, gewandt *or reg.* (haben), to turn; ſich —, *reflex.*, to turn, appeal, to, an *with acc.*

wenig, little, § 194, 2; *pl.*, few.

wenn, if; when, § 84, 2, *a*; whenever, § 84, 2, *b*.

wer, who, he who, § 208.

werden, wurde, geworden and worden (ſein), er wird, to become, get, § 42, 3; *as future auxiliary with infin.*, shall, will, § 69, 1; *as passive auxiliary with perfect participle*, am, are, is, § 204.

werfen, warf, geworfen (haben), er wirft, to throw, cast.

Werk, das, die –e, work (*books, etc.*).

wert, valued, valuable; worth.

Wetter, das, die —, weather.

wider, against, § 112.

Widerſtand, der, des –es, resistance; — leiſten, to offer resistance.

wie, as; how; wie heißt, what is (the name of).

wieder, *adv. and sep. prefix*, again.

wiederkommen, kam wieder, wiedergekommen (ſein), to come again, return.

Wien, das, Vienna.

wieviel, how much; — Uhr, what time.

wild, wild.
Wilhelm, der, William.
will, willſt, *see* wollen.
Windmühle, die, die –n, windmill.
wir, we.
wird, *see* werden.
wirklich, real(ly).
wiſſen, wußte, gewußt (haben), er weiß, to know, § 58, 1.
Wiſſenſchaft, die, die –en, science.
Wittenberg, das, Wittenberg.
wo, where.
wohl, perhaps, probably, I think, § 88; well (*of health*), § 88, Note, § 206, 1, § 234, 3.
Wohl, das, des –s, welfare.
wohnen, *reg.* (haben), to live, dwell, reside, § 6, 1.
wollen, *reg.* (haben), er will, *pres. subj.*, wolle, to want to, § 40, 1; will, § 69, 3.
wollte, *see* wollen.
worauf, for what.
worden, *see* werden; *sign of passive.*
Wort, das, word; *pl.*, die Worte, words, *in connected discourse;* die Wörter, separate words, *as in a dictionary.*
Wörterbuch, das, die ¨er, dictionary.
wörtlich, literal(ly).
worum, for which.
wovon, of which.
wundervoll, wonderful.
wünſchen, *reg.* (haben), to wish, § 40, 2; *with phrase or clause*, § 191, 1.
wurde, würde, *see* werden.
Württemberg, das, Württemberg.
wußte, *see* wiſſen.

Z

zanken, *reg.* (haben), to quarrel; ſich —, *reflex.*, to quarrel with one another.
zehn, ten.
zeichnen, *reg.* (haben), to draw; to sign (*a letter*); *see also* auszeichnen, to distinguish.
zeigen, *reg.* (haben), to show; ſich —, *reflex.*, to show oneself.
Zeit, die, die –en, time, § 50, 1; *pl.*, times, all time.
Zeitalter, das, die —, age, period, epoch.
Zeitlang, eine, for a time, § 50, 2.
zeugen, *reg.* (haben), to bear witness.
ziehen, zog, gezogen (haben), to draw; (ſein), to go (*of troops, etc.*).
Zimmer, das, die —, room.
zog, *see* ziehen.
Zorn, der, des –s, anger; in — geraten, to get angry; vor —, with anger.
zu, *prep.*, to, § 100, 1; at, § 100, 2; for, § 100, 3; too, § 100, 4, Note; *in idioms*, § 100, 4; *as sign of infin.*, to; — ſehen, to be seen, § 204, 2, Note; *omitted in English translation with verbs of* choosing, *etc.; sep. prefix, in* zuſehen, to look on, zugeben, to admit, *etc.*
zu'erkennen, erkannte zu, zuerkannt (haben), to award.
zuerſt', at first, § 268, 2.

zu'geben, gab zu, zugegeben (haben), er gibt zu, to agree, concede, § 232, 2.

zurück'getreten, *see* zurücktreten.

zurück'gezogen, *see* zurückziehen.

zurück'kehren, *reg., sep.* (sein), to return.

zurück'treten, trat zurück, zurückgetreten (sein), er tritt zurück, to step back; to yield, give in.

zurück'ziehen, zog zurück, zurückgezogen (haben), to draw back; sich —, *reflex.*, to retire.

zusam'men, *adv. and sep. prefix,* together.

zusam'menfallen, fiel zusammen, zusammengefallen (sein), er fällt zusammen, to fall down (together).

zusam'mengeschlossen, *see* zusammenschließen.

zusam'menschließen sich, schloß sich zusammen, sich zusammengeschlossen (haben), to join themselves together.

zu'sehen, sah zu, zugesehen (haben), er sieht zu, to look on at, *with dat.*

Zu'stimmung, die, die –en, consent, indorsement.

zuwei'len, sometimes, § 50, 3, Note.

zu'senden, sandte zu, zugesandt (haben), to send to.

zu'zusenden, *see* zusenden.

Zwang, der, des –es, compulsion.

zwang, *see* zwingen.

zwar, it is true, to be sure, § 274.

zwei, two.

Zweifel, der, die —, doubt.

zweihundert, two hundred.

zwingen, zwang, gezwungen (haben), to compel.

zwischen, *prep. with dat. or acc.*, between, § 117.

zwölf, twelve.

zwölft, twelfth.

ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY AND INDEX.

A

a, ein; not a, kein, § 9.

Aachen, das Aachen, *the capital of Charlemagne's Empire.*

able, to be —, können, § 58, 3 *and* § 75, 2, Note.

about, um, § 111, 1 *and* § 193, 1; über, § 123, 2 *and* § 193, 1; ungefähr, etwa, § 193, 2; im Begriff, § 193, 3; round —, um — herum; what —, worüber, § 127, *a*, 3; *other expressions*, § 193, 3, Note.

above, über, § 123, 1; — all things, vor allen Dingen *or* vor allem.

accomplish, leiſten, *reg.* (haben); vollbringen, vollbrachte, vollbracht (haben).

according to, nach, § 97, 3.

acquainted, to get — with, kennen lernen, *reg.* (haben), *with acc.*, § 171, 2, Note.

across, über, § 123, 1; ferry —, ü'berſetzen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), § 154, 2, Note.

advice, der Rat, die Räte *or* Ratſchläge.

afoot, zu Fuß, § 100, 4.

afraid, to be —, ſich fürchten, *reg.* (haben), § 25, of, vor *with dat.*

after, *prep.* nach, § 97, 2 *and* § 259, 2; *conj.* nachdem, § 259, 1; day — to-morrow, übermorgen.

afterward, nachher, § 259, 2.

again, wieder.

against, gegen *with acc.*, § 110, 1; wider *with acc.*, § 112.

age, *of people*, das Alter, die —; *period*, das Zeitalter, die —; the Middle Ages, das Mittelalter.

ago, vor *with dat.*, § 4; her *following acc.*, § 4, Note.

agree, überein'ſtimmen, *reg.*, *sep.*, § 232, 1; zu'geben, *irreg.*, *sep.*, § 232, 2.

all, ganz, § 113, 1; all, § 113, 2; — right, ſchon, § 128, 2, gut, ſchön; — kinds of, allerlei, *indecl.*

almost, beinahe.

along, entlang, daher, § 247, 1; mit, § 247, 2, *as sep. prefix in* mitgehen, mitbringen, *etc.*

already, ſchon, § 128; *not translated*, § 228, 2.

although, obwohl, *with transposed order.*

always, immer.

am, bin, *see* ſein.

among, unter, § 124.

an, ein; not an, kein, § 9.

and, und; — then, da, § 17, 1.

anger, der Zorn, des -(e)s.

angry, böse, at, auf *with acc.*, § 120, 3; zornig.

annihilate, vernichten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).

another, ein ander, § 30, 1; noch ein, § 30, 2.

answer, *intrans.*, antworten, *reg.* (haben); *trans.*, beantworten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), § 135, 3; *noun*, die Antwort, die -en.

Anton, *prop. name*, der Anton.

any, irgend ein; not —, kein, § 9; at — rate, jedenfalls, auf jeden Fall, auf alle Fälle; *often omitted as in* § 35, *a*, sentence 5.

anybody, (irgend) jemand.

anything, etwas, *a following adj. capitalized*, § 217; not —, nichts, *a following adj. capitalized*, § 217.

anyway, überhaupt, § 160; jedenfalls.

are, sind, *see* sein; there —, es sind, § 85, 2; *see also progressive form*, § 178, Note *b*.

aren't, *see* are not.

arise, entstehen, entstand, entstanden (sein).

arm, der Arm, die -e; armchair, der Lehnstuhl, die ¨e.

army, das Heer, die -e; die Armee, die -n.

arose, *past of* arise.

around, um, § 111, 1; go —, *literally*, um'gehen, ging um, umgegangen (sein); get —, avoid, umge'hen, umging, umgangen (haben).

arrive, ankommen, kam an, angekommen (sein).

art, die Kunst, die ¨e; — of printing, die Buchdruckerkunst; — exposition, die Kunstausstellung, die -en.

artist, der Künstler, die —.

as, *conj.; of reason*, da, § 17, 3; *of time*, als, wie, § 83, 2; *first correlative*, so, § 26, 1; *second correlative*, wie, § 26, 1 *and* § 83, 1; as if, als ob *with transposed order*, *or* als *with inverted order*, § 255, 2.

ask, bitten, § 15, 1; for, um *with acc.*; fragen, § 15, 2, after, nach *with dat.*; — questions, Fragen stellen, *reg.*, § 15, 2, *b*, Note *b*.

at, zu, § 100, 2; an, § 119, 1; auf, § 120, 3, Note *a*; um, § 111, 3; — all, überhaupt, § 160; — school, in der Schule; — home, zu Hause.

attack, angreifen, griff an, angegriffen (haben).

attention, die Acht; pay —, achtgeben, gab acht, achtgegeben (haben), to, auf *with acc.*

Augustus, *prop. name*, der Augustus (*of ancients*); *of moderns*, der Au'gust.

away, weg; get —, entkommen, entkam, entkommen (sein).

B

back, *noun*, der Rücken, die —; *adv.*, zurück; to come —, zurückkommen, kam zurück, zurückgekommen (sein); give —, zurückgeben, gab zurück, zurückgegeben (haben).

bad, badly, schlecht.
ball, der Ball, die ¨e.
Barbarossa, der Rotbart, Friedrich Barbarossa.
bathe, baden, *reg.* (haben).
be, sein, war, gewesen (sein), ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind; *subj.*, ich sei, *etc.*; *of health*, sich befinden, befand, befunden (haben), *or* es geht *with dat.*, § 206, 1; to — translated, heißen, hieß, geheißen (haben), § 49, 2, Note; to — late, spät kommen, kam, gekommen (sein), § 219, 2; to — to (affect), angehen, ging an, angegangen (sein), § 206, 2, Note; to — (*cost*), kosten, *reg.* (haben), § 206, 2, Note; *progressive form*, § 178, Note *b*; *specific uses*, liegen, stehen, hangen, *etc.*, § 206, 2.
beautiful, schön.
became, *past of* become.
because, weil, *with transposed order.*
become, werden, wurde, geworden (sein), § 42, 3.
bed, das Bett, die -en; to —, zu Bett.
been, gewesen, *see* sein; *see also progressive form*, § 178, Note *b*.
Beethoven, Ludwig van Beethoven.
before, *conj.*, ehe, § 248, 1; *prep.*, vor, § 125, 1 *and* § 248, 3; *adv.*, noch, § 248, 2, *a*, früher, vorher, § 248, 2, *b*.
began, *past of* begin.
begin, anfangen, fing an, angefangen (haben), er fängt an, *with* zu *and infin.*, § 180, 2; *more formal*, beginnen, begann, begonnen (haben).
behave, sich benehmen, benahm, benommen (haben), er benimmt sich.
believe, glauben, *reg.* (haben), § 157, 1; in, an *with acc.*, § 157, 1, Note *c*; — a person, *dat.*, § 157, 1, Note *a*; — a thing, *acc.*, § 157, 1, Note *b*.
belong, gehören, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), *with dat.*
bench, die Bank, die ¨e.
Berlin, (das) Berlin.
beside, neben, § 122.
besides, außer *with dat.*
besiege, belagern, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
best, best, am besten; to like —, am liebsten mögen, § 76, 2.
better, besser; to like —, lieber mögen, § 76, 2.
between, zwischen, *with dat. or acc.*, § 117.
bible, die Bibel, die -n; translation of the —, die Bibelübersetzung.
big, bigger, biggest, groß, größer, größt, am größten.
bird, der Vogel, die ¨.
birthday, der Geburtstag, die -e; for your —, zum Geburtstag.
Bismarck, (der) Bismarck.
black, schwarz.
blame, die Schuld; to be to —, Schuld daran sein.
blood, das Blut.
blue, blau.

body (*alive*), der Körper, die —; (*dead*) die Leiche, die -n.
Bonn, (das) Bonn.
book, das Buch, die ¨er.
both, beide, § 170.
boy, der Knabe, des -n, die -n.
Brandenburg, (das) Brandenburg.
Bratwurstglöcklein, das Bratwurstglöcklein.
brave, tapfer.
bread, das Brot, die -e.
break, zerbrechen, zerbrach, zerbrochen (haben), er zerbricht.
bring, bringen, brachte, gebracht (haben); to — up, erziehen, erzog, erzogen (haben); to — together, zusammenbringen, brachte zusammen, zusammengebracht (haben); to — (to fetch), holen, *reg.* (haben), § 42, 2.
broad, breit.
brother, der Bruder, die ¨er.
brought, *past and participle of* bring.
brown, braun; Brown, *prop. name*, Braun.
build, bauen, *reg.* (haben).
building, das Gebäude, die —; die Baute, die -n.
buried, *past of* bury.
bury, begraben, begrub, begraben (haben), er begräbt.
busy, to — oneself, sich beschäftigen (haben), *reg.*, *insep.*
but, *conj.*, aber, § 43, 1; sondern, § 43, 2; *adv.*, nur; nothing —, nichts als, § 43, 1, Note.
buy, kaufen, *reg.* (haben).
by, neben, § 122; bei, § 95, 1; nach, § 97, 3; für, § 109, 2; *with passive*, von, § 99, 2; — means of, durch; *with verbal*, dadurch daß; to sit down by, sich zu jemand setzen, *reg.* (haben).

C

call, nennen, nannte, genannt (haben), § 49, 1; to be called, heißen, hieß, geheißen (haben), § 49, 2.
came, *past of* come.
campaign, der Feldzug, die ¨e.
can (to be able), können, konnte, gekonnt (haben), er kann, § 75, 2, Note.
cane, der Stock, die ¨e.
cannot, *see* can not.
care, sich kümmern, *reg.* (haben), about, um *with acc.*
careful(ly), sorgfältig; most —, § 218, 2.
carriage, die Droschke, die -n; der Wagen, die —.
carried, *past of* carry.
carry, tragen, trug, getragen (haben), er trägt; bringen, brachte, gebracht (haben); to — out, durch'setzen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben).
castle, das Schloß, die ¨er.
catch, fangen, fing, gefangen (haben), er fängt.
caught, *past of* catch.
celebrate, feiern, *reg.* (haben).
century, das Jahrhundert, die -e.
certainly, gewiß'.
chair, der Stuhl, die ¨e; armchair, der Lehnstuhl, die ¨e.
chancery, die Kanzlei', die -en.

change, wechseln, *reg.* (haben); to — clothes, sich um'ziehen, zog sich um, sich umgezogen (haben).
Charlemagne, (der) Karl der Große, Karls des Großen.
Charles, (der) Karl.
cheap, billig.
chicken, das Huhn, die ¨er.
child, children, das Kind, die –er.
choose, wählen, *reg.* (haben); to elect, erwählen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
Christmas, die Weihnachten (*pl.*); for —, zu Weihnachten.
church, die Kirche, die –n.
city, die Stadt, die ¨e.
claim, behaupten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
class, die Klasse, die –n.
classic, der Klassiker, die —.
clever, klug.
climb, *intrans.*, steigen, stieg, gestiegen (sein); *trans.*, besteigen, bestieg, bestiegen (haben).
clock, die Uhr, die –en, § 169, 1; o'clock, Uhr, § 50, 4 *and* § 169, 2.
clothes, die Kleider (*pl.*); to change —, sich umziehen, zog sich um, sich umgezogen (haben).
cloud, die Wolke, die –n.
coat, der Rock, die ¨e.
coffee, der Kaffee, die –e.
cold, kalt.
Colosseum, das Kolosseum, des –s.
combat, das Kampfspiel, die –e.
come, kommen, kam, gekommen (sein); to — back, zurückkommen, *sep.* (sein); to — in, hereinkommen, *sep.* (sein).
comfortable, bequem.
command, befehlen, befahl, befohlen (haben), er befiehlt, *with dat.*, § 190, 1 *and* § 197, 2.
common, gemeinsam.
competition, die Konkurrenz', die –en.
complain, sich beklagen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben); to — of, to lament, beklagen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben) *with acc.*
complicated, verwickelt.
conquer, *intrans.*, siegen, *reg.* (haben), § 27; *trans.*, besiegen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), § 27; to subdue, unterwer'fen, unterwarf', unterwor'fen (haben), er unterwirft.
consequence, die Folge, die –n.
consist, bestehen, bestand, bestanden (haben), of, aus *with dat.*, § 269, 1.
constantly, fortwährend.
contest, der Kampf, die ¨e; singers' —, der Sängerkrieg, die –e.
continue, fortfahren, fuhr fort, fortgefahren (haben), er fährt fort, *with* zu *and infin.*, § 180, 2 *and* § 233, 1; fortsetzen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), *with direct obj. in acc.*, § 233, 2.
convent, das Kloster, die ¨.
convince, überzeu'gen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
corner, die Ecke, die –n.
correct, richtig; to —, verbessern, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
could, konnte, könnte, *see* can, können.
countless, zahllos.
country, das Land, die ¨er; to

the —, auf das Land, § 120, 3, Note *a*.

couple, das Paar, die –e; *in adj. sense*, a —, ein paar.

course, of —, natürlich, § 262.

court (*of law*), das Gericht, die –e.

courteous(ly), höflich.

cousin (*male*), der Vetter, die —.

cover, bedecken, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).

crowd, das Gedränge, des –s.

crown, die Krone, die –n; to — with a wreath, bekränzen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).

cup, die Tasse, die –n.

D

dance, der Tanz, die ¨e; to —, tanzen, *reg.* (haben); there's going to be a dance, es wird getanzt, § 204, 2.

daughter, die Tochter, die ¨.

day, der Tag, die –e; market —, der Markttag, die –e; — after to-morrow, übermorgen.

dead, tot.

deal, a great —, viel.

dear, lieb; (*costly*) teuer.

death, der Tod, die –e.

decide, entscheiden, entschied, entschieden (haben) *with direct obj.*, § 258, 1; sich entschließen, entschloß sich, sich entschlossen (haben), § 258, 2; beschließen, beschloß, beschlossen (haben), § 258, 2.

decidedly, entschieden, *past part. of* entscheiden, *used as adv.*

deep, tief.

depend, sich verlassen, verließ sich, sich verlassen (haben), er verläßt sich, upon, auf *with acc.*; that depends, das kommt darauf an.

desk, das Pult, die –e (*at school*); der Schreibtisch, die –e (*at home*).

despair, verzweifeln, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).

devastate, verwüsten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).

develop, entwickeln, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).

development, die Entwickelung, die –en.

Dewey, (der) Dewey.

dialect, die Mundart, die –en.

dictionary, das Wörterbuch, die ¨er.

did, tat, *see* do, tun; *emphatic form*, § 77, 2, Note; *often* haben, § 229, 2.

didn't, *see* did not.

die, sterben, starb, gestorben (sein), er stirbt.

Dietrich, (der) Dietrich.

difference, der Unterschied, die –e.

difficulty, die Schwierigkeit, die –en.

dinner, das Mittagessen, die —.

disagreeable, un'angenehm.

distinct(ly), deutlich; most —, § 218, 2.

distinguish, auszeichnen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben); to — oneself, sich auszeichnen.

disturb, stören, *reg.* (haben).

do, tun, tat, getan (haben), § 77, 2; machen, *reg.* (haben), § 77, 1; *to emphasize imperative*, doch, § 77, 2, Note; *for emphatic indicative pres. or past*

use simply German pres. or past, § 77, 2, Note, and § 227, 1.

dog, der Hund, die –e.

done, getan, *see* do, tun.

don't, *see* do not.

down, nieder, hinunter; to sit —, ſich ſetzen, *reg.* (haben), § 18, 2; to sink —, niederſinken, ſank nieder, niedergeſunken (ſein); — town, in der, *or* die Stadt, § 121.

Dresden, (das) Dresden.

dress, das Kleid, die –er (*also* clothes).

drive, fahren, fuhr, gefahren (haben *or* ſein, § 167 and Note), er fährt.

drown, be drowned, ertrinken, ertrank, ertrunken (ſein).

dunce, der Dummkopf, die ¨e.

during, während, *prep. with gen.*

E

each, jeder, jede, jedes; — other, *when obj. of verb*, ſich, uns, euch, *etc.; when obj. of prep.*, einander, *written with prep.:* aufeinander, miteinander.

eagerly, eifrig.

early, früh.

easier, *comparative of* easy.

east, der Oſten, des –s; *for adj.*, Oſt, *usually uniting with a following noun;* east wind, der Oſtwind.

easy, easily, easier, easiest, leicht, leichter, leichteſt, am leichteſten.

eat, eaten, eſſen, aß, gegeſſen (haben), er ißt.

eight, acht.

elector, der Kurfürſt, des –en, die –en.

else, anders, § 30, 1, Note; ſonſt, § 30, 1, Note.

emperor, der Kaiſer, die —.

empire, das Reich, die –e; das Kaiſerreich, die –e.

enemy, der Feind, die –e.

enough, genug.

entertain, unterhal'ten, unterhielt', unterhal'ten (haben), er unterhält'.

enthusiasm, die Begeiſterung, die –en.

entire(ly), ganz, § 113, 1.

envious, neidiſch, of, auf; eiferſüchtig (jealous).

escape, entkom'men, entkam', entkom'men (ſein), from, aus *with dat.*

especially, beſonders.

Europe, (das) Europa.

even, ſelbſt, § 196, 2, Note.

evening, der Abend, die –e; in the —, abends, am Abend; *written small as an adv. in* this evening, to-morrow evening, heute abend, morgen abend.

ever, je, § 257, 1; auch, § 257, 2; for —, (auf) ewig, § 257, 1, Note.

every, jeder, jede, jedes.

everybody, jedermann.

everything, alles.

everywhere, überall.

exactly, genau.

examination, das Examen, die Examina; die Prüfung, die –en.

excel, übertref'fen, übertraf', übertrof'fen (haben), er übertrifft'.

excuse, entſchuldigen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
exercise, die Aufgabe, die –n.
exhibition, die Ausſtellung.
expect, erwarten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
expensive, teuer.
extraordinary, außeror'dentlich.

F

fact, die Tatſache, die –n.
fainting, *adj.*, ohnmächtig.
fall (*of the year*), der Herbſt, die –e.
fall, fallen, fiel, gefallen (ſein); er fällt.
famous, berühmt.
far, weit; as — as, bis, § 107, 2.
fast, faster, fastest, ſchnell, ſchneller, am ſchnellſten.
father, der Vater, die ¨.
fear, fürchten, *reg.* (haben); never —, ſchon, § 128, 2.
feel, empfinden, empfand, empfunden (haben).
ferry, to — across, ü'berſetzen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), § 154, 2, Note.
fidelity, die Treue.
fifteen, fünfzehn.
fifth, fünft.
fifty, fünfzig.
fight, der Kampf, die ¨e; to —, kämpfen, *reg.* (haben).
finally, endlich, ſchließlich.
find, finden, fand, gefunden (haben), § 180, 1.
fine, prachtvoll.
finish, vollenden, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
fire, das Feuer, die —.
firm, feſt; firmer, most firmly, feſter, am feſteſten.
first, *adj.*, erſt, § 268, 1; *adv.*, zuerſt, § 268, 2.
Fisher, *prop. name*, (der) Fiſcher.
five, fünf.
flattery, die Schmeichelei, die –en.
floor, der Boden, die — *or* ¨.
flow, fließen, floß, gefloſſen (ſein).
follow, folgen, *reg.* (ſein), *with dat.*, § 166, Note; befolgen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), *with acc.*, § 166, Note.
fly, fliegen, flog, geflogen (ſein); of time, ſchnell vergehen, verging, vergangen (ſein), § 246, 2.
football, der Fußball, die ¨e.
for, für, § 109; ſeit, § 98, 2; um, § 111, 2; *acc. sometimes with* lang, § 5 and Note; look —, ſuchen, § 7; wait —, warten auf, § 8; what —, wofür, worauf; — your birthday, zum Geburtstag; — to-morrow, auf morgen, § 120, 3, Note *b*.
foreign, fremd.
forest, der Wald, die ¨er.
forever, (auf) ewig, § 257, 1, Note.
forget, vergeſſen, vergaß, vergeſſen (haben), er vergißt.
forgot, *past of* forget.
fortress, die Burg, die –en.
fought, *past of* fight.
found, *past of* find.
four, vier.
Fowler, (der) Vogler.
Frederick, (der) Friedrich.
freedom, die Freiheit.
French, *adj.*, franzöſiſch; the

French language, das Französ=ſiſch(e); in French, auf franzö=ſiſch.
friend, der Freund, die –e.
friendly, freundlich.
Fritz, (der) Fritz.
fro, to and —, hin und her, § 149, 2.
from, von, § 99, 1.
front, in — of, vor, § 125, 1.
funny, komiſch.

G

gallery, die Galerie′, die –n; pic=ture —, die Gemäl′degalerie′.
game, das Spiel, die –e; das Wett=ſpiel, die –e.
garden, der Garten, die ¨.
gate, das Tor, die –e.
gave, gab, *see* give, geben.
general, der Feldherr, die –en; der General′, die –e *or* ¨e.
gentleman, der Herr, des –n, die –en.
German, *adj.*, deutſch; — man, der Deutſche, des –n; the — lan=guage, das Deutſche (Deutſch); to speak —, Deutſch ſprechen, ſprach, geſprochen (haben), er ſpricht; in —, auf deutſch, im Deutſchen, § 156.
Germany, das Deutſchland.
get, bekommen, bekam, bekom=men (haben), § 42, 1; holen, *reg.* (haben), § 42, 2; werden, wurde, geworden (ſein), er wird, § 42, 3; to — away, entkom′=men, entkam′, entkom′men (ſein); to — around (avoid), umge′hen, umging′, umgangen (haben).
getting, *see* get.
ghost, der Geiſt, die –er.
girl, das Mädchen, die —.
give, geben, gab, gegeben (haben), er gibt; to — back, zurückgeben, *irreg.*, *sep.* (haben); to — re=gards to, grüßen, *reg.* (haben) *with acc.*
glad, froh; I am —, es freut mich; to be — to do something, etwas gern tun; gladly, gern, § 76, 2.
glove, der Handſchuh, die –e.
go, gehen, ging, gegangen (ſein); hingehen, *irreg.*, *sep.* (ſein); (*of army*) ziehen, zog, gezogen (ſein); to — around, um′gehen, *irreg.*, *sep.* (ſein); to be going to, *pres. tense*, § 228, 1; to — walking, *or* for a walk, ſpazie=ren gehen, § 180, 1.
Goethe, (der) Goethe.
gone, gegangen, *see* go, gehen.
good, gut; to have a — time, ſich (gut) amüſieren, amüſierte, amüſiert (haben), § 50, 5.
good-by, adieu.
got, *see* get.
grammar, die Gramma′tik, die –en.
grass widow, die Strohwitwe, die –n.
gray, grau.
great, greater, greatest, groß, größer, größt, am größten.
Gretchen, (das) Gretchen.
Gridley, *prop. name*, (der) Grid=ley.
ground, der Boden, die — and ¨, § 260, Note; (reason), der Grund, die ¨e, § 260.
guest, der Gaſt, die ¨e.

Gutenberg, *prop. name*, (der) Gutenberg.

H

had, hatte, *see* have, haben.
hair, das Haar, die -e.
half, halb, § 184, 2; die Hälfte, die -n, § 184, 1; — past ten, halb elf.
hall, der Saal, die Säle; die Halle, die -n.
hand, die Hand, die ¨e.
handkerchief, das Taschentuch, die ¨er.
Hanover *or* **Hannover**, (das) Hannover.
happen, geschehen, geschah, geschehen (sein), es geschieht.
hard, harder, schwer, schwerer, § 173, 2; fleißig, fleißiger, § 173, 3; hart, § 173, 1; stark, § 173, 4; heftig.
hardly, kaum.
Harvard, *prop. name*, Harvard, die Harvard-Universität.
hat, der Hut, die ¨e.
have, haben, hatte, gehabt (haben), er hat, § 68, 1, §§ 164, 165, 167; with some verbs (sein), § 68, 2, §§ 164, 166, 167; to — to, müssen, § 68, 3; to — made, machen lassen, § 68, 4.
Havel, *prop. name of a river near Berlin*, die Havel.
haven't, *see* have not.
having, *see* have.
he, er.
head, der Kopf, die ¨e; at the —, an der Spitze.
health, die Gesundheit, die -en.
hear, hören, *reg.* (haben), § 180, 1.
heard, *past of* hear.
heaven, der Himmel; for —'s sake, um (des) Himmels willen.
help, die Hilfe, die -n; to —, helfen, half, geholfen (haben), 39, 1; to — it, dafür können, § 39, 2; can't help, müssen, § 39, 2, Note.
Henry, (der) Heinrich.
her, *pron.*, sie, *acc.*, ihr, *dat.*; ihm *or* es, § 207, Note; *adj.*, ihr.
here, hier; (*hither*) hierher; da, § 17, 2.
Hermann, (der) Hermann.
hero, der Held, des -en, die -en.
high, hoch, *declined* hoher, hohe, hohes.
Hildegund, die Hildegund.
him, ihn, *acc.*, ihm, *dat.*
himself, sich, *reflex. pron.*
his, sein.
history, die Geschichte, die -n; die Weltgeschichte.
hither, her, hierher; — and thither, hin und her, § 149, 2.
Hohenstaufen, *prop. name*, (die) Hohenstaufen (*pl.*), § 82.
Hohenzollern, *prop. name*, (die) Hohenzollern (*pl.*), § 192.
hold, halten, hielt, gehalten (haben), er hält.
holy, heilig; Holy Land, das Heilige Land.
home (to), nach Hause; at —, zu Hause.
honor, die Ehre, die -n; seat of —, der Ehrenplatz, die -e; to —, verehren, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
hot, heiß.

hotel, das Hotel', die –s.
hour, die Stunde, die –n, § 169, 2, Note.
house, das Haus, die Häuser.
how, wie.
human being, der Mensch, des –en, die –en, § 19, 1.
hundred, hundert.
hundredth, hundertst.
hurry, eilen, *reg.* (haben); to be in a —, Eile haben.
husband, der Mann, die "er, § 19, 2.
hut, die Hütte, die –n.

I

I, ich.
idea, die Idee, die –n.
if, wenn, *with transposed order*; *after words of asking*, ob; as —, als ob, *with transposed order*, § 255, 2, *or* als, *with inverted order*, § 255, 2.
I'm, *see* I am.
impolite, unhöflich.
importance, die Bedeutung.
in, in, § 121; — it, darin (*rest*), hinein (*motion*); bei, § 95, 2; seit, § 98, 2; an, § 119, 3; — the evening, abends *or* am Abend; — German, auf deutsch, § 120, 3, Note *b*, § 156, *or* im Deutschen, § 156; to come —, hereinkommen, kam herein, hereingekommen (sein); Come in! (*in answer to a knock at the door*), herein!
include, umfassen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
influence, beeinflussen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
ink, die Tinte, die –n.
inn, das Wirtshaus, die Wirtshäuser.
insist, bestehen, bestand, bestanden (haben), on, auf *with dat.*, § 269, 2.
instead of, anstatt *with gen.*; *with a verbal, infinitive*, § 181, *clause*, § 190.
interest, das Interesse, die –n, in, für *with acc.*
interested, to be —, sich interessieren, interessierte sich, sich interessiert (haben), in, für *with acc.*
interesting, interessant.
interrupt, unterbrechen, unterbrach, unterbrochen (haben), er unterbricht.
into, in *with acc.*; — German, ins Deutsche, § 156.
invent, erfinden, erfand, erfunden (haben).
invention, die Erfindung, die –en.
iron, das Eisen, die —.
is, ist, *see* sein; that — (*to say*), das heißt; that — (*translated*), das heißt, § 49, 2, Note; there —, es gibt, § 85, 1, es ist, § 85, 2.
isn't, *see* is not.
it, es, er, sie, § 207; help — (*after negative*), dafür, § 39, 2; *with prepositions*, da(r), § 106, 1.
Italian, der Italiener, die —.
Italy, das Italien.
it's, *see* it is.

J

John, (der) Johann.
journey, die Reise, die –n.
July, (der) Juli.

just, *when qualifying another word*, gerade; *of time*, eben, § 196, 2, Note.

K

keep, behalten, behielt, behalten (haben), er behält; — up, versorgen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben); — one waiting, warten lassen, ließ, gelassen (haben), er läßt.

kept, *past of* keep.

kind, die Sorte, die –n; be so —, seien Sie so freundlich; all —s of, allerlei.

king, der König, die –e.

kingdom, das Königreich, die –e.

knew, *past of* know.

knife, das Messer, die —.

knight, der Ritter, die —.

know, wissen, wußte, gewußt (haben), er weiß, § 58, 1, *with* daß-*clause for English infinitive*, § 191; kennen, kannte, gekannt (haben), § 58, 2; können, konnte, gekonnt (haben), er kann, § 58, 3; well-known, *adj.*, bekannt.

Koberger, *prop. name*, (der) Koberger.

Konrad, *prop. name*, (der) Konrad.

Kriemhilde, *prop. name*, (die) Kriemhilde.

L

lady, die Dame, die –n.

lake, der See, die –n.

lamb, das Lamm, die ¨er.

lament, beweinen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).

lamp, die Lampe, die –n.

land, das Land, die ¨er; the Holy Land, das Heilige Land.

language, die Sprache, die –n.

large, larger, largest, groß, größer, größt, am größten.

last, letzt; — summer, vorigen Sommer.

late, later, latest, spät, später, am spätesten, § 219, 2.

laugh, lachen, *reg.* (haben).

lay, *past of* lie.

lead, führen, *reg.* (haben).

leader, der Führer, die —.

learn, lernen, *reg.* (haben); *with infin.*, § 81.

learned, *adj.*, gelehrt.

least, am wenigsten.

leave (depart from), verlassen, verließ, verlassen (haben), er verläßt; (let alone *or* fail to take), lassen, ließ, gelassen (haben), er läßt.

led, *past of* lead.

lesson, die Stunde, die –n, § 169, 2, Note.

letter, der Brief, die –e.

liberator, der Befreier, die —.

library, die Bibliothek', die –en.

lie, liegen, lag, gelegen (haben).

life, das Leben, die —.

like, mögen, mochte, gemocht (haben), er mag, § 76, 1; gefallen, gefiel, gefallen (haben), er gefällt, § 76, 3; gern, § 76, 2 and 1; to look —, gleichen, glich, geglichen (haben), *with dat.*, § 76, 3, Note; — that, so.

Linden, *prop. name*, (das) Linden, *a city near Hanover.*

line (*on a page*), die Zeile, die –n; die Reihe, die –n.
listen, horchen, *reg.* (haben), to, auf *with acc.*
little, klein, § 194, 1; wenig, § 194, 2.
live, wohnen, *reg.* (haben), § 6, 1; leben, *reg.* (haben), § 6, 2.
long, longer, longest, *adj.*, lang, länger, am längsten; *adv.*, a — time, lange; no longer, nicht mehr; as — as, *conj.*, solange.
look, sehen, sah, gesehen (haben), er sieht; oh, look! sieh doch! *in sense of* to appear, aussehen, *irreg.*, *sep.* (haben); to — at, ansehen, *irreg.*, *sep.* (haben); to — for, suchen, *reg.* (haben), § 7; to — like, gleichen, glich, geglichen (haben), *with dat.*, § 76, 3, Note; to — through, durch'sehen, *irreg.*, *sep.* (haben); to — up (*in dictionary*), nach'schlagen, schlug nach, nachgeschlagen (haben), er schlägt nach.
lose, verlieren, verlor, verloren (haben).
loss, der Verlust, die –e.
lost, *past of* lose.
loud, louder, loudest, laut, lauter, am lautesten.
love, lieben, *reg.* (haben); loving, liebend.
Ludwig (Louis), (der) Ludwig.
Luise (Louise), (die) Luise.
lying, *see* lie.

M

made, *past of* make.
maintain, behaupten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben); to — oneself, sich behaupten.
make, machen, *reg.* (haben); to — a speech, eine Rede halten, hielt, gehalten (haben), er hält, § 270, 2, Note.
man, der Mann, die ¨er, § 19, 2; der Mensch, des –en, die –en, § 19, 1.
many, *pl.*, viele.
Margaret, (die) Margare'te.
mark (*German coin worth 24 ¢*), die Mark, *used in the singular with numerals:* zwanzig Mark.
market, der Markt, die ¨e; — day, der Markttag, die –e.
married, *see* marry.
marry, verheiraten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), § 51, 1; heiraten, *reg.* (haben), § 51, 2.
marrying, *see* marry.
Mary, (die) Marie'.
matter, what's the —? Was ist los?
Maximilian, (der) Maximilian.
may, dürfen, durfte, gedurft (haben), er darf, § 75, 1; können, konnte, gekonnt (haben), er kann, § 75, 2; vielleicht, § 75, 3.
me, mir, *dat.*, mich, *acc.*
mean, *of things*, bedeuten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben); *of persons*, meinen, *reg.* (haben).
meet, begegnen, *reg.*, *insep.* (sein), *with dat.*, § 171, 2; treffen, traf, getroffen (haben), er trifft, § 171, 1; kennen lernen, *reg.* (haben), § 171, 2, Note.
message, die Botschaft, die –en.
messenger, der Bote, des –n, die –n.

met, *see* meet.
middle, die Mitte; Middle Ages, das Mittelalter.
midnight, die Mitternacht, die ¨e.
might, *see* may.
milk, die Milch, der —.
mine, mein, der meine, der meinige.
minnesinger, der Minnesänger, die —.
minute, die Minu'te, die -n.
Miss, (das) Fräulein, die —.
misspeak, sich versprechen, versprach sich, sich versprochen (haben), er verspricht sich.
mistake, der Fehler, die —.
misunderstand, mißverste'hen, mißverstand, mißverstanden (haben).
misunderstood, *see* misunderstand.
moat, der Festungsgraben, die Festungsgräben.
Moltke, (der) Moltke.
moment, der Augenblick, die -e.
Monday, der Montag, die -e.
money, das Geld, die -er.
month, der Monat, die -e; for —s, monatelang.
more, mehr; noch, § 30, 2, § 62; *comparative*, § 218, 3.
morning, der Morgen, die —; in the —, am Morgen, morgens; *written small as an adverb when used with another abverb:* heute morgen, gestern morgen.
most, meist, am meisten; *superlative*, § 218, 3; mostly, meistens.
mother, die Mutter, die ¨.
mountain, der Berg, die -e.
Mr., (der) Herr, des -n, die -en.
much, viel, *usually not declined; as adv. often* sehr; how —? wieviel?
Müller, *prop. name*, (der) Müller.
Munich, (das) München.
musician, der Musiker, die —.
must, müssen, mußte, gemußt (haben), er muß, § 68, 3.
my, mein.
myself, *reflex.*, mir, mich, § 196, 1; *intens.*, selbst, § 196, 2.

N

name, der Name, des -ns, die -n; my — is, ich heiße, § 49, 2.
named, genannt, *see* nennen, § 49, 1; to be —, heißen, hieß, geheißen, § 49, 2.
Napoleon, (der) Napoleon.
narrow, eng.
near, *adj.*, nahe (näher, am nächsten) *with dat.; prep.*, bei, *with dat.*, § 95, 1.
nearly, beinahe.
need, brauchen, *reg.* (haben).
nephew, der Neffe, des -n, die -n.
never, nie, niemals; — fear, schon, § 128, 2.
new, neu.
news, die Nachricht, die -en.
newspaper, die Zeitung, die -en.
next, nächst.
night, die Nacht, die ¨e.
nightingale, die Nachtigall, die -en.
nine, neun.
nineteen, neunzehn.
no, *adv.*, nein; *adj.*, kein, § 9.
noble, *adj.*, edel; *noun*, der Adlige, die -n.
noise, der Lärm, des -s.

not, nicht; — a, kein, § 9.
nothing, nichts; *a following adjective is written with a capital:* nichts Schlechtes, § 217.
notice, bemerken, *reg., insep.* (haben).
now, jetzt; *less often*, nun.
nowhere, nirgends.
number (*of a house*), die Nummer, die –n; (*figure*), die Zahl, die –en.
Nuremberg, (das) Nürnberg.

O

oak (*wood*), das Eichenholz, die ¨er; — tree, die Eiche, die –n.
objection, to have any —, etwas dagegen haben, hatte, gehabt (haben), er hat.
occupy, besetzen, *reg., insep.* (haben).
occur, vorkommen, kam vor, vorgekommen (sein), § 231, 1; einfallen, fiel ein, eingefallen (sein), to, *with dat.*, § 231, 2.
o'clock, Uhr, *omitted as in English, except when exact hour is spoken of*, § 50, 4 and § 169, 2.
of, von, § 99, 3; aus, § 94, 2; *omit*, § 99, 3, Note *a*; *gen.*, § 99, 3, Note *b*; — course, natürlich, § 262; to be afraid —, sich fürchten, *reg.* (haben), vor, § 25; to think —, denken, dachte, gedacht (haben), an *or* von, § 41 (daran *or* davon).
office, das Geschäft, die –e.
often, oftener, oftenest, oft, öfter, am öftesten.
oh, oh! o! ah! ach!
old, older, oldest, alt, älter, am ältesten, ältest.
on, auf, § 120; on Hermann street, in der Hermannstraße; — foot, zu Fuß; to read —, weiterlesen, las weiter, weitergelesen (haben), er liest weiter.
once, einmal.
one, ein; man, § 57; not —, kein, § 9; no —, niemand; one's, sein; the —, der eine, § 29, 2 *or* der (derjenige), § 29, 1 *and* Note, *or translated by an adjective*, § 29, 3 *and* § 217.
only, *adv.*, nur, § 185, 1, *a*; erst, § 185, 1, *b*; *adj.*, einzig, § 185, 2.
onto, auf *with acc.*
open, öffnen, *reg.* (haben); aufmachen, *reg., sep.* (haben); § 146.
opera, die Oper, die –n.
opinion, die Meinung, die –en; in my —, meiner Meinung nach, § 101, *c*, 2.
or, oder.
order, die Ordnung, die –en; to put in —, in Ordnung bringen; to —, bestellen, *reg., insep.* (haben), § 197, 1; befehlen, befahl, befohlen (haben), er befiehlt, § 191, 1 *and* § 197, 2; in — to, um *with infin. or* damit *with clause*, § 197, 2, Note.
other (*different*), ander, § 30, 1; (*more*), noch, § 30, 2; each —, *obj. of verb*, sich; *obj. of prep.*, einander, *written together with preposition:* miteinander.
otherwise, sonst.
Otto, (der) Otto.

ought, sollen, *reg.* (haben), ich soll, § 69, 2 *and* 4, *c.*
out of, aus, § 94, 1; — it, daraus; to carry —, durch'setzen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben); to go —, ausgehen, ging aus, ausgegangen (sein).
outing, der Ausflug, die Ausflüge.
outside, *adv.*, draußen.
over, *adv.*, hinüber; — there, dort(hin), § 16, 1; *prep.*, über, § 123, 1.
overwork, sich überar'beiten, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
owe, to — to, verdanken, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), *with dat.*
own, *adj.*, eigen.

P

page, die Seite, die –n.
paid, *see* pay.
pains, die Mühe, die –n; to take —, sich Mühe geben, gab, gegeben (haben), er gibt, § 183, 4, Note.
painting, das Gemälde, die —.
paper, das Papier', die –e; news—, die Zeitung, die –en.
parents, die Eltern (*pl.*).
park, der Park, die –e.
parliament, das Parlament', die –e.
parlor, der Salon', die –s.
part, der Teil, die –e; to take —, teilnehmen, nahm teil, teilgenommen (haben), er nimmt teil, in, an *with dat.*
particular, besonder.
pass, reichen, *reg.* (haben), § 246, 1; (*time*) vergehen, verging, vergangen (sein), § 246, 2; verbringen, verbrachte, verbracht (haben), § 246, 3; (*to go by*) an etwas (*dat.*), vorbeigehen, *irreg.*, *sep.* (sein), § 246, 4; (*in school*, *intrans.*) versetzt werden, wurde, geworden (sein), er wird versetzt, § 246, 4, Note; (*in school*, *trans.*) bestehen, bestand, bestanden (haben), § 269, 2, Note.
past, *see* pass; half — ten, halb elf.
path, der Pfad, die –e.
pattern, das Muster, die —.
pay, bezahlen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben); to — attention, achtgeben, gab acht, achtgegeben (haben), er gibt acht, to, auf *with acc.*
peace, der Friede, des –ns.
pen, die Feder, die –n.
pencil, der Bleistift, die –e.
people, die Leute (*pl.*); die Menschen, § 19, 1; man, § 57; nation *or* race, das Volk, die ¨er.
perhaps, vielleicht.
person, der Mensch, des –en, die –en, § 19, 1; die Person', die –en.
philosophy, die Philosophie'.
piano, das Klavier', die –e.
picture, das Bild, die –er; das Gemälde, die — (*painting*); — gallery, die Gemäldegalerie', die –en.
picturesque, malerisch.
piece, das Stück, die –e.
place, der Ort, die –e *and* ¨er, § 150, 1; die Stelle, die –n, § 150, 3; die Stellung, die –en, § 150, 4; to take —, stattfinden, fand statt, stattgefunden (haben).
play, das Spiel, die –e; das Schau-

spiel, die -e; to —, spielen, *reg.* (haben).
pleasant(ly), angenehm.
please, gefallen, gefiel, gefallen (haben), er gefällt, *with dat.*; as he —d, wie es ihm gefiel; if you —, bitte, § 15, 1, *b*, Note.
pocket, die Tasche, die -en.
polite(ly), höflich.
poor, arm.
popular, beliebt.
post office, die Post, die -en; to the —, auf die Post, § 120, 3, Note *a*.
Potsdam, (das) Potsdam.
power, die Macht, die ¨-e; a great —, eine Großmacht.
present', (*introduce*), vorstellen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben), *with two objects, acc. and dat.*
pres'ent, das Geschenk, die -e.
pretty, hübsch.
prince (*appointed*), der Fürst, des -en, die -en; young son of a king, der Prinz, des -en, die -en.
printing, die Druckerei', die -en; art of —, die Buchdruckerkunst.
print shop, die Druckerei', die -en.
prison, das Gefängniß, des -sses, die -sse.
prisoner, der Gefangene, des -n, die -n.
prize, der Preis, die -e.
probably, wahrscheinlich; wohl, § 88.
professor, der Profes'sor, des -s, die Professo'ren.
pronounce, aussprechen, sprach aus, ausgesprochen (haben), er spricht aus.
proud, stolz, of, auf *with acc.*
Prussia, (das) Preußen.
public, das Publikum, des -s.
punish, bestrafen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
pupil, der Schüler, die —.
put, stellen, *reg.* (haben), § 222, 1; legen, *reg.* (haben), § 222, 2; setzen, *reg.* (haben), § 222, 3; stecken, *reg.* (haben), § 222, 4; tun, tat, getan (haben), § 222, 5; to — on (*a hat*), aufsetzen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben); (*clothes*), anziehen, zog an, angezogen (haben).

Q

quality, die Eigenschaft, die -en.
quarrel, zanken, *reg.* (haben); streiten, stritt, gestritten (haben); quarrelling, zankend.
quarter, das Viertel, die —; (*of money*), eine Mark; — to three, drei Viertel drei.
queen, die Königin, die -nen.
question, die Frage, die -n; to ask (*put*) —s, Fragen stellen, *reg.* (haben).
quiet, ruhig.
quite, ganz.

R

rain, der Regen, die —; to —, regnen, *reg.* (haben).
rapidly, schnell.
rate, at any —, jedenfalls, auf jeden Fall, auf alle Fälle.
reach, erreichen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
rave, schwärmen, *reg.* (haben), about, für.

read, lesen, las, gelesen (haben), er liest.
ready, bereit, § 195, 1; fertig, § 195, 2.
really, wirklich.
reason, der Grund, die ¨e, § 260.
receive, empfangen, empfing, empfangen (haben), er empfängt, § 261, 2; erhalten, erhielt, erhalten (haben), er erhält, § 261, 1.
recognize, erkennen, erkannte, erkannt (haben).
recommend, empfehlen, empfahl, empfohlen (haben), er empfiehlt.
recover, sich erholen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
red, rot.
redbeard, (der) Rotbart; (der) Barbarossa.
regards, to give — to, grüßen, *reg.* (haben), *with acc.*
remain, bleiben, blieb, geblieben (sein), § 180, 1.
remark, die Bemerkung, die -en.
remember, sich erinnern, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), *with gen. or* an *with acc.*
remind, erinnern, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), of, an *with acc.*
reply, antworten, *reg.* (haben).
resound, ertönen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben); erhallen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
rest, to — thoroughly, sich ausruhen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben).
restore, wiederher'stellen, *reg.*, *sep.* (haben).
retire, sich zurück'ziehen, zog sich zurück, sich zurück'gezogen (haben).
return, zurück'kehren, *reg.*, *sep.* (sein).
right, das Recht, die -e; to be —, recht haben, § 172, 1; richtig sein, § 172, 2; das stimmt, § 172, 2, Note; all —, schön, gut.
river, der Fluß, die ¨e.
rock, der Fels, des -en, die -en.
Roland, (der) Roland.
roll (*bread*), das Brötchen, die —.
Roman, der Römer, die —; *adj.*, römisch.
Rome, (das) Rom.
room, das Zimmer, die —; der Platz, § 150, 2, *b*; der Raum, § 150, 2, *c*, Note.
round, *prep.*, um, § 111, 1; — about, um . . . herum.
ruin, die Rui'ne, die -n.
rule, die Regel, die -n; to —, regieren, regierte, regiert (haben).
ruler, der Herrscher, die —.
run, laufen, lief, gelaufen (sein), er läuft.

S

sadly, traurig.
saga, die Sage, die -n.
said, *see* say.
sake, willen; for my —, um meinetwillen; for heaven's —, um Himmels willen.
same, selb; the —, derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, *gen.*, desselben, *etc.*
sandwich, das Butterbrot, die -e; ham —, Butterbrot mit Schinken.
sank, *see* sink.

Sans Souci, (das) Sans Souci, (das) Ohne Sorge.
sat, *see* sit.
satchel, die Reisetasche, die –n.
saw, *see* see.
say, sagen, *reg.* (haben).
Schiller, (der) Schiller.
Schöneberg, (das) Schöneberg.
school, die Schule, die –n; to —, in die Schule, § 121, zur Schule, § 121, Note.
scold, schelten, schalt, gescholten (haben), er schilt.
seat, der Platz, die ¨e, § 150, 2, *c*; — of honor, der Ehrenplatz, die ¨e.
seated, to remain —, sitzen bleiben, blieb, geblieben (sein), § 180, 1.
see, sehen, sah, gesehen (haben), § 180, 1; (*to look at*), an'sehen, *irreg., sep.* (haben); (*to interview*), sprechen, sprach, gesprochen (haben), er spricht, § 270, 1, Note.
seem, scheinen, schien, geschienen (haben).
self, *reflex.* (him, her, them, *etc.*), sich, § 196, 1; my—, mich; thy —, dich; *intens.*, selbst, selber, § 196, 2.
sell, verkaufen, *reg., insep.* (haben).
senator, der Sena'tor, die Senato'ren.
send, schicken, *reg.* (haben); senden, sandte, gesandt (haben).
sentence, der Satz, die ¨e.
set, setzen, *reg.* (haben); *of a watch*, stellen, *reg.* (haben), § 222, 1, Note.
seven, sieben.
seventh, das Sieb(en)tel, die —.
several, (*pl.*) mehrere.
severity, die Strenge, der —.
sew, nähen, *reg.* (haben).
shady, schattig.
shall, werden, § 69, 1; sollen, § 69, 2; wollen, § 69, 3, *and* Note.
she, sie; es, § 207, Note.
sheet (*of paper*), der Bogen, die —.
short, shorter, shortest, kurz, kürzer, am kürzesten.
should, sollte, *see* sollen, § 69, 2.
shouldn't, *see* should not.
show, zeigen, *reg.* (haben); to — oneself, sich zeigen; (*to prove*) beweisen, bewies, bewiesen (haben).
sick, krank.
siege, die Belagerung, die –en.
Siegfried, (der) Siegfried.
silk, die Seide, die –n; of —, von Seide, seiden.
simple, einfach.
since, *prep.*, seit, § 98, 1; *conj.*, seitdem *with transposed order.*
sing, singen, sang, gesungen (haben).
singer, der Sänger, die —; —'s contest, der Sängerkrieg, die –e.
single, einzig, § 9.
sink, sinken, sank, gesunken (sein); to — down, nie'dersinken, *irreg., sep.* (sein).
sister, die Schwester, die –n.
sit, sitzen, saß, gesessen (haben), § 18, 1; to — down, sich setzen, *reg.* (haben), § 18, 2.
sitting, *see* sit; was sitting, saß.

sixty, sechzig.
sleep, schlafen, schlief, geschlafen (haben), er schläft.
slept, *see* sleep.
slowly, langsam.
Smith, Schmidt.
snow, der Schnee, des –s.
so, so, § 26, 1; also, § 26, 2; so sehr, § 35, *a*, sentence 4; to think —, es, das, *or omit*, § 157, 1; eben, § 26, 2, Note.
sofa, das Sofa, die –s.
sold, *see* sell.
solve, lösen, *reg.* (haben).
some, einig; *often omitted;* — more, noch, § 30, 2; — bread, etwas Brot.
someone, jemand.
something, etwas; *a following adjective is written with a capital:* etwas Gutes, § 217.
sometimes, zuweilen, § 50, 3, Note.
son, der Sohn, die ¨e.
song, der Gesang', die ¨e; das Lied, die –er.
soon, bald.
sorry, leid tun, tat, getan (haben), *with dat.;* I am —, es tut mir leid.
soul (*person*), der Mensch, des –en, die –en; (*spirit*), die Seele, die –n.
Spain, (das) Spanien.
speak, sprechen, sprach, gesprochen (haben), er spricht, § 270, 1; reden, *reg.* (haben), § 270, 2; to — German, Deutsch sprechen; to — to, anreden, *reg., sep.* (haben), *with acc.*
speaker, der Redner, die —.
speech, die Rede, die –n; to make a —, eine Rede halten, hielt, gehalten (haben), er hält.
spend (*time*), verbringen, verbrachte, verbracht (haben).
spread, sich verbreiten, *reg., insep.* (haben).
spring (*season*), der Frühling, die –e; (*water*), die Quelle, die –n.
square, der Platz, die ¨e, § 150, 2, *a*.
stage (*theatre*), die Bühne, die –n.
stand, stehen, stand, gestanden (haben), § 221, 1; leiden, litt, gelitten (haben), § 221, 2; to — up, auf'stehen, *irreg., sep.* (sein).
stay, bleiben, blieb, geblieben (sein).
still (*of time*, yet), noch.
stop, aufhören, *reg., sep.* (haben), *with* zu *and infin.*, § 180, 2; (*of pupils in the class*) stehen bleiben, blieb, geblieben (sein).
store, der Laden, die — *and* ¨.
story, die Geschichte, die –n; die Erzählung, die –en.
strange, fremd, § 271, 2; seltsam, § 271, 1; stranger, *noun*, der Fremde, des –n, die –n.
street, die Straße, die –n; *with prop. nouns*, § 299.
strike, schlagen, schlug, geschlagen (haben), er schlägt.
strong, stronger, strongest, stark, stärker, stärkst, am stärksten.
struck, *see* strike.
study, lernen, *reg.* (haben); treiben, trieb, getrieben (haben); to do advanced —, to be a student, studie'ren, studier'te, studiert' (haben).

subjugate, unterwer'fen, unterwarf', unterwor'fen (haben), er unterwirft'.
succeed, gelingen, gelang, gelungen (ſein), *with dat.*, § 180, 2; I —, es gelingt mir.
such, ſolch, ſo; had — a good time, ſo gut amüſiert; — a good man, ein ſo guter Mann.
suddenly, plötzlich.
sugar, der Zucker, des –s.
suit, der Anzug, die Anzüge.
summer, der Sommer, die —.
Sunday, der Sonntag, die –e.
sunset, der Son'nenun'tergang, die Son'nenun'tergänge.
sup, zu Abend eſſen, aß, gegeſſen (haben), er ißt.
supper, das Abendeſſen, die —.
support, unterſtüt'zen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
sure, ſicher.
surrender, ſich ergeben, ergab ſich, ſich ergeben (haben), er ergibt ſich.
sweet, ſüß.
swiftly, ſchnell.
sword, das Schwert, die –er.

T

table, der Tiſch, die –e.
tailor, der Schneider, die —.
take, nehmen, nahm, genommen (haben), er nimmt, § 183; (*of time*) dauern, *reg.* (haben), § 183, 1; (*a train*) fahren mit, fuhr, gefahren (ſein), er fährt mit *with dat.*, § 183, 2; (*trip*), machen, *reg.* (haben), § 183, 3; to — for, halten für, hielt, gehalten (haben), er hält für *with acc.*, § 183, 4; to — out, herausnehmen, *irreg.*, *sep.* (haben); to — part, teilnehmen, *irreg.*, *sep.* (haben); to — place, ſtattfinden, fand ſtatt, ſtattgefunden (haben); to — pains, ſich (*dat.*), Mühe geben, gab, gegeben (haben), er gibt ſich Mühe, § 183, 4, Note.
talk, ſprechen, ſprach, geſprochen (haben), er ſpricht, § 270, 1; reden, *reg.* (haben), § 270, 2.
Tannhäuser, (der) Tannhäuſer.
tavern, das Wirtshaus, die Wirtshäuſer.
tea, der Tee, des –s, die –e *or* die –s.
teach, lehren, *reg.* (haben), *with infin.*, § 81.
teacher, der Lehrer, die —; (*woman*) die Lehrerin, die –nen.
tear, reißen, riß, geriſſen (haben); to — up, zerreißen, *irreg.*, *insep.* (haben).
Tell, (der) Tell.
tell, erzählen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), § 28, 1; ſagen, *reg.* (haben), § 28, 2; *with* daß-*clause*, § 191.
ten, zehn.
tennis, das Tennis, des —.
than, als, § 83, 1.
thank, danken, *reg.* (haben), *with dat.*; — you! danke!
that, *conj.*, daß *with transposed order*, § 211, 1; *demonstrative*, der, die, das, § 211, 3, *a*, *or* jener, § 211, 3, *b*; *relative*, der *or* welcher, § 211, 2, *or* was, § 211, 2, Note; like —, ſo.

the, *art.*, der, die, das; *correl.*, the . . . the, je . . . deſto, § 223.
theatre, das Theater, die —.
their, ihr.
them, *dat.*, ihnen; *acc.*, ſie, dieſelben; *with preps.*, da(r), § 106, 1.
themselves, ſich.
then, dann, § 59, 1; damals, § 59, 2; and —, da, § 17, 1 *and* § 59, 3.
there, dort, § 16, 1; da, § 16, 2; — is, es gibt, § 85, 1 *or* es iſt, § 85, 2; *omitted*, § 85, 2, *and* Note.
these, *see* this.
they, ſie; man, § 57.
thief, der Dieb, die -e.
thing, das Ding, die -e; —s, die Sachen.
think, denken, dachte, gedacht (haben), of, an, § 41, 1 *or* von, § 41, 2; glauben, *reg.* (haben), § 157, 1, *and* Note; meinen, *reg.* (haben), § 157, 1; ein'fallen, fiel ein, eingefallen (ſein), es fällt ein, *with dat.*, § 41, 1, Note; finden, fand, gefunden (haben) *or* halten für, hielt, gehalten (haben), er hält für *with acc.*, § 157, 3.
thirty, dreißig.
this, these, dieſer, dieſe; — evening, heute abend.
thither, hin, § 149, 1; hither and —, hin und her, § 149, 2.
thorough, tüchtig; thoroughly convinced, feſt überzeugt!
those, *see* that; — are, das ſind, § 211, 3, Note,
though, obwohl *with transposed order*.
thought, *see* think.
thousand, tauſend; —s, die Tauſende.
three, drei; — times, dreimal, § 50, 3, Note.
thrive, gedeihen, gedieh, gediehen (ſein).
throne, der Thron, die -e.
through, durch *with acc.*; to look —, durch'ſehen, ſah durch, durch'geſehen (haben).
till, *conj.*, bis *with the transposed order*; *prep.*, bis, § 107, 1.
time, die Zeit, die -en, § 50, 1; eine Zeitlang, § 50, 2; a long —, lange, § 50, 2, Note; das Mal, die -e, § 50, 3; three —s, *etc.*, dreimal, § 50, 3, Note; sometimes, zuweilen, § 50, 3, Note; how many times, wie oft, § 50, 3, Note; what — is it? wieviel Uhr, § 50, 4 *and* § 169, 2, *or* wie ſpät, § 50, 4; to have a good —, ſich (gut) amüſie'ren, amüſier'te, amüſiert (haben), § 50, 5.
tired, müde, of, *gen.*, § 99, 3, Note *b*.
to, nach, § 97, 1; zu, § 100, 1; auf, § 120, 3, Note *a*; gegen, § 110, 2; in, § 121; *with infin.*, zu *or* um zu; — and fro, hin und her, § 149, 2; *sometimes dative; sometimes a clause after* to tell, *as in* § 32, *b*, 1 *and c*, 2.
to-day, *adv.*, heute; *adj.* (*of*) —, heutig, Prussia of —, das heutige Preußen.
together, zuſammen.

told, *see* tell.
to-morrow, morgen; for —, auf morgen; day after —, übermorgen.
to-night, heute abend.
too, zu, auch, § 100, 4, Note.
took, *see* take.
top, die Spitze, die -n; (*of a mountain*), der Gipfel, die —; on — of, auf, § 120, 1.
toward, gegen *with acc.*, § 110.
town, die Stadt, die ¨-e; down —, in der *or* die Stadt; to —, in die Stadt.
train, der Zug, die ¨-e.
translate, überset'zen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben), see also § 154, 2, Note; (*in class*) to be translated, heißen, hieß, geheißen (haben), § 49, 2, Note.
translation, die Übersetzung, die -en; — of the Bible, die Bi'belübersetzung, die -en.
travel, reisen, *reg.* (haben *or* sein), § 167, 1 *and* 2.
tree, der Baum, die Bäume.
tremble, zittern, *reg.* (haben).
trip, die Reise, die -n.
true, wahr; it's —, zwar, allerdings, § 274.
try, versuchen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
twelve, zwölf.
twenty, zwanzig.
twenty-five, fünf'undzwan'zig.
twice, zweimal.
twist, verdre'hen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
two, zwei; the —, die beiden, 170, 2, Note.

U

uncle, der Onkel, die —.
unconscious, ohnmächtig.
under, unter *with dat. or acc.*, § 124.
understand, verstehen, verstand, verstanden (haben).
undertake, unterneh'men, unternahm', unternom'men (haben), er unternimmt'.
unhappy, un'glücklich.
unification, die Einigung, die -en.
unite, vereinen; united, einig.
until, *conj.*, bis *with the transposed order; prep.*, bis, § 107, 1.
up, oben (*rest*); empor (*motion*); to bring —, erziehen, erzog, erzogen (haben); to keep —, versorgen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben); to tear —, zerreißen, zerriß, zerrißen (haben).
upon, auf *with dat. or acc.*, § 120, 1.
us, uns.
used, *adj.*, gewöhnt, to, an *with acc.*
usually, gewöhnlich.

V

valley, das Tal, die ¨-er.
van (*Dutch*), van; (*German*) von.
Varus, (der) Varus.
vault, die Gruft, die ¨-e.
very, sehr.
Vienna, (das) Wien.
village, das Dorf, die ¨-er.
visit, der Besuch, die -e; to —, besuchen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
voice, die Stimme, die -n.

vote, ſtimmen, *reg.* (haben), for, für *with acc.*

W

wager, die Wette, die -n; for a —, um die Wette, § 111, 2, Note.
Wagner, (der) Wagner.
wait, warten, *reg.* (haben), for, auf, § 8; to — on, bedienen, *reg.*, *insep.* (haben).
waiter, der Kellner, die —.
walk, to go —ing, *or* for a —, ſpazieren gehen, ging, gegangen (ſein), § 180, 1.
Walter, (der) Walther.
want, to — to, wollen, wollte, gewollt (haben), er will, § 40, 1.
war, der Krieg, die -e.
warm, warm.
Wartburg, die Wartburg.
was, *see* be.
wasn't, *see* was not.
watch, die Uhr, die -en, § 169, 1.
waterfall, der Waſſerfall, die Waſſerfälle.
way, der Weg, die -e, § 249, 1; die Weiſe, die -n, § 249, 2; in this —, auf dieſe Weiſe; by — of, über, § 123, 2, Note.
we, wir; man, § 57.
weather, das Wetter, die —.
week, die Woche, die -en.
Weinsberg, (das) Weinsberg.
welcome, you're —, bitte, § 15, 1, *b*, Note.
well, *noun*, der Brunnen, die —; *adv.*, gut, § 234, 1; nun, § 234, 2; *adj.*, wohl, § 206, 1, and § 234, 3; *see also* § 88, Note; — known, bekannt.
went, *see* go.
were, *see* be.
west, *adj.*, weſtlich.
what, was, welch, § 210; — kind of, was für (ein), § 210; — for, warum, wofür; worauf (warten); — of, woran (denken), § 41, 1; — is your name? Wie heißen Sie? § 49, 2; — time, wieviel Uhr, § 50, 4.
whatever, was auch, § 257, 2.
when, als, § 84, 1; wenn, § 84, 2; wann, § 84, 3.
whenever, wenn, § 84, 2.
where, wo; wohin (*whither*).
wherever, wo auch.
whether, ob *with the transposed order.*
which, *rel.*, der, welcher, § 209; *interrog.*, welcher, § 209; *with preps.*, wo(r), § 106, 2.
while, während *with the transposed order;* bei, § 95, 2.
whisper, flüſtern, *reg.* (haben).
who, *rel.*, der, welcher, § 208; *interrog.*, welcher, wer, § 208.
whole, ganz.
whom, *see* who.
why, warum; ja, § 200, 2.
wide, breit (*not* weit, far).
widow, die Witwe, die -n; grass —, die Strohwitwe.
wild, wild; to be — about, ſchwärmen für, *reg.* (haben), § 109, 2.
will, der Wille, des -ns; against my —, wider meinen Willen; *verb* (*future*), werden, § 69, 1; (*wish*), wollen, § 40, 1, and § 69, 3.
William, (der) Wilhelm.

win, *intrans.*, ſiegen, *reg.* (haben), § 27; *trans.*, to — over, gewinnen, gewann, gewonnen (haben).

window, das Fenſter, die —.

winter, der Winter, die —.

wish, wünſchen, *reg.* (haben), § 40, 2; *with phrase or clause*, § 191, 1; wollen, wollte, gewollt (haben), er will, § 40, 1.

with, mit, § 96; bei, § 95, 2 and 3.

without, ohne, *with acc.; with infin.*, § 181; *with clause*, § 190.

woman, die Frau, die –en; (*poetic*), das Weib, die –er; the women of Weinsberg, die Weiber von Weinsberg.

won, *see* win.

wonderful, wundervoll; more —, § 218, 3.

won't, *see* will not.

wood, (*forest*), der Wald, die ¨er; (*for fire*), das Holz, die ¨er.

word, das Wort, die Wörter (*separate words, as in* das Wörterbuch, dictionary), *or* die Worte (*connected discourse*).

work, die Arbeit, die –en (*labor*); das Werk, die –e (*the results of labor, as a book, statue, etc.*); to —, arbeiten, *reg.* (haben).

Worms, (das) Worms.

would, würde, wollte; *see also subj.*, § 254.

wreath, der Kranz, die ¨e; to crown with a —, bekränzen, *reg., insep.* (haben).

write, ſchreiben, ſchrieb, geſchrieben (haben).

writing, die Schrift, die –en.

written, *see* write.

wrong, falſch, unrichtig.

wrote, *see* write.

Y

year, das Jahr, die –e; for —s, jahrelang.

yes, ja, jawohl; *answering a negative*, doch, § 237, 1.

yesterday, geſtern; *a following noun is written small as an adverb:* — evening, geſtern abend.

yet, (*time*), noch; (*adversative*), doch.

you, Sie (*formal*); du (*intimate*); man, § 57.

young, younger, youngest, jung, jünger, am jüngſten.

your, Ihr, dein.

yourself, ſich, § 196, 1; (Sie) ſelbſt, § 196, 2.

youth, die Jugend.

INDEX.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Aachen
- burial place of Charlemagne, § 65; of Otto III, § 65.
- Cathedral, picture of, page 30.
- Coronation chair, picture of, page 49.

Abbreviations
- German partiality to, § 365.
- list of, § 365.

Ablative of "attendant circumstance," rendered by bei, § 95, 2.

Abstract nouns, § 307.

Accent
- correct German accent, see *Pronunciation.*
- in inseparable verbs, § 132.
- in sentences, § 342.

Accusative
- in expressions of *time*
  - in eine Zeitlang, § 50, 2.
  - to translate *for* in *for years*, § 5.
  - with her, § 4, Note.
- with adverbs daher and entlang, § 247, 1.
- with prepositions, § 104, §§ 106–112; § 117, §§ 119–125.
  - figurative use, § 117, 1.
  - regular use, § 104.
  - to show motion toward, § 117.
  - to show mental motion toward, § 119, 2.
- with ſetzen ſich to show *place where*, § 18, 2.
- with vor, § 125, 1.
- with certain verbs
  - anreden, § 270, 2, Note.
  - bitten, § 15, 1.
  - bitten um, § 15, 1, *a*.
  - denken an, § 41, 1.
  - fragen, § 15, 2; § 15, 2 *b*, Note *a*.
  - in idiom, es gibt, § 85, 1.
  - glauben (of things), § 157, 1, Note *b*.
  - glauben an, § 157, 1, Note *c*.
  - ſagen, § 28, 2.
  - ſuchen, § 7.
  - ſprechen, § 270, 1, Note.
  - warten auf, § 8.
  - vergeben, § 140, 3, Note.
  - zugeben, § 232, 2.

Active Voice
- man with active instead of English passive, § 204, 1, Note.
- passive infinitive active in German, § 204, 2, Note.

Adjectives
- as nouns, capitalization of, § 217; § 219, 1; after etwas and nichts, § 217.
- comparison of, § 218.
  - of long words, § 218, 3.
  - superlative with am, § 218, 1.
  - superlative with auf, § 218, 2.
- difference between English and German, § 215.
  - with personal pronoun, § 219, 1.
  - untranslatable adjectives, § 219, 2.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Adjectives — *Continued*
inflection of, § 216.
predicate adjectives never inflected, § 216.
adverbial superlative, § 218, 1.
with genitive, § 99, 3, Note *b*.
Adverbs
adjectives used for, except in superlative, § 218, 1.
superlative with am, § 218, 1; with auf, § 218, 2.
compounded, to express time, § 5, Note; to express manner, compounded of adjectives and weiſe, § 249, 2.
independent, as hin und her, § 149, 2.
numeral, § 50, 3, Note.
position in sentence, § 47; see also *Word Order*.
Affirmatives
doch in answer to negative, § 237, 1.
repetition of question, § 237, 2, Note.
ja, § 200.
Appositives, § 99, 3, *a*.
Arminius, Latin name for Hermann.
Arndt, Ernst Moritz (1769–1860), § 230.
quoted, § 109, 2; § 196, 2, Note; § 246, 2; § 269, 2, Note.
picture of, page 207.
Art galleries of Germany, § 152, *c*.
Article, the definite, § 29, 3.
Asia Minor, German trade in, § 289.
Augustus, Roman Emperor, § 1.
Austria
Habsburg rulers of, § 133; § 148; § 168.
in Seven Years' War, § 220.
rivalry with Prussia for leadership, § 267.
expelled from Germany, § 277 and § 278.
Auxiliary
emphatic, *do*, by simple verb, § 77, 2, Note.
simple future, werden, § 69, 1 and 4, *a*; desire, wollen, § 69, 3; intention, § 69, 4, *b*; obligation, ſollen, § 69, 2 and § 69, 4, *b*, *c*; substitutes for, § 228, 1.
haben
used with all transitives, all reflexives, all modals and all impersonals (except three), § 164 and § 165; used with certain intransitives, indicating verbal action, § 167, 2; with any intransitive when used transitively, § 167, 2, Note; with certain verbs (inseparable) when used figuratively, § 154, 2.
of mode, see *Modals*.
of passive voice, werden, § 204.
position of
in simple sentence, § 2.
in compound sentence, § 23.
for emphasis, § 23, 1.
repetition of, in English, rendered by nicht or nicht wahr, § 237, 2, Note.
ſein, use of, with certain intransitives, impersonals, ſein and bleiben, § 166; with *follow* and *meet*, § 166, Note; with certain intransitives indicating the goal of the act, § 167, 1.
ſollen, to express obligation, § 69, 2; § 69, 4, *b*, *c*; to be avoided for simple futurity, § 228, 1.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Auxiliary — *Continued*
wollen, to express desire, § 69, 3; to be avoided as future auxiliary, § 228, 1.

Bad Reichenhall, picture of Barbarossa sculpture at, page 70.

Bach, Johann Sebastian (1685–1750), composer, § 245.

Baedeker, guide book to Germany, § 282.

Barbarossa, see *Frederick I*, of Hohenstaufen.

Barmen-Elberfeld, picture of the Hanging Railway in, page 230.

Baumbach, Rudolf (1841–1905), § 230.
quoted, § 166, *c*; § 204, 2.

Be-, § 135.

Beethoven, Ludwig van (1770–1827)
anecdote of Goethe and —, § 240.
sketch of, § 245, § 251, *c*.
picture of, page 188.

Benedix, Roderick (1811–1873)
quoted, § 261, 2.

Berlin, capital of German Empire
industrial center of Europe, § 290.
picture of Reichstagsgebäude (House of Parliament) in, Frontispiece; statue of Great Elector, page 149; Frederick the Great, page 169.

Bern, Verona, Italy (not Bern, Switzerland), capital of Theodoric the Great, § 22, § 24.

Bible, translation of New Testament by Luther, § 153.
quoted, § 6, 2; § 15, 2, *a*; § 43, 1; § 69, 2; § 77, 2; § 85, 2; § 107, 2; § 112; § 124; § 132; § 149, 1; § 172, 1, *a*; § 180, 2; § 197, 2; § 198, *c*; § 208; § 216; § 217; § 222, 2; § 232, 1; § 258, 2; § 268, 1.

Bismarck, Count Otto von (1815–1898)
anecdote of, § 277; § 285.
work for Germany, § 277 and § 278.
quoted, § 13; § 75, 3; § 77, 1; § 150, 1; § 150, 4; § 219, 1; § 222, 3; § 244.
picture of statue in front of Parliament Building, Frontispiece; as a student, page 214; picture from a photograph, page 217.

Blankenburg, picture of ruined castle at, page 44.

Börne, Ludwig (1786–1837)
quoted, § 140, 2.

Brandenburg, see *Brandenburg-Prussia*.

Brandenburg-Prussia [Brandenburg "mark" (frontier) against Slavs in 10th century; in 1150, first "margrave"; 1415, bought from Emperor by Hohenzollerns, who become *Electors;* 1618, Elector inherits Duchy of Prussia — hence *Brandenburg-Prussia*], § 188; § 192; § 199, *c*; 1648, acquisition of Pomerania, § 192; elector becomes *King* (1701), § 192; [thenceforward *Prussia*,] 1748, acquisition of Silesia, § 220; 1772–1795, Poland, § 220. For later history, see *Prussia*.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Bremen, picture of the "Roland" at, page 57.

Bryce, James, quoted, § 93.

Bürger, Gottfried August (1747–1821)
quoted, § 28, 1; § 95, 2.

Capitalization
of adjectives as nouns, and after etwas and nichts, § 217.
of names of streets, § 299.

Case, see *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative.*

Castles, pictures of, pages 8, 44, 53, 74, 77, 82, 84, 87, 124, 143, 163.

Catholics, in 1618, § 182.

Chamisso, Adelbert von (1781–1838)
quoted, § 125, 2; § 140, 1; § 170, 1; § 183, 4.

Charlemagne, Karl der Große (reigned, 768–814)
anecdote of, § 36; § 45, *c*.
as ruler, § 38.
division of his empire, § 56.
picture of, from painting by Albrecht Dürer, page 24.

Charles the Great, see *Charlemagne.*

Charles V
anecdote of, § 163; sketch of, § 168, § 175, *c*; death of, § 176.
picture of, from painting by Titian, page 131.

Classics, the German, § 236, *c*; see also *Literature.*

Clauses
always periodic, § 23, 1.
English verbals translated by, § 189, 1 and 2; § 190; § 191.
indirect discourse, § 242.
order of verbs in, § 13; § 23; § 73, 1 and 2.
used after fragen ob, § 15, 2, *a*.

Coblentz, picture of monument to William I, page 219.

Coburg, picture of the castle, page 143.

Cognates, § 348; § 350, Note; § 352; § 364.

Collective nouns, § 304, 2, *a*.

Cologne, portrait of Queen Luise in, page 197.

Colosseum, § 12.

Commerce
of Hanseatic League, § 74; of modern Germany, § 290.

Common prefixes (that is, separable and inseparable)
as separable, § 154, 1; as inseparable, § 154, 2.
illustrations of use, § 154, 2, Note.

Comparatives, see *Comparison.*

Comparison
use of als, § 83, 1; so, § 26, 1; wie, § 83, 1.
je — desto, § 223.
of adjectives, see *Adjectives.*
of adverbs, see *Adverbs.*

Composers, musical, of Germany, § 245.

Composition of Words, see *Words.*

Compound words, § 310; adjectives, § 312; nouns, § 311; verbs, § 313; Latin derivatives, § 314. See also *Words, Composition of*, Part II, Chapter II.

Concessives, § 274.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Concrete nouns, § 306.

Conditional Mode
- contrasted with English, § 255.
- formation and use of, § 254.
- inversion of conditional in German, § 255, 1; of comparative conditional, § 255, 2.
- substitution of past subjunctive, § 254, Note.

Conjunctions
- coördinating, *but*, aber, § 43, 1; ſondern, § 43, 2.
- correlatives, § 83, 1.
- subordinating, § 13; with past, als, § 83, 1, § 84, 1; with present and future, wenn, § 84, 2; wie with present, § 83, 1; da, § 17, 3; *that*, § 211, 1.

Conrad
- the Franconian (reigned 911–918), § 54, § 61, *c*.
- the Hohenstaufen (reigned 1138–1152), § 91; § 102, *c*.

Conradin, § 82.

Contrasts, § 29, 2; § 43, 1, Note.

Consonants, see *Pronunciation*.

Conversation
- denn in questions, § 33.
- use of inseparable verbs in, § 132.
- rare uses in, derjenige, § 29, 1, Note; participles, § 178; wünſchen, § 40, 2.

Correspondence, International, for pupils, § 293, Note. See also *Letter-Writing*.

Courts, establishment in Prussia by Frederick II, § 205.

Cranach, Lucas (also Kranach), painter of Luther's portrait, page 127.

Crusades, § 48.

Dach, Simon (1605–1659), quoted, § 76, 3.

Dahn, Felix (1834–1912), quoted, § 19, 2; § 150, 2, *c*, Note.

Dative case
- with certain prepositions, § 92, §§ 94–100; § 117, §§ 119–125; after ſitzen, § 18, 1; to show place where, § 117; with vor (*ago*), § 4.
- after certain verbs
  - befehlen, § 197, 2.
  - begegnen, § 166, Note.
  - beſtehen auf or aus, § 269, 1 and 2.
  - denken von, § 41, 2.
  - einfallen, § 41, 1, Note, § 231, 2.
  - fragen nach, § 15, 2, *b*.
  - ſich fürchten vor, § 25.
  - glauben (with persons), § 157, 1, Note *a*.
  - helfen, § 39, 1.
  - ſagen, § 15, 2, *b*, Note *a*; § 28, 2.
  - vergeben, § 140, 3, Note.

Demonstratives
- *the one*, § 29, 1; *that*, *those*, § 211, 3.
- to show contrast, jener, § 211, 3, *b*.

Denmark, in Thirty Years' War, § 182; defeated by Prussia, § 278.

Dependent clauses, see *Clauses*.

Dependent order of sentence, see *Word Order*.

Derivation, see *Words, Composition of*.

Deutſch, origin of the word, § 354.

Dialects, attempts to unite, § 159, *c*.
- See *German Language*, Part II, Chapter IV.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Dietrich von Bern (Theodoric the Great, died 526), § 22, § 24, § 32, *c*; decline of his kingdom, § 38; legends of, § 48; see also *Theodoric the Great*.

Digraphs, § 325.

Diminutives, § 306, 1.

Diphthongs, § 323.
different from English, § 323; § 324.
ai (ei), § 323, 1.
au, § 323, 2.
eu (äu), § 323, 3.

Discourse, direct, tense of, retained in German in indirect, § 243.
indirect, § 241; § 242; § 243.

Duden, Konrad, authority on German spelling, § 356.

Dürer, Albrecht (1471–1528), citizen of Nuremberg, § 116.
sketch of, § 144; patronized by the Kaiser, § 148.
picture of, from painting by himself, page 114.
picture of his house in Nuremberg, page 117.
painting of Charlemagne by, page 24.

Eichendorff, Joseph von (1788–1857), § 230.
quoted, § 99, 1; § 121.

Eisenach, see *Wartburg*.

Elector, the Great (der Große Kurfürst), see *Frederick William of Brandenburg*.
picture of statue in Berlin, page 149.

Electors, seven (later nine) rulers who chose the German Emperors, § 192.

Emp-, § 136, 2, Note.

Emphasis
in sentence, see *Word Order*.
ja, § 200, 2; doch, § 237, 2.
change of tense for, § 229, 2, Note *b*.

Emphatic form of verb
rendered in German by simple, verb, § 77, 2, Note; § 227, 1.

Empire, the (in full, "Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation," 800–1806), § 38; § 56; § 61, *c*; § 67; § 74; § 82; § 93; § 133; § 148; § 163; § 168.
the new German Empire, § 277; § 278; 282.
See also *Germany* and *German Empire*.

Engel, Karl, quoted, § 190.

England, ally of Frederick the Great, § 214; § 220.

Ent-, § 136.

Er-, § 137.

Es, in es gibt and es ist, § 85, 2.
as grammatical subject of other verbs, § 85, 2, Note.
in es geht, § 206, 1.

Exclamations, *see* § 366.

Factitive, *there*, in es gibt, § 85, 1; es ist, § 85, 2; distinguished from da, and dort, § 16.

Fallersleben, Hoffmann von (1798–1874), § 230.
quoted, § 100, 4, Note; § 185, 1, *a*.

Ferdinand I (reigned 1556–1564), Holy Roman Emperor of the Habsburg line, successor to Charles V, § 163; § 168.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Ferdinand III (reigned 1637–1657), Holy Roman Emperor, grand-nephew of Charles V, § 182.

Feuchtersleben, Ernst von (1806–1849), quoted, § 222, 5.

Feuerbach, Ludwig Andreas (1804–1872), quoted, § 210.

Fichte, Johann Gottlieb (1762–1814), § 285.

Folksongs (Volkslieder), quoted, § 81; § 117; § 180, 1, Note.

Fouqué, Friedrich Karl Heinrich, Freiherr de la Motte (1777–1843), quoted, § 147, 1; § 195, 1.

France
- in Thirty Years' War, § 182; in Seven Years' War, § 220; in Napoleonic Wars, § 252; § 256; in Franco-Prussian War, § 277, § 278.

Franks, conquests of, § 24; § 38; § 48.

Frankfort, parliament of, § 265; § 267; § 273, *c*.
- picture of St. Paul's Church at, page 205.

Frederick I, "Barbarossa" (reigned 1152–1190)
- Emperor of the Hohenstaufen line, § 80; § 82; § 86, *c*.
- contemporary sculpture of, page 70.
- idealized figure of, at Kyffhäuser, page 67.

Frederick II, grandson of Barbarossa, Emperor (1212–1250), § 105, § 118.

Frederick I, King in Prussia (1701–1713), (elector, 1686–1701), § 192.

Frederick II, the Great, King of Prussia (1740–1786)
- descent from the "Great Elector," § 192.
- establishment of Berlin courts (windmill legend), § 203.
- sketch of life and work, § 205.
- life in Potsdam, § 213, *c*.
- admiration for George Washington, § 214.
- military operations of, § 220.
- great popularity, § 205; § 225, *c*.
- descendants of, § 256; § 267; § 282.
- picture of palace at Potsdam (Sans Souci), page 163.
- picture of statue in Berlin, page 169.

Frederick III, German Emperor and King of Prussia (reigned 99 days, 1888), „Unſer Fritz," § 282 (called "the third" because he was the third King Frederick of *Prussia*. There was an Emperor Frederick III of the "Holy Roman Empire," 1440–1493.).

Frederick William, "the Great Elector" (der große Kurfurſt), Elector of Brandenburg and Duke of Prussia (1640–1688), § 188; § 192; § 199, *c*; § 220.
- descendants of, § 192.
- picture of statue in Berlin, p. 149.

Frederick William I, King of Prussia (1713–1740), „Soldatenkönig," father of Frederick the Great, § 192.

Frederick William II, King of Prussia, nephew and successor of Frederick the Great (1786–1797), § 265.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Frederick William III, King of Prussia (1797–1840), husband of Queen Luise; patron of art and of learning, § 256; § 267.

Frederick William IV, King of Prussia (1840–1861), offered imperial crown, § 265; refuses, § 267; death, § 278.

Free cities of the Empire, § 74.

Freiligrath, Hermann Ferdinand (1810–1876), quoted, § 19, 2; § 271, 2.

Freytag, Gustav (1816–1895), § 230.
quoted, § 15, 1, *b*; § 41, 2; § 47; § 55; § 69, 2; § 75, 2; § 84, 3; § 99, 2; § 149, 2; § 150, 3; § 157, 3; § 171, 1; § 183, 4; § 206, 1; § 207, Note; § 232, 2; § 234, 1; § 260; § 266, 2; § 269, 2.

Future tense, see *Tense*.

Galleries, of art, in Germany, § 152, *c*; § 144.

Ge-, § 138.

Geibel, Emmanuel (1815–1884), § 230; quoted, § 50, 3, Note *a*.

Gellert, Christian Fürchtegott (1715–1775), quoted, § 138; § 165.

Gender, § 207, Note.

Genitive, special use of, § 99, 3, Note *b*.

German Empire
restoration of the Roman Empire in the west as the German Empire, by Charlemagne (800 A.D.), § 38.
revived by Otto I, as "the Holy Roman Empire of the German nation," § 56.
decline of, § 67.
glory revived by the Hohenstaufen line, § 82.
condition in the Middle Ages, § 93.
under the Habsburg family, § 133, § 148.
importance under Charles V, § 168.
weakened by division, § 163, § 168, and by religious war, § 182.
title of "Holy Roman Emperor" abandoned 1806, § 256.
crown of proposed new German Empire offered to King of Prussia and refused, § 265; § 267.
proclamation of the new German Empire (1871), § 277; § 278; § 282.
See also *Germany*.

Germanen, technical German name for the "early Germans," § 3.

Germania, the Roman province, § 14.
of Tacitus, § 14.

Germanicus, Roman general, § 3.

German language
abbreviations in, § 365.
colloquialisms (Alltagsdeutsch), § 366.
development of, as shown in Lord's Prayer, §§ 357–362.
historical sketch of, §§ 345–362.
Indo-European, the parent language, § 345; drawing of, page 279.
first sound shift, § 346.
Grimm's law of, § 346, § 347, § 348.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

German language — *Continued*
Gothic, oldest known German, § 349; Lord's Prayer, § 357.
second sound shift, § 350.
High and Low German and English, § 350, Note, § 351.
Grimm's law of, § 352.
High German, § 353.
Old High (750–1100 A.D.) writings in, § 354.
Lord's Prayer in, § 358; § 359.
Middle High (1100–1350) writings in, § 355.
Rudolph of Habsburg's influence, § 133.
Lord's Prayer in, § 360.
New High (1534–present) (after transition period, 1350–1534)
Lord's Prayer in, § 361, § 362.
modern German, § 356.
influences upon
Rudolph of Habsburg, § 133, § 355; the Reformation and Printing, § 356; Maximilian, § 155; § 159, *c*; Luther, § 155; § 159, *c*; § 356.
name „beutſch," § 354.
official orthography, Duden, § 356.
See also *Composition of Words, Pronunciation.*
Germans, the early, § 3; § 12; § 14; § 20, *c*.
Germany
appreciation of German classics in, § 236, *c*.
artistic centre of, in Middle Ages (Nuremberg), § 118.
cities of Middle Ages, § 72; "free cities," § 74.
growth of national feeling in nineteenth century, § 267.
history of, in Roman times, § 1; § 3; province "Germania," § 14; under the Goths, Lombards and Franks, § 38; empire of Charlemagne, § 38; work of Henry the Fowler, § 56; empire of Otto the Great, § 56; decline, § 67; § 82; glory of Hohenstaufen, § 82; under the "robber barons," § 93; under the Habsburgs, § 133; § 148; failure of Maximilian to modernize Germany, § 148; union with Spain, § 163; abdication of Charles V, § 168; successors of Charles V, § 182; Thirty Years' War, § 176; Treaty of Westphalia (1648), § 182; the "Great Elector," § 188; § 192; under Frederick the Great, see *Frederick II of Prussia;* Seven Years' War, 220; Queen Luise, § 252; § 256; the Napoleonic period, § 256; growth of national feeling, § 267; Frankfort Parliament, § 265; § 267; founding of the new German Empire, § 277; § 278; § 282.
invention of printing in, § 131; § 133.
literature of, § 230.
musicians of, § 245.
national flower of, § 252.
parliament (first elected) of, § 265; § 267.
science in, § 285; § 286.
trade of, § 289; § 290.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Gerstäcker, Friedrich (1816–1872), quoted, § 8; § 17, 3; § 76, 1; § 77, 2, Note; § 111, 3; § 122; § 229, 2; § 246, 3; § 257, 1.

Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von (1749–1832)
anecdotes of — and Beethoven, § 240; of — and Schiller, § 226.
place in literature, § 230.
picture of bust in Weimar Library, page 195.
of house in Weimar, page 181.
of statue "Dichterpaar," page 177.
quoted, § 7; § 19, 1; § 26, 1; § 30, 2; § 41, 1, Note; § 58, 3, Note *b*; § 68, 3; § 75, 1; § 81; § 83, 2; § 99, 3, Note *b*; § 100, 1; § 108; § 119, 1; § 120, 3; § 123, 1; § 132; § 147, 2; § 156; § 157, 2; § 167, 2; § 178, Note *b*; § 189, 2; § 197, 1; § 211, 3, *b*; § 216; § 218, 1; § 228, 1; § 247, 1; § 254; § 255, 1; § 258, 1; § 271, 1.

Goslar, picture of Palace of German Emperors, page 53.

Gothic, earliest known German language, §§ 347–352.
Lord's Prayer in, § 357.

Goths, East, see *Ostrogoths*; West, see *Visigoths*.

Great Elector, *see* Frederick William.

Grillparzer, Franz (1791–1872), dramatist, quoted, § 29, 1; § 58, 3, Note *c*; § 169, 1; § 195, 2.

Grimm, Jakob (1785–1863), philologist, § 285.
adoption of term "umlaut," § 322; discoverer of *Grimm's Law*, §§ 346–352.

Grimm, Wilhelm (1786–1859)

Grimm Brothers (die Gebrüder Grimm), Jakob and Wilhelm
quoted, § 23, 1; § 42, 2; § 50, 3; § 170, 2, Note *a*; § 248, 2, *a*.

Grün, Anastasius, pseudonym for Anton Alexander, Graf von Auersperg (1806–1876), quoted, § 18, 1.

Gutenberg, Johann (1400–1468)
inventor of printing, § 131; § 133; § 143, *c*.
picture of statue in Mayence; page 105.

haben
as auxiliary, see *Auxiliary*.
used with recht, *to be right*, § 172, 1, *b*.

Habsburg (less correctly, Hapsburg), the ruling line of the Holy Roman Empire during most of the period 1273–1740. [Descendants through female line (Maria Theresa), German Emperors, 1745–1806; emperors of Austria, 1806 to present time.]
founding of, § 133; fortunes of, § 148; under Charles V and descendants, § 163; § 168.

Halle, picture of the "Roland" at, page 61.

Hamburg, picture of the harbor of, page 228.

Hamburg-America, line of steamships, § 289.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Händel, Georg Friedrich (1685–1759), German composer, § 245.

Hansa, see *Hanseatic League*.

Hanseatic League, § 74.

Hauff, Wilhelm (1802–1827), quoted, § 119, 2.

Hauptmann, Gerhart (1862——), § 230; quoted, § 29, 1; § 40, 1; § 49, 1; § 76, 1; § 85, 1; § 95, 3; § 135, 2; § 136, 2; § 157, 1; § 172, 1, *b*; § 242.

Haydn, Johann Michael (1732–1809), German composer, § 245.

Hebbel, Friedrich (1813-1863), German dramatist, § 230; quoted, § 9; § 17, 2; § 58, 3; § 76, 2; § 170, 2, Note *b*; § 209; § 266, 2; § 270, 2.

Hegel, Georg Wilhelm Friedrich (1770–1831), German philosopher, § 285.

Heine, Heinrich (1799–1856), German poet, § 230; quoted, § 2, 2; § 16, 1; § 58, 1; § 76, 3, Note; § 94, 1; § 98, 1; § 99, 3, Note *a*; § 227, 1; § 269, 1.

Heinrich der Vogler, *see* Henry the Fowler.

Helmholtz, Hermann Ludwig Ferdinand von (1821–1894), German scientist, § 285.

Henry the Fowler (reigned 919–936); "King of Germany," § 54; § 56; § 61, *c*; "Builder of Cities," § 74; picture of his tomb, page 39; one of his castles, page 44.

Herder, Johann Gottfried (1744–1803), quoted, § 97, 1; § 110, 2; § 218, 1.

Hermann the Liberator, § 1; § 3; picture of monument to, page 2.

Hermann, Count of Thuringia, § 103.

Hermannsschlacht (battle), in Teutoburger Forest, § 1.

Heyse, Paul (1830——), § 230; quoted, § 6, 1; § 13; § 25; § 33; § 39, 1; § 51, 1; § 59, 2; § 68, 2; § 84, 2, *a*; § 88; § 110, 1; § 111, 2; § 135, 1; § 150, 2, *b*; § 196, 1; § 211, 2; § 231, 2; § 248, 1.

High German, see *German Language*.

Hildegund, the betrothed of Roland, § 46.

Hillern, Wilhelmine von (1836——); quoted, § 2, 2; § 16, 2; § 50, 2, Note; § 84, 1; § 139; § 185, 1, *b*; § 197, 2, Note; § 211, 2, Note; § 222, 4; § 228, 2, Note; § 257, 2; § 266, 1.

Hohenstaufen line of emperors (reigned 1138–1254), § 82; § 105.

See also *Frederick I* and *II*, and the *German Empire*.

Hohenzollern line, § 192. See individual names below.

(*a*) Electors of Brandenburg (1415–1701), § 188, § 192; see *Great Elector*.

(*b*) Kings of Prussia (1701–1871), § 192; § 205; § 220; § 256; § 267; § 278.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Hohenzollern line — *Continued.*
Frederick I (1688), 1701–1713.
Frederick William I, 1713–1740.
Frederick II, the Great, 1740–1786.
Frederick William II, 1786–1797.
Frederick William III (Queen Luise), 1797–1840.
Frederick William IV, 1840–1861.
(*c*) German Emperors and Kings of Prussia (1871——), § 278; § 281; § 282.
William I (1861), 1871–1888.
Frederick III, 1888.
William II, 1888——.

Hölderlin, Friedrich (1770–1843), quoted, § 84, 2, *b*.

Holy Roman Empire (962–1806), see *German Empire*.

Hungarians, repulsed by Germans, § 56.

Imperative sentence
inverted order in, § 2.
use of doch in, § 77, 2, Note; of ja, § 200, 1.

Imperfect, see *Tense, imperfect*.

Imperial chancery, § 155.

Impersonals, "*there is*," § 85, 1 and 2; "*they say*," § 57.
See also *Verbs*.

Indefinite article, negative, § 9.

Indefinite pronouns, see *Pronouns*.

Indicative Mode
contrasted with subjunctive, § 241; special use in indirect discourse, § 244.

Indirect discourse
rule for use of, § 242; tenses of, § 243.

Indo-European language, parent of German, § 345; see *German language*.
drawing of, page 279.

Industry, growth of, in German Empire, § 290.

Infinitives
after laſſen, § 68, 4, Note.
after ohne and anſtatt, § 181.
omission of zu, § 180, 1; use of zu, § 180, 2.
order of, in sentence with modals, § 66.
passive in English, active in German, § 204, 2, Note.
translations of English infinitive into German, § 191, 1; of German infinitive into English (verbals), § 180.
"two infinitives," with modals, § 73, 1; without modals, § 81.

Inflection of adjectives, § 216.

Inseparable prefixes
discussion of, § 132; meanings of, § 134; be-, § 135; ent- (emp-), § 136; er-, § 137; ge-, § 138; miß-, § 139; ver-, § 140; zer-, § 141.
for prefixes that are both separable and inseparable, see *Common prefixes*.

Interjections, *see* § 366.

International correspondence for pupils, § 293, Note.

Interrogative pronouns, *who*, § 208; *which*, § 209; *what*, § 210; *what kind of*, § 210.
sentences, inverted order in, § 2; use of wann in, § 84, 3.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Intransitive verbs
with haben, § 165; with ſein, § 166; in German become transitive in English, § 166, Note.
with haben or ſein, § 167, 1 and 2.

Introduction, forms of, § 171, 2, Note.

Inverted order of sentence, see *Word Order*.

Italy, under the Ostrogoths, § 24; under Charlemagne, § 38; under the Ottos, § 56; quarrels of the emperors with, § 67; § 82; change of policy toward, § 133.

Kaiser Karl der Grosse, see *Charlemagne*.

Kaiser Karl V, see *Charles V.*

Kaiser Maximilian, see *Maximilian*.

Kaisers, see *German Empire*.

Kant, Imanuel (1724–1804), § 285.

Keller, Gottfried (1815–1890), § 230; quoted, § 6, 2; § 88, Note; § 111, 1; § 173, 3; § 184, 2; § 193, 3.

Kerner, Andreas Justinus (1786–1862), § 230; quoted, § 119, 3.

Kiel, picture of canal at, page 231.

Kleist, Heinrich von (1777–1811), § 230; quoted, § 30, 1, Note; § 193, 2.

Klopstock, Friedrich Gottfried (1724–1803)
quoted, § 181.
influence on language, § 322.

Koberger, Anton, printer, § 131; § 143, *c*.

Koch, Robert (1843–1910), § 285.

Konrad, *see* Conrad.

Konradin (Conradin), the last of the Hohenstaufen line, § 82.

Körner, Theodor (1791–1813), § 230; quoted, § 42, 3; § 96; § 147, 1.

Kranach (Cranach), Lucas, German painter of Luther's portrait, page 127.

Kriemhilde, § 22.

Kyffhäuser, legend of, § 80.
picture of monument to William I at, page 65.
of Barbarossa statue at, p. 67.

Latin
language of courts in the Middle Ages, § 105.
derivation of German words from, § 314.

Legends
See *Barbarossa, Dietrich von Bern, Roland, Hildegund*, and *Siegfried*.

Lenau, pseudonym for Nikolaus Niembsch von Strehlenau (1802–1850), quoted, § 255, 2.

Lessing, Gotthold Ephraim (1729–1781), § 230; quoted, § 4; § 23, 1; § 33; § 43, 1, Note; § 49, 2, Note; § 68, 4; § 77, 2, Note; § 97, 2; § 113, 2; § 149, 2, Note; § 172, 2; § 184, 1; § 200, 1; § 211, 3, *a*; § 218, 3; § 234, 2, § 237, 2, Note; § 253, *b*.

Letter-Writing, Part II, Chapter I
general rule for, § 293.
examples of
business, page 241.
friendly, page 238.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Letter-Writing — *Continued*
intimate, page 236.
exchange of letters between German and American pupils, § 293, Note.
proper forms to use in
the date, § 294; address, § 295; the close, § 296; the envelope, § 298; address of sender, Absender, § 298; rules for names of streets, § 299.
summary, § 297.

Lichtenberg, Georg Christoph (1742–1799), quoted, § 83, 1; § 254.

Liliencron Detlev von (1844–1909), quoted, § 50, 4; § 169, 2; § 231, 1.

Liszt, Franz (1811–1886), § 245.

Literature, German
periods of, § 230.
popularity of classics, § 236, *c*.

Logau, Friedrich von (1604–1655), quoted, § 47, 1; § 135, 3; § 156.

Lombards, § 24.

Lord's Prayer, in German, § 356–§ 362.

Low German, see *German language*.

Luise, or Louise, Queen of Prussia.
story of, § 252.
work for Prussia, § 256; § 264, *c*.
picture of portrait in Cologne, page 197.

Luther, Martin (1483–1546)
anecdote of, § 153; influence on the German language, § 133; § 155; 159, *c*; § 353; § 356; translations of the New Testament, § 153; § 355.
picture of Luther's room at Wartburg Castle, page 121; of the court at the Wartburg, showing location of Luther's room, § 124.
painting of Luther by Lucas Kranach, page 127.

Mastersingers, § 116; § 118.

Maximilian, Emperor of Germany (1493–1519), grandfather of Charles V; § 168; influence on the German language; § 148; § 155; § 159, *c*.

Mayence, statue of John Gutenberg and the Cathedral at, page 105.

Measure, expressions of, § 99, 3, Note *a*.

Mendelssohn, Felix Mendelssohn-Bartholdy (1809–1847), § 245.

Middle Ages
growth of the towns in, § 74.
history of Germany during, see *Germany*.
language of, see *German, Middle High*.
mastersingers of, § 118.
minstrel poets of, § 103; § 105.
Nuremberg in, § 116; § 118.
robber barons of, § 93.
"Roland," symbol of civic liberty in, § 72; § 74.

Middle High German
discussion of, see *German, Middle High*.
language of the Minnesingers, § 105; of Mastersingers, § 116; § 118.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Minnesingers, § 103; § 105.

Miß-, § 139.

Modals, in simple tenses, § 66; in compound tenses alone, § 73; with other verbs, § 73, 1; in dependent order, § 73, 2.
German and English compared, § 66, Note.
subjunctive, § 266.

Mode, see *Conditional*, *Imperative*, *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*.

Mohammedans (Moors), driven out by Franks, § 48.

Moltke, Graf Hellmuth Karl Bernhard von (1800–1891)
chief of staff of the German army, § 282.
picture of, page 222.
quoted, § 180, 1.

Mommsen, Theodor (1817–1903), § 285; picture of, page 226.

Mörike, Eduard (1804–1875), § 230; quoted, § 170, 2.

Motion, direction of
away from the speaker (hin), § 18, 2; § 149, 1; toward the speaker (her), § 149, 1.
definite purpose or no motion, zu, § 100, 1.
difficulty with hin and her, § 149, 2, Note.
prepositions showing motion or *place where*, § 117.
toward or to a *place* (nach), § 97, 1.

Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756–1791), § 245.

Müller, Wilhelm (1794–1827), quoted, § 100, 2; § 125, 1; § 180, 1.

Music of Germany, § 245.

Narrative, use of imperfect tense in, § 23, 1; § 229, 1.

National flower of Germany, § 252.

Negatives
doch in answer to, § 237, 1.
kein, § 9.
nicht wahr, for repetition of, § 237, 2, Note.
noch, § 62; § 248, 2, *a*.
position of nicht, see *Word Order*.

Netherlands, part of "the Empire" under Charles V, § 168.

Neuter gender, § 207, Note. Verbs, see *Verbs, intransitive*.

New Testament, translated by Luther, § 153; § 159, *c*.

Nominative, with es ist, § 85, 2.

Normal order of sentence, see *Word Order*.

North German Lloyd, line of steamships, § 289.

North Germans
accent of, § 316.
in Franco-Prussian War, § 277.

Nouns
abstract, § 307.
collective, § 304, 2, *a*.
concrete, § 306.
derivation from verb roots, § 302.

Novalis, pseudonym for Friedrich von Hardenberg (1772–1801), quoted, § 136, 2, Note.

Nuremberg (Nürnberg), § 116; § 118.
home of Dürer, § 144; of Hans Sachs, § 116; of Koberger, § 131; § 143, *c*.
influence on printing, § 131.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Nuremberg — *Continued*
picture of the river Pegnitz and the walls of, page 92.
picture of the Woman's Gate (Frauentor) at, page 100.
statue of Hans Sachs at, page 97.
house of Albrecht Dürer, page 117.

Numeral adverbs, see *Adverbs*.

Objects, order of, see *Word Order*.

Order of sentence, see *Word Order*.

Orthography, authority on German, Duden, § 356; names of streets, § 299.

Ostrogoths, § 24.

Otto I, the Great (936–973), restorer of the Holy Roman Empire, § 56; § 61, *c*; § 67.

Otto III (983–1002), anecdote of, § 65; sketch of, § 67; 71, *c*.
decline of Empire, after, § 82.

Parliament at Frankfort, § 265; § 267; picture of meeting place, page 205; of members, Arndt, page 207; Uhland, page 211.

Particles
allerdings, § 274; denn, § 33; doch, § 237; ja, § 200; noch, § 62; ſchon, § 128; überhaupt, § 160; wohl, § 88; zwar, § 274.

Participles
present
used to translate English verbal in *ing*, § 178; in English rendered in German by infinitive, § 180, § 181; by clause, § 189; by German past participle (*came running*, kam gelaufen), § 180, 1, Note; object required, § 296, Note; English progressive, § 178, Note *b*; § 227, 1.
past, § 178, Note *a*.
of inseparable verbs, § 132; order of in sentence, § 23; prefix ge- in, § 138; used to translate English verbal, *came running*, § 180, 1, Note.

Passive Voice, formation and peculiarities of, in German, § 204; use of von to tell the agent, § 99, 2; § 204; personal passive, § 204, 1; English passive infinitive, active in German, § 204, 2, Note; the impersonal passive, § 204, 2; German substitutes for (*man* with the active), § 204, 1, Note.

Past Participle, see *Participles*.

Past Tense, see *Tense*.

Paulskirche, at Frankfort, picture of, page 205.

Peace of Westphalia, § 182.

Pegnitz, river, § 116; picture of, page 92.

Perfect Tenses, see *Tense*.

Person, capitalization of second person pronouns in letter-writing, § 296, Note.

Personal pronouns, see *Pronouns*.

Philip, son of Charles V, § 163.

Phrases
after bitten, § 15, 1, *b*; after *to command*, § 191, 1.
concessive, § 274.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Phrases — *Continued*
order of, § 47; § 92, Note.
participial phrase becomes clause in German, § 189, 1.
position of nicht in, § 37.
um zu with an infinitive phrase, § 197, 2, Note.

Platt-Deutsch, § 350, Note.

Pluperfect Tense, see *Tense*.

Plural
with das, § 211, 3, *b*, Note; es, § 85, 2.

Poland, annexation of part of, to Brandenburg, Prussia, § 220.

Pomerania (Pommern), won by the "Great Elector," § 192.

Position, "place where"
greater exactness of German in expressing, § 206, 2.

Potential
form of the conditional, § 254; of the subjunctive, § 253, *c*.

Potsdam, § 203; § 213, *c*.
picture of the windmill at, page 159; of the palace, Sans Souci, page 163.

Predicate, adjective, § 216; am with the superlative, § 218, 1; order in, § 37, Note; see also *Word Order*.

Prefixes
general, § 304; er-, § 304, 1; ge-, § 304, 2, *a* and *b*; miß-, § 304, 3; un-, § 304, 4; ur-, § 304, 5.
verbal
separable, see *Separable prefixes*.
inseparable, see *Inseparable prefixes*.
common, see *Common prefixes*.

Prepositions
with accusative, § 104; § 106–§ 112; accusative or dative, § 117; §§ 119–125; with dative, § 92; §§ 94–100; with inanimate objects, da(r), § 106, 1; wo(r), § 106, 2; with the genitive, § 99, 3, Note *b*.

Present participles, see *Participles*.

Present tense, see *Tense*.

Preterit (Imperfect), see *Tense*.

Printing, invention of, § 131; § 133; § 143, *c*.

Progressive form of verb, rendered by present, § 178, Note *b*; § 227, 1.

Pronouns
capitalization in letter-writing, § 296, Note.
demonstratives, § 29, 1, and Note; § 211, 3; *other*, § 30.
impersonal, das, 211, 3, *b*, Note; es, § 85.
indefinite, § 29, § 30.
order of pronominal objects, § 55.
personal, der, § 211, 3, *a*.
use of adjectives with, § 219, 1.
congruence of *it*, § 207.
reflexive, § 196, 1.
relative (conjunctive).
not to be omitted in German, § 29, 1; § 208; § 209; § 211, 2.
regular relatives, *who*, § 208; *that*, § 211, 2; *that* referring to neuters, § 211, 2, Note; compound (*he who*), § 208; indefinite compound (*that which*), § 210.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Pronunciation
accent
the best German, § 315, § 316.
authority on, § 316, Note; § 343, footnote.
in sentence, § 342.
assimilation, § 343.
consonants
identical, § 331, 1 and 2; equivalent, § 332.
dissimilar, § 333; ch, § 334; g, § 335; l, § 336; r, § 337, 1 and 2.
quantity of, § 339; § 340.
difficulties of, § 317.
digraphs, § 325.
diphthongs, § 323, § 324.
glottal catch, §§ 326–330.
syllable bearers, § 338.
pitch, § 341.
sentence accent, § 342.
syllable stress, §§ 338–341.

Proper names, of streets, § 299.

Protestant Reformation, influence on German language, § 133; gains of, § 182.

Proverbs (Sprichwörter), quoted, § 19, 1; § 26, 1; § 30, 1; § 37; § 50, 3, Note; § 50, 5; § 69, 3; § 113, 2; § 119, 3, Note; § 140, 2; § 147, 2; § 147, 3; § 154, 2; § 157, 1; § 194, 1; § 249, 2; § 255, 2; § 259, 1; § 260, Note.

Prussia, kings of, § 192; § 256; § 267; § 278; § 282; establishment of courts, § 205; gains of territory, § 220; in the Napoleonic era, § 256; rivalry with Austria for leadership of German states, § 267; wars for primacy in Germany, § 278.

Pure vowels, characteristic of German, § 318.

Quantity of consonants, § 338–§ 340; see also *Pronunciation*.

Quantity of vowels, §§ 320–322; see also *Pronunciation*.

Quedlinburg, picture of burial place of Henry the Fowler at, page 39.

Queen Louise, see *Luise*, Queen of Prussia.

Questions
answer to negative, § 237, 1; denn, in, § 33.
See *Interrogative pronouns* and *sentences*.

Ramler, Karl Wilhelm (died 1798); quoted, § 92; § 104.

Ravenna, capital of Theodoric, § 24; picture of Theodoric's tomb at, page 15.

Reflexive verbs, see *Verbs*.

Regenstein, picture of, page 44.

Reichenhall, sculpture of Barbarossa at, page 70.

Reichstagsgebäude (House of Parliament), picture of, Frontispiece.

Relative (Conjunctive) pronouns, see *Pronouns*.

Richter, Johann Paul Friedrich, commonly called Jean Paul (1763–1825), quoted, § 223.

Robert, Ludwig (1778–1832); quoted, § 58, 3, Note *a*.

Roentgen, Wilhelm (1845——), § 285; picture of, page 224.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Roland, nephew of Charlemagne, § 46; § 48; § 53, *c*; as symbol of civic liberty in Middle Ages, see *Rolandsäule*.

Roland's Arch, § 46; picture of, page 33.

Rolandsäule, symbol of civic freedom; § 72; § 74; picture of Roland at Bremen, page 57; at Halle, page 61.

Romans
in Germany, § 1; § 3; § 14.
picture of remains of palace at Trier (Trèves), page 8; of Porta Nigra, page 13.

Romantic school of German literature, § 230.

Roncesvalles, important battle in medieval legends, § 48.

Rosegger, Peter (1843——), quoted, § 51, 2; § 68, 4; § 173, 2; § 207.

Rotbart, see *Frederick II, Barbarossa*.

Rothenburg, picture of, page 139.

Rückert, Friedrich (1788–1866), § 230; quoted, § 94, 2; § 113, 1; § 117, 1; § 211, 1.

Rudelsburg, statue of Bismarck at, page 214.

Rudolph of Habsburg, emperor of the Holy Roman Empire (1273–1291), influence on the German language, § 133; § 355; death of, § 148.

Russia, in Seven Years' War, § 220.

Sachs, Hans (1494–1576), "Mastersinger," § 116; picture of statue in Nuremberg, page 97.

Sängerkrieg at the Wartburg (Singers' Contest), § 103; § 105; § 115, *c*.

Sans Souci, picture of mill at, page 159; of palace, page 163.

Saxon, line of German kings and emperors, § 56.

Scheffel, Josef Viktor von (1826–1886), § 230; quoted, § 140, 3.

Schenkendorf, Max von (1783–1817), quoted, § 253, *c*.

Schiller, Friedrich Christoph (1759–1805)
account of, § 230.
anecdote of — and Goethe, § 226.
picture of statue of the „Dichterpaar," page 177.
of bust of Schiller in Weimar Library, page 184.
quoted, § 5; § 15, 1, *a*; § 26, 2; § 27; § 41, 1; § 49, 2; § 58, 2; § 68, 1; § 85, 2; § 97, 3; § 100, 3; § 107, 1; § 132; § 150, 2, *c*, Note; § 167, 1; § 183, 3; § 185, 2; § 211, 3, *b*, Note; § 218, 1; § 228, 2; § 234, 3; § 237, 1; § 243; § 249, 1; § 253, *d*; § 257, 1, Note; § 270, 2, Note.

Schlegel, August Wilhelm von (1767–1845), § 230; quoted, § 157, 1, Note *c*.

Schlegel, Friedrich von (1772–1829), § 230; quoted, § 95, 1; § 98, 2.

Schopenhauer, Arthur (1788–1860), § 285.

Schubert, Franz (1797–1828), § 245.

Schumann, Robert (1810–1856), § 245.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Schwab, Gustav (1792–1850), quoted, § 270, 1.

Science, German superiority in, § 285, § 286.

Script, illustrations of, pages 236; 238; 241.

Sein
- as auxiliary, see *Auxiliary*.
- more *exact* use of, than in English, § 206.
- use of ſich befinden and es geht or of ſein with the dative, § 206, 1.
- "place where" demands specific term, § 206, 2, and Note.
- with das, § 211, 3, *b*, Note.

Sequence of tenses, § 243.

Seven Years' War, § 220.

Siegfried, § 22; § 32, *c*.

Silesia, won by Prussia from Austria, § 220.

Singular with plural verb, § 85, 2; § 211, 3, *b*, Note.

South America, German trade in, § 289.

South Germans in Franco-Prussian War, § 277.

Spain, crusades against Moors in, § 48.
- part of "the Empire," § 163; separated from, § 168.

Steamship lines, § 289.

Storm, Theodor (1817–1888), § 230.
- quoted, § 9; § 18, 2; § 28, 2; § 42, 1; § 50, 2; § 57; § 69, 1; § 109, 1; § 123, 1; § 137; § 171, 2; § 183, 1; § 206, 2, Note; § 219, 2; § 222, 1; § 247, 2; § 261, 1.

Streets, names of, § 299.

Students of German Universities, § 285.

Subject
- accusative with infinitive becomes German clause, § 191, 1.
- grammatical, „es," § 85, 2, and Note.
- place in sentence, § 2.

Subjunctive
- conditional mode with subjunctive of werden, § 254 and Note. See *Conditional*.
- distinguished from indicative, § 241.
- divisions
  - (*a*) of indirect discourse (dependent), § 242, § 243.
  - (*b*) unreal (contrary to fact), § 253.
    - (*a*) hortative, § 253, *a*.
    - (*b*) optative, § 253, *b*.
    - (*c*) potential, § 253, *c*.
    - (*d*) contrary to fact, § 253, *d*.
- special uses of
  - "should like," "could have," § 266, 1 and 2.
  - past for conditional, § 254, Note.
  - pluperfect, § 266, 2.

Subordinating conjunctions, see *Conjunctions*.

Substantive adjectives, § 217.

Sudermann, Hermann (1857 ——), § 230; quoted, § 49, 1; § 59, 1; § 157, 1, Note *a*; § 204, 1; § 246, 4.

Suffixes
- formation of nouns
  - *concrete*, =chen, =lein, =er, =in, =ling, § 306.
  - *abstract*, =e, =ei, =heit, =keit, =ſchaft, =ung, § 307.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Suffixes — *Continued*
formation of adjectives
=bar, =en, =haft, =ig, =iſch, =lich, =ſam, § 308.
formation of verbs
=en, =ern, =ieren, =igen, § 309.

Superlative, see *Comparison.*

Sweden, in Thirty Years' War, § 182; in Seven Years' War, § 220.

Syllable stress, see under *Pronunciation.*

Tacitus, Roman historian, § 12; § 14.

Tense
present
used in German for the future, § 228, 1; for the progressive and emphatic forms, § 227, 1; § 228; with ſchon for the perfect, § 228, 2; in indirect discourse, § 243; use of wenn with, § 84, 2.
past (preterit, imperfect)
in connected narrative, § 229, 1; change from perfect to past, § 229, 2, Note *a*; past to perfect, § 229, 2, Note *b*; with ſchon for past perfect (pluperfect), § 228, 2, Note; for progressive and emphatic forms, § 178, Note *b*; § 227, 1; use of als with, § 84, 1.
future
general rule, § 69, 4, *a*, *b*, *c*.
simple auxiliary, werden, § 69, 1 and 4, *a*; to express desire, wollen, § 69, 3; intention, § 69, 4, *b*; obligation (ſollen), § 69, 2; § 69, 4, *b* and *c*.
substitute for, § 228, 1.
perfect
general rule for use in German, § 229, 2; change to past, § 229, 2, Note *a*; for emphasis, § 229, 2, Note *b*; German present with ſchon for English perfect, § 228, 2.
pluperfect
German past with ſchon for English, § 228, 2, Note.
subjunctive, § 266, 2.

Teutoburger Forest, § 1; § 3.
picture of monument in, page 2.

Theodoric the Great, § 22; § 24; § 38; see also *Dietrich von Bern*; picture of tomb at Ravenna, page 15.

There, adverb, § 16, 1 and 2; "factitive," § 16; es gibt, § 85, 1; es iſt, § 85, 2.

Thirty Years' War, § 176; § 182; § 187, *c*.

Thoma, Ludwig, quoted, § 30, 1, Note; § 206, 2; § 221, 2; § 246, 4.

Thuringia (Thüringen), § 103.

Thusnelda, wife of Hermann, § 3.

Tieck, Ludwig, (1773–1853), § 230; quoted, § 120, 2.

Time
accusative of, § 5; § 50, 2.
adverbs of, § 5, Note.
duration of, § 50, 1 and 2.
extent of, § 5; § 98, 2.
particular point of, § 50, 3; § 98, 1.
telling time (of day), § 50, 4; § 169, 2.

Titles, § 295; § 298.

Tours, battle of, § 48.

Towns, growth of, in Middle Ages, § 72, § 74.

For special word studies, see Vocabularies.

Trade, growth in German Empire, § 289; § 290.

Transitive verbs, see *Verbs*.

Transposed order of sentence, see *Word Order*.

Trier (Trèves), Roman remains at, § 14.
picture of Roman palace at, page 8.
of the Porta Nigra (Black Gate), page 13.

Two infinitives, § 73, 1 and 2; § 81.

Uhland, Ludwig (1787–1862), § 230.
picture of, page 211.
quoted, § 15, 2, *b*; § 29, 3; § 40, 2; § 47; § 99, 3; § 100, 4; § 119, 3; § 141; § 147, 3; § 150, 2, *a*; § 154, 2; § 173, 1; § 196, 2; § 218, 2; § 234, 2, Note.

Ulfilas, translator of the Bible into Gothic, § 349; § 357.

Umlaut
derivation of, § 322; sounds of, § 322, 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.
used with suffixes, =chen, =lein, § 306, 1; =er, § 306, 2, *b*; =ling, § 306, 4, *d*; =e, § 307, 1, *b*.

Universities, discipline in, § 285.

Varus, Roman general, § 1.

Ver=, § 140.

Verbals
English verbal in *ing*
1. When not participial modifier
(*a*) as *clauses*, when in phrase of time or cause, § 189, 1; or the object of a preposition, § 189, 2; or when the verbal after *without* or *instead of* is modified by possessive, § 190.
(*b*) as *infinitives*
omission of zu, § 180, 1; use of zu, § 180, 2.
verbals after *instead of* or *without*, if unmodified, § 181.
2. When participial modifiers
(*a*) present participles, § 178.
(*b*) past participles, § 178, Note *a*.
(*c*) predicate verbal, *came running*, § 180, 1, Note.
3. Progressive form, § 178, Note *b*; § 227, 1.
verbal nouns, § 304, 2.

Verbs
transitive
with haben, § 165; § 167, 2, and Note; *follow* and *meet* intransitive in German, § 166, Note.
use of be= to make transitives, § 135, 3.
intransitive (neuter)
with haben, § 165; with ſein, § 166; with haben or ſein, § 167, 1 and 2.
begegnen and folgen, § 166, Note.
separable, see *Separable prefixes*.
inseparable, see *Inseparable prefixes*.
common, see *Common prefixes*.
impersonal
with haben, § 165; exceptions, § 166.
es gibt, § 85, 1.
impersonal passive, § 204, 2.
reflexive
with haben, § 165.
ſich befinden, § 206, 1.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Verbs — *Continued*
emphatic form, § 77, 2, Note; § 227, 1.
progressive form, § 178, Note *b*; § 227, 1.

Verona (Bern), capital of Theodoric, § 22; § 24.

Vienna, Beethoven and Goethe in, § 240.

Visigoths, Bishop Ulfilas of, § 349.

Voice, see *Active* and *Passive*.

Voss, Johann Heinrich (1751–1826), quoted, § 217.

Vowels, see *Pronunciation*.

Wagner, Richard (1813–1883), § 245; picture of, page 190.

Walther von der Vogelweide, § 103; § 105.

Wartburg Castle at Eisenbach, § 103; Luther at, § 153.
picture of the castle, page 87.
of the inner court, page 124.
of Luther's room, page 121.
of the Singers' Hall in the castle, page 84.

Washington, George, admired by Frederick II, § 214.

Weber, Karl Maria von (1786–1826), § 245.

Weibertreu, fortress, see *Weinsberg*.

Weimar
picture of Goethe in library at, page 195.
of Goethe's Garden in, page 181.
of „Dichterpaar," page 177.
of Schiller in library at, page 184.

Weinsberg, siege of, § 91; § 93.
pictures of fortress, pages 74 and 79.
the octagonal tower at, page 82.

Werden, see *Auxiliaries*.

Werder, Karl, quoted, § 248, 2, *b*.

Westphalia, Peace of (1648), § 182.

Wieland, Christoph Martin (1733–1813), quoted, § 120, 3, Note *b*; § 157, 1, Note *b*; § 206, 1; § 233, 2.

Wildenbruch, Ernst von (1845–1909), § 230; quoted, § 4, Note; § 29, 2; § 39, 2; § 120, 1; § 123, 2; § 128, 1; § 136, 1; § 150, 2, *c*; § 160; § 166, *c*, Note; § 169, 2, Note; § 173, 4; § 191, 1; § 200, 2; § 204, 2, Note; § 206, 2; § 221, 1; § 233, 1; § 237, 2; § 246, 1; § 246, 4, Note; § 262; § 268, 2.

William I, German Emperor and King of Prussia (1871–1888) (King, 1861–1871)
anecdote of Kornblumen, § 252; of Heldengreis, § 281.
appoints Bismarck prime minister, § 277; § 278.
historical sketch of, § 278; § 282.
later years of, § 281; § 282.
picture of monument at Kyffhäuser, page 65.
at Coblentz, page 219.

William II (born, 1859, crowned, 1888), present emperor, § 282.

Windmill, legend of the, at Sans Souci, § 203.

Wolfram von Eschenbach, § 105.

For special word-studies, see Vocabularies.

Wolzogen, Henriette, Freifrau von (1745–1788), quoted, § 183, 2.

Word composition
- German rich in compound words, § 300.
- roots, § 301.
  - Ablaut (Anlaut, Inlaut, Auslaut), § 301 and Note.
  - derivation of nouns from verbs, § 302, § 303.
- prefixes
  - verbal
    - See *Separable*, *Inseparable*, and *Common*.
  - general
    - erz-, § 304, 1; ge-, § 304, 2; miß-, § 304, 3; un-, 304, 4; ur-, § 304, 5.
- suffixes, §§ 305–309, see also *Suffixes*.
- compound words, § 310; German partiality to, § 300.
  - adjectives, § 312.
  - nouns, § 311.
  - verbs, § 313.
- derivation through the Latin, § 314.

Word formation, see *Word composition*.

Word Order
- normal
  - emphatic position in German sentences, § 37, Note.
  - position of
    - adverbs, § 47; § 47, 1; adverbial phrases, § 47.
    - infinitives with modals, § 66; "two infinitives," § 73, 1.
    - nicht, modifying the whole, § 37; special word, § 37, 1.
    - objects, direct and indirect, § 55; for emphasis, § 55, Note.
    - prepositional phrases, § 47; § 92, Note.
    - separable prefixes, § 147, 1 and 3.
    - special subjunctive, § 266, 2.
    - verbals as participles, § 178, and Note *a*.
- inverted
  - general rule for, § 2; after subordinate clause, § 2, 2.
  - German partiality to, § 2, 1.
  - omission of es in impersonal passive, § 204, 2.
  - inversion of conditional, § 255, 1 and 2.
- transposed
  - in simple tenses, § 14; in compound, § 23.
  - after da, § 17, 3.
  - omission of es in impersonal passive, § 204, 2.
  - of modals, § 73, 2; of "two infinitives," § 73, 2.
  - of special subjunctive (hätte), § 266, 2.

Zer-, § 141.

Zschokke, Heinrich (1771–1848)
- quoted, § 17, 1; § 43, 2; § 66; § 178, Note *a*; § 194, 2; § 204, 1, Note; § 229, 1.

Zu
- omitted after certain verbs, § 180, 1; with modals, § 66.
- not omitted, § 180, 2.

A German Grammar for Beginners

By PAUL V. BACON. Revised Edition. 12mo, cloth, 448 pages. Price, $1.25.

THIS book introduces easy reading from the first, along with the usual drill in grammar. The object is to stimulate interest, to economize vocabulary, and to give unity to the first year work. Distinguishing features of the Grammar are:

I. Complete stories, full of interest, connected with the grammatical exercises and using the same words. The first is about the school, the second about the home, and so many cognates are used that reading may be begun as soon as the alphabet is learned.

II. Systematic drill on grammar, each topic being treated in a group of five lessons. The language of the rules is simple.

III. Every fifth lesson is a review, and in addition three complete lessons are devoted to a review of the first half of the book and seven to the whole book.

IV. Attractive material for memorizing. Each lesson begins with a proverb, idiom, or short poem, from Goethe, Schiller, Heine, Rückert, Scheffel, or Müller.

Elements of German

By PAUL V. BACON. 12mo, cloth, 352 pages. Price, $1.00.

THIS book follows the order of presentation used in the German Grammar, but it is briefer and simpler and does not begin with the stories.

I. The Syntax is stated in the clearest possible way.

II. The Vocabulary consists of nothing but common, every-day words, most of which, especially at the beginning, are cognates.

III. An immense amount of attractive material for memorizing is contained in the book.

IV. The Appendices offer (1) a complete list of strong verbs, (2) complete tables of forms, (3) a careful treatment of pronunciation, supplemented by drawings, and (4) a chapter on the derivation of words.

Allyn and Bacon's Series of German Texts

THIS is the most attractive and convenient series of German texts on the market. Each book contains complete notes and vocabulary, together with exercises for retranslation into German. These exercises are based on the text and afford excellent material for review as well as practice in composition. The prices will seem reasonable when the general excellence is considered. The following volumes are now ready: —

GRIECHISCHE HEROENGESCHICHTEN.

By BARTHOLD GEORG NIEBUHR. Edited by GEORGE E. MERKLEY. 16mo, cloth, 128 pages. Price, 50 cents.

MÄRCHEN.

By JAKOB and WILHELM GRIMM. Edited by GEORGE E. MERKLEY. 16mo, cloth, 140 pages. Price, 50 cents.

L'ARRABBIATA.

By PAUL HEYSE. Edited by PAUL V. BACON. 16mo, cloth, 126 pages. Price, 50 cents.

HÖHER ALS DIE KIRCHE.

By WILHELMINE VON HILLERN. Edited by J. B. E. JONAS, of Brown University, Providence, R.I. 16mo, cloth, 150 pages. Price, 50 cents.

IMMENSEE.

By THEODORE STORM. Edited by E. A. WHITENACK, State Normal School, River Falls, Wis. 16mo, cloth, 116 pages. Price, 50 cents.

GERMELSHAUSEN.

By FRIEDRICH GERSTÄCKER. Edited by R. A. VON MINCKWITZ. 16mo, cloth, 122 pages. Price, 50 cents.

DER NEFFE ALS ONKEL.

By FRIEDRICH VON SCHILLER. Edited by Professor C. F. RADDATZ, of the Baltimore City College. 16mo, cloth, 147 pages. Price, 50 cents.

Allyn and Bacon's German Texts — *Continued*

DIE JOURNALISTEN.

By GUSTAV FREYTAG. Edited by EDWARD MANLEY, of the Englewood High School, Chicago. 16mo, cloth, 272 pages. Price, 60 cents.

DER ZERBROCHENE KRUG and DAS WIRTSHAUS ZU CRANSAC.

By JOHANN HEINRICH DANIEL ZSCHOKKE. Edited by EDWARD MANLEY, of the Englewood High School, Chicago. 16mo, cloth, 169 pages. Price, 50 cents.

DER SCHWIEGERSOHN.

By RUDOLF BAUMBACH. Edited by W. W. FLORER and E. H. LAUER, of Ann Arbor, Mich. 16mo, cloth, 262 pages. Price, 60 cents.

DAS EDLE BLUT and DER LETZTE.

By ERNST VON WILDENBRUCH. Edited by W. W. FLORER, of Ann Arbor, Mich., and M. R. SHELLY. 16mo, cloth, 238 pages. Price, 60 cents.

LEBENSERINNERUNGEN.

By CARL SCHURZ. Edited by EDWARD MANLEY, of the Englewood High School, Chicago. 12mo, cloth, 320 pages. Price, $1.00.

The only American edition of these remarkable memoirs.

WILHELM TELL.

By FRIEDRICH VON SCHILLER. Edited by Professor CARL SCHLENKER, of the University of Minnesota. 12mo, cloth, 463 pages. Price, 90 cents.

NO pains have been spared to make this the most useful and attractive *high school* edition of Wilhelm Tell now on the market. It is no exaggeration to say that it has all the desirable features of other editions together with many distinctively its own.

Im Vaterland: A Reader for Pupils in their First or Second Year of German

By PAUL V. BACON. 12mo, cloth, 430 pages. Price $1.25.

"TO give the American student a better understanding and appreciation of Germany and the Germans; to furnish him with an adequate vocabulary of colloquial idioms; to point out and explain differences between German and American customs; in short, to broaden and deepen the American's knowledge and love of the German language, music, poetry, and people; these are the aims of *Im Vaterland*."

Distinctive features of this remarkable book are:

I. Dialogues on thirty-six different subjects (such as the German Empire, The Imperial Family, In School, At a Store, Berlin University, The Army, The Hotel, In a Theatre, At a Station, In a Train, etc.). These give the pupil a knowledge of German customs and prepare him for appreciative and intelligent travel in Germany.

II. Illustrations from photographs of German scenes, buildings, paintings, churches, and castles. Besides forty-nine of these illustrations there are six maps, including a two-page colored map of the German Empire.

III. Songs, with music arranged for high school pupils. There are twenty-seven characteristic German songs from sixteen different composers.

IV. Poems — thirty-six of them — ranging from the thirteenth to the twentieth century, especially adapted for memorizing.

V. Notes on all idioms and grammatical difficulties. They serve also to supplement the text. For example, they contain a complete list of the German States, an outline of a gymnasial course of study, biographies of the authors mentioned in the book, and kindred matters.

VI. Composition exercises on each chapter of the dialogues.

VII. A vocabulary made with unusual care, and including all the idioms used in the book.

VIII. A full, practical index of persons and of topics.